



نتقدم بثقة  
Moving Forward  
with Confidence

SULTANATE OF OMAN  
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION

# TEAM Together OMAN 4B

Teacher's Book  
with Digital Resources

Trial Edition  
2024







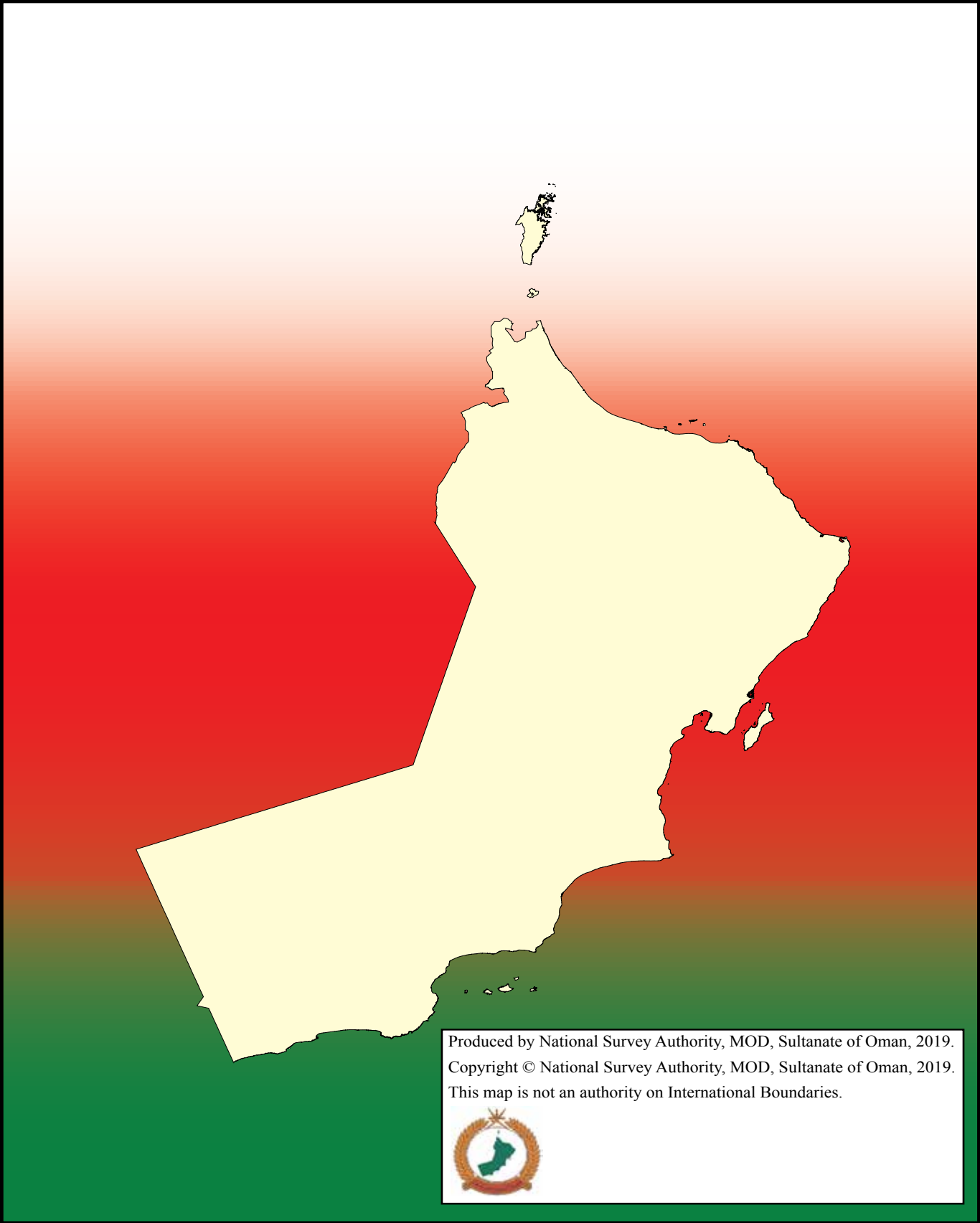
**His Majesty  
Sultan Haitham Bin Tarik**



**The Late Sultan  
Qaboos Bin Said**



# Sultanate of Oman



Produced by National Survey Authority, MOD, Sultanate of Oman, 2019.  
Copyright © National Survey Authority, MOD, Sultanate of Oman, 2019.  
This map is not an authority on International Boundaries.







SULTANATE OF OMAN  
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION

# TEAM Together OMAN 4B



Teacher's Book  
with Digital Resources



## Contents

Scope and sequence.....	6
Introduction.....	8
Course components.....	9
Unit walkthrough .....	11
Assessment .....	14
How to ... .....	16
Games bank.....	19
Classroom language .....	23
Unit lessons notes .....	24

# Scope and sequence

Unit	Vocabulary	Grammar	Literacy
5 Hobbies	<p><b>Hobbies and sports:</b> <i>build a robot, dress up, go fishing, go sailing, go windsurfing, kick, knit, play board games, play chess, play computer games, sew, skip</i></p> <p><b>Adverbs of manner:</b> <i>badly, carefully, easily, loudly, quickly, quietly, slowly, well</i></p>	<p><i>can/can't:</i> I can go sailing./I can't play board games. Can you sew? Yes, I can./No, I can't.</p> <p>Adverbs of manner: She can play board games well.</p>	<p>Reading: a leaflet</p> <p>Writing: filling in a form</p>
6 Our town	<p><b>Places in the local area:</b> <i>bridge, bus stop, café, car park, clothes shop, hotel, market, mosque, shopping mall, square, train station, zoo</i></p> <p><b>Adjectives (2):</b> <i>ancient, busy, cheap, expensive, modern, noisy, quiet, safe</i></p>	<p>Past simple of <i>to be:</i> She was at the zoo a week ago. Where were you yesterday morning? <i>There was/There were:</i> There was an expensive shop. Was there a café? Yes, there was./No, there wasn't.</p>	<p>Reading: an article</p> <p>Writing: a composition</p>
 Bo's Learning Club 3	<p><b>Descriptive adjectives:</b> <i>beautiful, crowded, famous, interesting, peaceful, popular</i></p>	<p>Comparatives and superlatives: long adjectives: I think camel racing is more beautiful to watch than chess, but dhow racing is the most beautiful.</p>	
7 The history of Oman	<p><b>Historical finds:</b> <i>clay, coins, jar, jewellery, khanjar, necklace, ring, silver, stone, sword, wall, well</i></p> <p><b>Verbs:</b> <i>arrive, live, need, start, stop, use, visit, work</i></p>	<p>Past simple regular verbs: They used clay to make jars. They didn't use stone. Did people in the past have coins? Yes, they did./No, they didn't.</p>	<p>Reading: a diary</p> <p>Writing: a diary of a visit to a new place</p>
8 Let's celebrate!	<p><b>Celebrations:</b> <i>big wheel, buffet, costume, funfair, go-kart, invitation, party, party games, party hat, present, rollercoaster, wedding</i></p> <p><b>Ordinal numbers:</b> <i>first–thirty-first</i></p>	<p>Past simple irregular verbs: I wore a new dress. We didn't take photos with our phones. Did she wear a party hat? Yes, she did./No, she didn't.</p>	<p>Reading: a news story</p> <p>Writing: an invitation to a party</p>
 Bo's Learning Club 4	<p><b>Holiday activities:</b> <i>build a sandcastle, buy an ice cream, go camping, go hiking, go sightseeing, go snorkelling, visit a theme park, visit a water park</i></p>	<p><i>Going to</i> for future plans: Are you going on holiday next summer? Yes, I am. I'm going on holiday with my family.</p>	

Solve it

Grammar reference

Progress path

Culture	English in action	Phonics	Get ready for...
<p>Culture: <i>Ball games around the world</i></p> <p>Project: <i>A rules poster for a ball game</i></p>	<p>Talking about preferences: I'd rather go fishing. OK. Let's go fishing on the lake.</p>	<p><b>ur</b> <i>fur, curl</i> Revise <b>ir, er</b> Tricky word (Activity Book) <i>can't</i></p>	<p>Class Book: A1 Movers: Reading and Writing Part 3 Activity Book: A1 Movers: Reading and Writing Part 5</p>
<p>Culture: <i>Historic buildings in Oman</i></p> <p>Project: <i>A poster of historic buildings in Oman</i></p>	<p>Making recommendations: It was very new and modern. You should see it!</p>	<p><b>dge</b> <i>bridge, hedge</i> <b>ge</b> <i>stage, large</i> Tricky words (Activity Book) <i>was, were</i></p>	<p>Class Book: A1 Movers: Reading and Writing Part 6 Reading and Writing Part 2 Activity Book: A1 Movers: Listening Part 2</p>
	<p>Giving opinions: I think Qurum Beach is the most popular beach. Yes, but Tiwi beach is more peaceful than Qurum.</p>		
<p>Culture: <i>Interesting discoveries in Oman</i></p> <p>Project: <i>A leaflet of historic places</i></p>	<p>Giving advice: You should work very slowly and carefully.</p>	<p><b>wr</b> <i>write, wrist</i> <b>mb</b> <i>thumb, climb</i> Tricky word (Activity Book) <i>little</i></p>	<p>Class Book: A1 Movers: Speaking Part 3 Speaking Part 4 Activity Book: A1 Movers: Listening Part 3</p>
<p>Culture: <i>Celebrations in the Arab world</i></p> <p>Project: <i>A leaflet about special days in Oman</i></p>	<p>Explaining you've lost something: I can't find my bag!</p>	<p>Revision of sounds Revision of tricky words</p>	<p>Class Book: A1 Movers: Speaking Part 2 Speaking Part 1 Activity Book: A1 Movers: Reading and Writing Part 1</p>
	<p>Making suggestions and giving preference Shall we go snorkelling? I'd rather buy an ice cream!</p>		



# Introduction

## About *Team Together Oman*

Learn Together! Succeed Together! *Team Together!*

*Team Together Oman* is an engaging and enjoyable, four-level primary English course that develops language alongside future-ready skills. Pupils are challenged to communicate creatively in authentic contexts, think critically and work together to get results. *Team Together Oman* sets out a clear path for progress and prepares pupils for success in external tests, including PTE Young Learners and Cambridge English Qualifications.

*Team Together Oman* takes pupils from level Pre A1 to A2 of the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEFR).

### For pupils

Throughout their Primary education, pupils are in a transitional period between childhood and their teens and are still developing intellectually and emotionally.

*Team Together Oman* follows pupils' developmental stages by offering content that is adapted to their cognitive needs in each level through a careful choice of the main characters, the topics, the language content and the way in which it is presented.

*Team Together Oman* has been designed to create an enjoyable and engaging environment for effective learning. A full colour Class Book and Activity Book are complemented with a wide range of multimedia and digital tools, such as videos, eBooks and digital content online which are certain to captivate pupils' attention.

### For teachers


*Team Together Oman* has been created using tried and tested methodology for effective language teaching. A variety of language presentation contexts and an ample supply of resources will help keep pupils engaged and motivated. Seamlessly integrated external tests preparation and a complete assessment package will help your pupils get results and prepare for future tests.

*Team Together Oman* has also been created with busy teachers in mind. At-a-glance organisation of materials within the Teacher's Book will help you find all the necessary information such as answer keys and audio scripts, but it will also give you ideas on how to extend Class Book activities and how to adapt them to your pupils' level.


## Course features


### Vocabulary

Each unit starts with an eye-catching visual representation of the target vocabulary, which gets pupils' attention right from the start. The visual presentation serves a variety of purposes:

- to present new vocabulary in context.
- to revise previously learnt vocabulary from Grade 3 .
- to offer speaking practice for both everyday communication purposes as well as external tests preparation.
- to set the scene for the story in the next lesson.

It is followed by engaging step-by-step practice. As well as being close to pupils' interests, vocabulary sets reflect external tests topic areas.

The *Think!* feature  at the start of each unit allows for quick revision of the lexical items that pupils are very likely to know from previous learning, which is a great confidence booster.

The *Communicate* activities  effectively help pupils start using English in meaningful contexts from the very beginning.

Extra vocabulary practice is available in corresponding Activity Book lessons where applicable.

Content from the main lessons is complemented by *Extra practice* sections at the end of each unit.

### Grammar

Grammar structures are taught in a clear, scaffolded, step-by-step approach in every unit. The new structures presentation is contextualised through the chant, the song and the story. Grammar boxes on the Class Book page contain clear, child-friendly examples of the target structures and provide a reference point for pupils as they learn and practise.

The structures presented in the grammar boxes are also recorded and serve as a model for the correct pronunciation. Further consolidation practice is available in the Activity Book, both in the corresponding lesson activities as well as in the *Extra practice* and *Grammar reference* sections at the end of each unit.

### Dictation

The Vocabulary and grammar reference sections in the Activity Book end with a dictation task. Pupils hear three sentences that practise the key grammar. By writing the sentences they hear, pupils are also practising their writing skills.


### Stories

*Team Together Oman* Grade 4 stories feature a group of inquiry-minded children, who are keen on Science and learning new things. They call themselves The Discovery Team. Fatma and her brother Sami make friends with their new neighbour, an Australian girl called Lottie. Together, they form The Discovery Team and learn new things in each episode. Each story has been built around a specific concept from common Social and Natural Science curricula. To explore this concept further, please see the teaching notes for Lesson 2 in each unit.

### Skills

All four skills are practised throughout Grade 4 of *Team Together*, with a dedicated skills section in Lessons 7 and 8 of each unit. Special focus has been put on writing: pupils are given a model text and scaffolded, step-by-step support to create their own pieces of writing. Further support is to be found in the Activity Book.

The speaking skill is practised through a variety of contexts:

- Most lessons end with a *Communicate* activity  where pupils can put the newly acquired content into practice and personalise it.
- Lesson 6, *English in action*, is dedicated to teaching functional language, which is key to successful social interaction. Exposing pupils to this language right from the start ensures that they not only acquire knowledge of grammar and vocabulary but also learn what to say and how to behave when playing with others.
- Lesson 9, *Phonics*, focuses on different letter sounds to help pupils get used to speaking and writing in English. The corresponding Activity Book page looks at common tricky words such as *Mr*, *Mrs* and *people*.
- Finally, Lesson 12 is an optional lesson, allowing pupils to enjoy a fun task or game that recycles the unit language.

### Culture


The *Culture* sections in *Team Together Oman* are designed to help foster the Omani identity and as such, they focus on life and culture in Oman as well as looking at aspects of different cultures around the world.

### Learning club: Language booster and CLIL

After every two units, there is a *Learning club* section. This consists of a *Language booster* lesson and a *CLIL* lesson. The *Language booster* lesson extends language and topics taught in the two preceding units. The *CLIL* lesson helps pupils learn key concepts of other subjects in the school curriculum in a more integrated manner. In addition to this, each story in *Team Together Oman* Grade 4 has been built around a key concept from common curricula. To explore this concept further, please see the teaching notes for Lesson 2 in each unit.




## External tests preparation

*Team Together Oman* provides a lot of opportunities to get pupils acquainted with the format of external tests. Cambridge English Qualifications test-type tasks, marked with the symbol , are seamlessly integrated into the core material, providing practice in an unthreatening manner. The *Get ready for...* section in Lesson 11 of each unit both in the Class Book and Activity Book focuses specifically on test practice.

*Team Together Oman* fully prepares learners for Cambridge English Qualifications Pre A1 Starters, A1 Movers and A2 Flyers. As well as test task-type practice, all vocabulary and structures are covered in the series.

## Future skills

One of the features of *Team Together Oman* is the focus on future skills, which are a must for today's learners to allow them to thrive and succeed in the modern world. Pupils need to learn more than just vocabulary and grammar; they need to learn critical thinking and problem-solving, creativity, communication and collaboration. Many of the activities in *Team Together Oman* serve both purposes – as pupils put new knowledge into practice, they also work on the development of their future skills. These activities are easily identifiable with the following icons:

-  Critical thinking
-  Problem-solving
-  Creativity
-  Communication
-  Collaboration

Other future skills covered in *Team Together Oman* include:

**Social and cultural awareness:** Lesson 5 of each unit enables pupils to learn about Omani culture and the wider world.

**Curiosity and Initiative:** In the project work, pupils are encouraged to find information, make decisions and present their opinions.

**Assessment for learning:** see pages 14–15 for more information.

**Literacy, Numeracy, Scientific Literacy:** These are covered through a wide range of topics covered in the series as well as through work on specific areas such as development of the reading and writing skills.

**ICT Literacy:** In the project work, pupils are encouraged to use a variety of materials and sources, which include web searches and work with modern technologies.

## Support for mixed-ability classes

*Team Together Oman* supports teachers who work with mixed-ability classes. The Teacher's Book includes teaching tips for mixed-ability classes, labelled **Diversity: Support/Challenge** and **Extra activity: Fast finishers**. The photocopiable resources package includes extra worksheets for grammar, vocabulary and communication lessons to help teachers cater for the different needs of their pupils. In addition, there are photocopiable worksheets to accompany the Reading and Listening tasks in the Skills lessons, which are available at two levels: support and challenge. They give the teacher an opportunity to work with mixed-ability pupils in the classroom and make the core material in the Class Book more suitable to individual pupils.

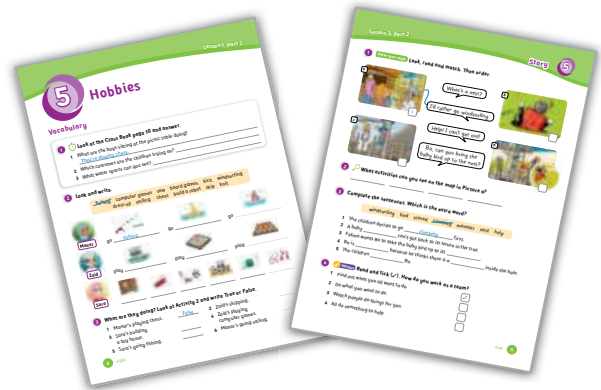
## Class Book

The Semester 1 Class Book provides materials to present the target language effectively. It includes an introductory Welcome unit to revise some of the language from Grade 3 and to introduce the story characters. It then includes four main units, followed by a Progress path section for pupils to track their progress at the end of each unit.



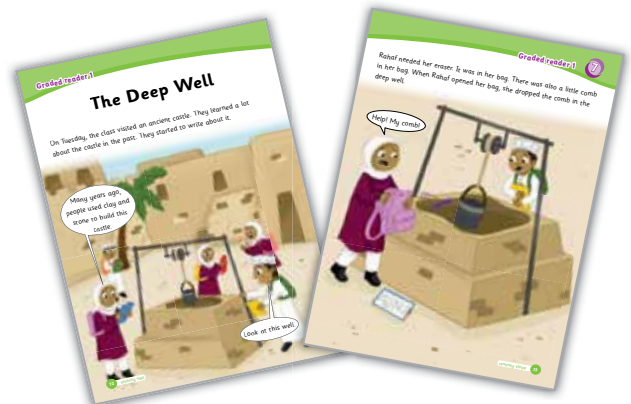
## Activity Book

The Activity Book provides reinforcement and consolidation of the language presented in the Class Book. It contains controlled and freer practice plus personalisation and further listening and reading activities. It also contains an *Extra practice* section for further consolidation of vocabulary and grammar, a *Get ready for...* section for further external test practice.



## Graded readers

In addition to the unit stories, there are also two graded readers after each unit of the Class Book. These consolidate language, phonics and themes covered in the preceding units with a fun story that the pupils will enjoy. Teachers can choose which of the two readers they want to cover in class and which pupils can do at home for homework.



# Course components

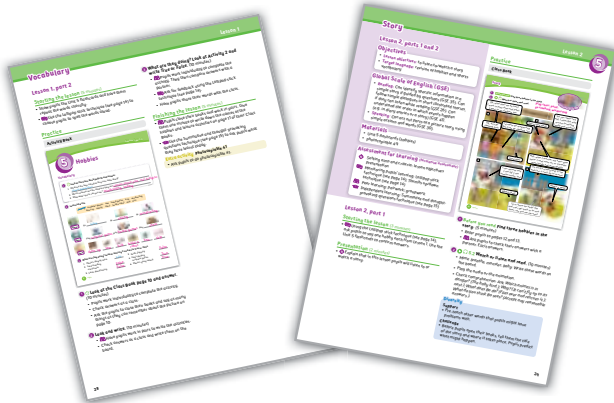
## Teacher's Book

The Teacher's Book provides step-by-step lesson plans covering all the course material. Each lesson plan is clearly structured into stages:

- Starting the lesson
- Presentation
- Practice
- Finishing the lesson.

Additional ideas for Extension, TPR and future skills activities, as well as suggestions on how to support or challenge mixed-ability pupils provide an excellent toolkit for busy teachers who may lack time for planning.

The Introduction includes recommended procedures for effective use of projects and also contains tips on working with mixed-ability groups.



## Class Audio

The Class Audio MP3s have all the recordings for the Class Book and Activity Book. In order to facilitate using the audio materials, all recordings are appropriately numbered on the pages of the Class Book and the Activity Book. All audio for the series can be found online.

## Flashcards, Word Cards and Story Cards

The Flashcards and Word Cards present vocabulary from each unit. They help pupils learn, remember, practise and revise vocabulary. Ideas for their use can be found in the Teacher's Book lesson notes and in the Games bank, which contains extra games and activities.

The Story Cards are large, frame-by-frame versions of the cartoon stories in Lesson 2 of each unit of the Class Book. On the back of each card there is a transcription of the appropriate part of the story's audio recording and questions to be asked before and after listening.



## Posters

The Posters designed for *Team Together Oman* are a great visual aid for presenting or consolidating vocabulary.

The level-specific posters are created from the unit opener illustrations, and provide a lot of opportunities for revision and speaking practice.

The Classroom posters can be used with any level of the course.



## Extra practice

Upon completion of each unit of Semester 1, the teacher is able to check the progress pupils are making by using an extra practice sheet. There are four unit practice sheets, one end-of-semester practice sheet and one end-of-year practice sheet. All these sheets are available in two versions: Standard (A) and Challenge (B) so as to allow teachers for more flexibility with mixed-ability classes.

## Presentation tool and digital resources

All the digital resources for *Team Together Oman* can be found online. These include story animations, videos for the Projects and Culture lessons, a presentation tool, eBook, class audio, photocopiable resources, and more.

## Photocopiable resources

The Photocopiable resources contain consolidation and extension worksheets for further practice of vocabulary, grammar, CLIL, English in action, phonics, self-assessment, stories and songs.

There are also communication games and worksheets to be used with the Culture videos. They are all available online.

## Levels 1-4

The course for Grade 4 (Semesters 1 and 2) includes the following components:

- Class Book
- Activity Book
- Teacher's Book
- Class Audio
- Flashcards
- Word Cards
- Story Cards
- Phonics Cards
- Posters
- Practice Sheets
- Photocopiables

## Class Book and Activity Book

### Lesson 1

**5 Hobbies**

1 How many hobbies do you know?

2 Listen, point and repeat.

3 Look for the words from Activity 2 in the picture on page 10. Write the missing hobby.

4 Find these children in the picture on page 10. What are they doing?

5 In pairs, ask and answer.

Activity Book Unit 5 Lesson 1 part 2 eleven 11

Think! activity to activate pupils' previous knowledge

Photographic vocabulary presentation

Stopwatch activity to revise vocabulary and language from previous units

Communicate activity for personalisation and speaking practice

Go-to links for the accompanying Activity Book lessons

### Lesson 2

Before you read and After you read activities for clearly staged reading practice

**6 The Flood**

1 Before you read Find four places in a town. Find someone in a black and yellow uniform.

2 Watch or listen and read.

3 It's a café now, but what kind of shop was it 150 years ago? Go to page 106 to find out. Use page 32 to help you.

4 After you read Number the sentences in the correct order.

5 Look at pages 32 and 106. With your partner, find five differences between the town then and now.

6 Act out the story.

Activity Book Unit 6 Lesson 2 part 2 thirty five 35

Stories available in video format

CLIL topics embedded in every story

Solve activities encourage curiosity and stimulate critical thinking

Future skills activities in every lesson

Further work on values in the Activity Book

2 Read and write True or False.

1 It's a sunny day in the town.

2 The children are doing a Science project about the town.

3 150 years ago there was a zoo in the town.

4 Sami goes down to the underground wadi.

5 The roads in the town are under water.

3 Correct the false sentences in Activity 2.

1 It's a rainy day in the town.

4 Value! Read and tick (✓).

1 Children's opinions are important.

2 Don't listen to children.

3 People of all ages can do important work.

4 Children are not important.

twenty three 23



# Unit walkthrough

## Class Book and Activity Book

### Lessons 3–4

**Lesson 3, part 1**

**Grammar**

1 Look back! Tick (✓) the sentence in this picture.

1 We were right!

2 There was a wadi in our town 150 years ago.

3 I was at the bookshop yesterday.

2 Listen and repeat.

She was at the zoo a week ago.	They were at the market yesterday.
Were you at the café last night?	Yes, I was. / No, I wasn't.
Where were you yesterday morning?	I was at the shopping mall.

3 Listen and circle.

1 a b

2 a b

3 a b

4 Circle the correct answer.

1 I was ~~wasn't~~ at the bookshop yesterday evening.

2 Were you at the market two weeks ago? Yes, we were.

3 Ali was ~~wasn't~~ at the zoo last night.

4 They were ~~were~~ on holiday in Salalah last summer.

5 In pairs, ask and answer. Where were you ...

- last Saturday?
- a year ago?

Where were you last Saturday? I was at the zoo.

6 Pupil A: Activity Book, page 66. Pupil B: Activity Book, page 70.

36 thirty-six

**Lesson 4, part 1**

**Vocabulary and Grammar**

1 Listen, point and repeat.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

noisy busy cheap expensive quiet safe ancient modern

2 Listen and sing.

Many years ago,  
When I was very small,  
This town was very quiet and safe.  
It isn't the same now at all!

There were a lot of small, cheap shops. Now there's a modern shopping mall.  
There weren't a lot of noisy roads. There are busy roads and car parks.  
There weren't any expensive hotels. But there is one place that's still the same.  
It was very different, you know! Our ancient mosque and park!  
Many years ago ...

3 Listen and repeat.

There was an expensive shop. There weren't a lot of noisy roads.  
Was there a café? Yes, there was. / No, there wasn't.

4 What do you know about your town 100 years ago? Ask and answer.

1 Were there any cars? Were there any cars?  
2 Was there a noisy train station? No, there weren't, but there were quiet roads.  
3 Was there a modern shopping mall?  
4 Was there a busy market?

5 Use the words to make sentences about your town 100 years ago.

hotel bridge ancient modern busy  
clothes shop quiet safe expensive  
car park bus stop cheap noisy

I think there was a busy hotel and cheap clothes shops. There weren't any modern car parks.

37 thirty-seven

Visual Vocabulary presentation

Grammar box with recorded phrases

Song to teach vocabulary and grammar in context

Grammar box for extra support and scaffolding, with recorded phrases

Communicate activity for personalisation and speaking practice

Information gap activities for freer grammar practice in the Activity Book

Scaffolded activities to help pupils consolidate new language

### Lessons 5–6

**Lesson 5, part 1**

**CULTURE**

**Ball games around the world**

What ball games do you know? Do you play with a bat? Do you play with your hands or feet?

**Cricket**

Cricket is very popular in the UK, Australia, New Zealand, India and Pakistan. You play cricket with a bat and a very hard, fast ball. You must stand at a wicket. Then you hit the ball with the bat and run quickly to the other wicket.

**Baseball**

Baseball is a very popular game in the USA and in Japan. You play baseball with a bat and a ball. You must hit the ball, then you run quickly around the diamond.

**Australian Rules Football**

Australian Rules Football comes from Australia. You can run with the ball and you can kick it. It's a very exciting game! The players can jump very high!

**Pup Fact**

Do you know that people all around the world play ball games?

**Project - Lesson 5, part 2**

**Make a rules poster for a ball game.**

- In groups, choose a sport.
- Find or draw pictures of this sport.
- Write about the sport. Answer these questions:
  - What's the name of the sport?
  - What can you do?
  - What must you do?
  - What mustn't you do?
- Present your poster to the class.

**The rules of volleyball**

You can play it indoors or outdoors. You must hit the ball with your hands. You must play on one side of the net. You mustn't catch the ball.

**Lesson 6**

**English in action**

Talking about preferences

1 What hobbies can you see in the pictures? Which do you want to do?

1 2

2 Watch or listen. What would Sara rather do?

3 Watch or listen again, read and check.

What shall we do, Sara?  
Do you want to play a computer game?  
Not really. I'd rather play chess.  
I can't play chess very well. I'd rather go fishing.  
Good idea!  
OK, let's go fishing on the lake.

4 Plan your day.

Do you want to ...?  
Not really. I'd rather ...

16 sixteen

17 seventeen

Projects based on the principles of team work, to foster collaboration, creativity and initiative

Before you read and After you read activities for clearly staged reading practice

Focus on functional language from early levels

More content related to the topic available on Culture video

Useful phrases at a glance

Model dialogue to help pupils learn new language in natural contexts

## Class Book and Activity Book

### Lessons 7–8

Skills section for integrated skills practice

Before you read and After you read activities for clearly staged reading practice

**Recorded text**

**Skills**

Lesson 7, part 1

**Reading**

1 Before you read Look at the pictures. Which activity do you want to try?

2 Listen and read. How much do the activities cost?

**Museat Leisure Centre**

**Give-it-a-go Day!**

Do you want to find a new hobby or try a new sport? Come to our Give-it-a-go Day! We've got a lot of different sports and activities for you!

**Climbing**

Do you love climbing trees? Come and try our climbing wall! You can learn to climb safely and have lots of fun!

**Races**

We've got a lot of fun races, too! There are running races in the morning and afternoon.

**Trampolining**

Jump as high as you can on our amazing trampolines! With the safety harness on, you can jump very high or try some more exciting moves!

**Arts and crafts**

Do you love making things? Come and try your hand at lots of different arts and crafts! Would you rather learn knitting or sewing? Or would you rather learn painting or drawing?

When: Saturday 10<sup>th</sup> April, 10 o'clock to 4 o'clock  
Where: Museat Leisure Centre  
Cost: just 10 OMR, for all activities!

Fill in your form now!

18 eighteen

Activity Book, Unit 5  
Lesson 7, part 2

Lesson 8, part 1

**Listening**

1 Look at the pictures. Listen and choose the correct picture.

1 Who can run very quickly?  
A Sara B Sheikh C Aze  
Sara Sheikh Aze

2 Who plays chess badly?  
A Ammar B Talal C Basim  
Ammar Talal Basim

**Speaking**

2 Make a plan with a partner about which activities you'd like to do at the Give-it-a-go Day.

What activity do you want to do?  
I want to do trampolining.  
Why?  
Because you can jump high and it's exciting!  
I'd rather ...

**Writing**

3 Read the form. Who is Rashid's emergency contact?

**Museat Leisure Centre**

First name: RASHID  
Surname: AL KHAROUFI  
Date of birth: 15/05/2005  
Address: BOQER ROAD MUSCAT  
Home phone number: 5247 899208  
Emergency contact: YOUSUF AL KHAROUFI  
Relationship: FATHER  
Emergency contact phone number: 9933 0000  
Any allergies? YES - ALLERGIC TO EGGS, SOYBEANS  
Taking part in: TRAMPOLINING, GAMES, CLIMBING  
Signature: Yousuf Al Kharoufi

4 Fill in your own form.

1 Plan

- Who's your emergency contact?
- What's his/her phone number?
- Do you have any allergies?

2 Write

- Create and fill in your form.

3 Check your work

- Complete all the parts?

Use capital letters when you fill in a form.

Activity Book, Unit 5  
Lesson 8, part 2

Practice tasks in test-like format help pupils prepare for external tests

Scaffolded step-by-step instruction for the writing task

Model text in the writing section

Writing tip to help pupils deal with linking words, punctuation, etc.

### Lessons 9–10

**Phonics**

Lesson 9

1 Listen and say.

ir er ur

bird herbs fur cut

2 Listen and say the tongue twister.

Is that a bird in the herbs?  
It isn't a bird. It has fur and curls!

3 Listen and write. Then say.

1 s \_ f 2 h \_ t 3 b \_ n

4 Listen and match. Then write.

1 ur a sh \_ t  
2 er b \_ n  
3 ir c f \_ n

20 twenty

Activity Book, Unit 5  
Lesson 9

**Review**

5

Read the words and write them in the boxes. You have ten seconds for each question.

Review Basim Seed

Can or can't do.

well	☺	☺	☺
carefully	☺	☺	☺
quietly	☺	☺	☺
loudly	☺	☺	☺
quickly	☺	☺	☺

She can swim well.  
She can sing loudly.  
She can't talk quietly.

Test

**Challenge**

Challenge your classmates and play the game!

Work in two teams. Look back through the unit to find the answers to these questions.

- Find a child dressed up as a firefighter. (1 point)
- Who wants to go windsurfing in The activity day? (1 point)
- What do you need to play cricket? (1 point)

Now think of three more questions to ask the other team.

Activity Book, Unit 5  
Lesson 10, part 2

Sample words with the target phonics sounds

Work on pronunciation through tongue twisters

Phonics activities for practice

Review section for consolidation

Collaborative task for engaging and motivating revision; additional self-assessment activity. Progress path, after each unit

### Lesson 11

**Get ready for...**

Lesson 11

**AI Movers Reading and Writing Part 3**

1 Read the story. Choose and write a word from the box.

Read the whole story before you write anything. Then read the list of words. Try all the words and choose the word that best fits.

jumps school family  
river fishing swim

Yasir loves going (1) fishing. He goes fishing on Fridays and Saturdays, and sometimes he goes fishing after (2). Sometimes his dad goes with him, sometimes his sister (3). He goes to the (4) trees around it. There One day, Yasir is fishing a mother, a little boy hears a cry. The little Yasir (6) that the little boy is (7).

Now tick (✓) the best answer.

- Yasir's hobby
- Dad goes fishing
- Yasir's day at the

22 twenty two

**Fun corner**

5

1 Play and say.

I can build a robot quickly. I can play board games well.

**Start 1**

1	build a robot / quickly	23
2	Miss a turn	24
3	knit / well	25
4	play chess / well	26
5	Have another go	27
6	play computer games / quietly	28
7	Go back 2 spaces	29
8	Have another go	30
9	sew / easily	31
10	kick a ball / well	32
11	play board games / well	33
12	Miss a turn	34
13	Go back 2 spaces	35

**Finish 2**

1	play board games / well	24
2	Go back 2 spaces	25
3	sing / loudly	26
4	exercise / easily	27
5	Move forward one space	28
6	knit / carefully	29
7	play computer games / quietly	30
8	Go back 2 spaces	31
9	sew / carefully / climb / quickly	32
10	sing / loudly	33
11	Move forward one space	34
12	skip / slowly	35
13	skip / quickly	36
14	Go back 2 spaces	37
15	kick a ball / easily	38
16	knit / carefully	39

**Start 2**

1	Miss a turn	23
2	play board games / well	24
3	Miss a turn	25
4	Go back 2 spaces	26
5	knit / carefully	27
6	play board games / well	28
7	Miss a turn	29
8	Go back 2 spaces	30
9	knit / carefully	31
10	play board games / well	32
11	Miss a turn	33
12	Go back 2 spaces	34

**Finish 1**

1	play board games / well	23
2	Miss a turn	24
3	Go back 2 spaces	25
4	knit / carefully	26
5	play computer games / quietly	27
6	Go back 2 spaces	28
7	sew / carefully / climb / quickly	29
8	sing / loudly	30
9	Move forward one space	31
10	skip / slowly	32
11	skip / quickly	33
12	Go back 2 spaces	34
13	kick a ball / easily	35
14	knit / carefully	36

Activity Book, Unit 5  
Fun corner

External tests practice section

Fun tasks and games to recycle language in an enjoyable way

## Monitoring progress and test readiness with *Team Together Oman*

*Team Together Oman* can be used to prepare pupils for external tests including Cambridge English Qualifications and PTE Young Learners. *Team Together Oman* provides teachers and institutions with the GSE tools that enable them to demonstrate visibility of pupil progress step by step, and a way of identifying and addressing learner needs and supporting the achievement of goals whether these be general or test related. *Team Together Oman* is additionally aligned to English Benchmark which can provide an independent measure of learner proficiency and formative information to support planning and next steps.

The table below indicates the correlation between the course and various international frameworks and tests.

	GSE	CEFR	PTE YL	English Benchmark	Cambridge English Qualifications
Grade 1	10–22	Pre A1			Pre A1 Starters
Grade 2	17–29	Pre A1/A1	Firstwords	Level 1	Pre A1 Starters
Grade 3	20–32	A1	Springboard	Level 2	Pre A1 Starters
Grade 4	24–39	A1/A2	Quickmarch	Level 3	A1 Movers

## The Global Scale of English



The Global Scale of English (GSE) is a standardised, granular scale which measures English language proficiency. Unlike some other frameworks which describe attainment in broad bands, the Global Scale of English identifies what a learner can do at each point on the scale across speaking, listening, reading and writing skills.

The scale is designed to motivate learners by giving a more granular insight into their progress. Teachers can use the Global Scale of English to match a pupil to the right course materials for their exact level and learning goals.

The badging above and on the back of your book shows the range of objectives that are covered within the content. Knowing this range helps you select course materials with the right level of support and challenge for your pupils to help them progress. It does not mean that pupils need to have mastered all the objectives below the range before starting the course, or that they will all be 'at' the top of the range by the end.

For more information about how using the GSE can support your planning and teaching, the assessment of your learners, and in selecting or creating additional materials to supplement your core programme, please go to [www.english.com/gse](http://www.english.com/gse).

## What is English Benchmark?

English Benchmark is a motivating English test for young learners aged 6–13, which proves pupils' English abilities to parents, monitors learning progress and ensures teaching targets the right skills. English Benchmark measures pupils' speaking, listening, reading and writing skills through fun and interactive tablet-based activities, with immediate detailed reports for teachers and parents that include pupils' strengths, suggestions for improvement and recommended activities to improve their skills.

English Benchmark and *Team Together Oman* make the perfect partners for your language and learning assessment. As your pupils learn with *Team Together Oman*, you can use the English Benchmark tests to measure their progress.

In order to show progress, learners should take the test at least once at the start and once at the end of the year. If possible, teachers could ask learners to take the test again half way through the year or at the end of each semester to check they are on track.

## Formative assessment / Assessment for learning

Formative assessment, or assessment for learning, is "the process of seeking and interpreting evidence for use by learners and their teachers, to identify where the learners are in their learning, where they need to go and how best to get there" (Assessment Reform Group, 2008).

Here are some suggestions on how to implement assessment for learning in your classroom.

### Main strategies of formative assessment

The main stages of the formative assessment process are:

- 1 Setting the aims and criteria for success
- 2 Monitoring pupils' learning, including giving constructive feedback
- 3 Peer learning
- 4 Independent learning/long-term assessment

### Setting aims and criteria

If you want your pupils to be successful in the learning process, you need to tell them what it is that they are going to learn and what you expect of them in terms of performance.

At the beginning of each lesson, the teacher should tell the pupils what they are going to learn. This can be done by using key questions which are meant to inspire pupils' curiosity, interest and engagement.

- **Key question technique** At the beginning of each lesson, the teacher should tell the pupils what they are going to learn. This can be done by using key questions which are meant to inspire pupils' curiosity, interest and engagement.

### Monitoring pupils' learning

This stage of assessment is used to achieve the following goals:

- to adjust ongoing teaching and learning
- to increase the level of interaction and provide for feedback loops during questioning
- to improve pupils' achievement of intended outcomes.

The tools that can be used for monitoring pupils' learning are:

- **Lollipop stick technique** or **Random selection tool**. Use sticks or cards that pupils can personalise with their names at the beginning of the school year. Pick them randomly to call on pupils for questions, thus ensuring that all pupils have an active role and will produce a similar amount of language, because pupils' talking time (STT) matters!
- **Mini-whiteboards**. Use them for short answers or to practise prepositions, vocabulary, comprehension, spelling, gap fills, grammar – any time you want to check understanding. Pupils write their answers individually and hold up the whiteboards and you get feedback from all your pupils at the same time!
- **Hands up/down technique**. Use this to check understanding. Ask a question or make a statement. Pupils put their hands up if the answer/statement is correct, but keep it down if not. You can also use it to check if pupils want to give positive or negative feedback to a task.
- **Happy/sad face technique** (also Yes/No, Stop/Go, True/False, Thumbs up/down). Use this for critical thinking development and yes/no answers. Make a set of cards with a happy face on one side, and a sad face on the other – one for each pupil – or pupils can make their own. After practising a skill, ask pupils how they feel they are doing. Alternatively, pupils can show this on a scale from 1–5 using the fingers on their hands for a deeper understanding of the *yes* and *no* answers.
- **Traffic light cards technique**. Use them to check that pupils know what to do on a given task. Pupils show you a green/yellow/red card, depending on their level of confidence.

- **Exit slips.** Use them to evaluate your lessons at the end of the day or session, to get feedback from the lesson, or to offer pupils the opportunity to give opinions. Exit slips can simply be post-it notes stuck on the door on their way out of class.

Other types of assessment tools you can use are those oriented towards helping you actively observe the different skills and competences that your pupils are developing while they are working in class:

- **Checklists.** These are very useful to assess different tasks or different stages of the same task at the same time. Taking note of your pupils' performance on the spot will provide you with objective evidence of their true level of competence.
- **Observation forms.** The teacher collects data on pupils' work by filling in observation forms to adjust teaching procedures where necessary.
- **Video/audio recordings.** These are excellent tools to observe your pupils from a different perspective and analyse their strengths and weaknesses, behaviour and classroom relationships in depth. (Be aware that you may need parental permission to record children.)

## Peer learning

Working together in pairs or groups gives pupils an opportunity to share knowledge and also learn from their classmates. Tools that can be used for peer work and peer learning are:

- **Think-pair-share.** Pupils work on their own, then discuss their ideas in pairs and finally they present their ideas to a group or to the whole class.
- **Two stars and a wish.** Pupils say two positive things about the work of their partner and suggest one area for improvement.
- **Expert envoy.** This is a tool to use with mixed-ability classes. If you have pupils who are strong in some areas, you may choose them to be the 'experts' for their class or group and ask them to help their classmates.
- **Three facts and a fib.** Pupils write three true statements and one false statement about the topic of a lesson and share them with other pupils/pairs/groups to see if they can identify the false information. This technique can also be used in a summative evaluation at the end of a longer learning process, e.g. a unit.

Checklists and video recordings can also be used as peer learning tools.

## Independent learning and long-term formative assessment

Long-term formative assessment tools are used to improve the following areas of your assessment practice:

- for pupils to develop critical thinking skills about their own performance
- to promote collaboration
- to improve pupils' achievement of intended instructional outcomes.

Performance-based teaching and learning impacts strongly on the way we carry out assessment by helping pupils become autonomous and independent learners aware of the process by which they learn as well as their learning goals.

Some of the long-term assessment tools you can use in your classes are:

- **Summative and thought-provoking questions.** At the end of a lesson or a unit, pupils are asked to reflect on their learning process and to try to self-assess their performance by answering the following questions *What have I learnt? What do I need to work on? I can ... I'm (not) good at ...*
- **Portfolios.** Pupils are given the responsibility of selecting which pieces of work they produce should be placed in their portfolios to demonstrate how they are improving.
- **Checklists.** These are used to assess pupils' completion of a task. They are not rating scales and they only include Yes/No or ✓/✗ descriptors.

- **Projects.** Pupils present what they know through pictures and texts such as essays, research reports, or long-term projects.
- **Pupil Travel journals/Learning diaries.** Pupils create their own books, in which they chart the journey of their learning.
- **Rubrics.** They can be used when evaluating pupil performance or work resulting from a performance task. For further details see below.

It is very important to remember that before this type of assessment is implemented in the classroom, a supportive classroom environment is created and pupils are given guidance on how to reflect upon and evaluate their own performance as well as that of their peers.

## How to work with projects

by Magdalena Custodio Espinar

One of the key factors affecting pupils' ability to learn cooperation and collaboration is the type of situations they face. In other words, pupils will not learn how to be a reliable team player if they aren't exposed to tasks that require team work. There are many ways to organise pupil interaction in class and the most popular ones are collaborative and cooperative work. These two interaction systems may seem interchangeable but there are some clear differences between them:

### Collaborative work

- Group goal
- Learning takes place in a group
- The final product is co-constructed
- Roles/responsibilities are flexible and agreed
- The process is important

### Cooperative work

- Individual goals within the group
- Learning is an individual process
- The final product consists of individual contributions
- Roles and responsibilities are usually pre-defined
- The final product is important

When working on projects, collaborative work is the preferred system, giving pupils an opportunity to share ideas, verbalise opinions and interact with other classmates. Thanks to this, a real communicative context is developed in the classroom during which pupils must listen to each other and reach an agreement to create a common product.

To apply successful project work in the classroom, you should:

- Keep a flexible project schedule and involve pupils in project design when possible. Promote parent involvement.
- Prepare pupils by having them thinking about the project in advance. A rubric can be very useful to show them what they are aiming for and trying to accomplish. Use negotiation strategies to help them understand the rationale for this type of work.
- Establish moments for feedback and specific products at the end of each work session to promote a sense of mission, e.g. record evidence of progress using field notes or observation templates. Keep records public so pupils have ownership of them by using rubrics or checklists.
- Avoid making decisions for pupils. It will take time for pupils to be able to develop time management skills and learning to learn competence. Promote this by providing them with support during the project, e.g. a time line with the work sessions, worksheets with instructions or steps to follow, a project goals checklist to tick, a webquest to develop critical thinking skills, etc.
- Assess the quality of projects by using professional work as a reference. Boost the quality of your pupils' work by showing them good examples of other pupils' work. Develop scaffolding to help pupils reach the standards and include both individual and group grades.
- Promote full participation by using a checklist for active observation of pupils that will give you objective evidence of their performance. Set realistic alternatives and consequences for non-participation such as suggesting individual ways of working on the project, negative individual grades, etc.
- Foster reflection strategies both for the process and for the final product from a critical point of view to improve future performance.

When deciding on how to group your pupils, you should consider your rationale so as to group pupils according to the right criterion. Here are some ideas to arrange your class for group and project work.

**Grouping for leadership.** If you have passive pupils who need someone monitoring and taking control of their active contribution in group work, pre-assign groups and make sure these pupils share groups with class leaders (those pupils who are more skilled or have more knowledge).

**Random selection groups.** If the task does not require specific pupils to be separate or together, you can simply put the groups in alphabetical order, take their names from a bag or hat, use a pack of cards (group them based on having black or red cards, cards in a specific order, the same numbers ...) or word-family cards, synonym word cards, date of birth, etc.

Then, you can rotate some members to create new groups. Turn and talk (front row/back row) for a quick group task is also a possibility.

If you are familiar with your pupils' interests, e.g. football teams, make cards with the names of the most popular players and use them to make the 'football teams'. You can do this with popular bands, TV series and cartoons of their interest.

**Grouping by interest.** Have your pupils complete a survey and group them based on their responses. You can also design the task according to different interests and give pupils the opportunity to join a group according to their personal interest or expectations of the task, e.g. in a presentation about their hometown, pupils interested in history can focus on historical buildings and pupils interested in sports can focus on stadiums and sports facilities.

## How to work with stories

### Stage 1 – Before listening to the story

First, talk to pupils about the characters appearing in the story and about the places in which they appear. Ask pupils what they can see in the pictures and invite them to guess what will happen in the story. Remember to praise pupils for all their ideas, but do not correct them and do not explain too much. (In a moment pupils will listen to the recording and check if they were right). At the beginning of the school year, you may wish to ask questions in L1, little by little switching to English. Focus more on what occurred in the story than on the language itself. First, pupils will understand the story as a whole, then they will remember the vocabulary used in the story. Questions for this stage can be found at the back of each story card.

### Stage 2 – Listening to the story

All the stories have been recorded by professional actors. However, if for any reason it is not possible to play the recording or if the teacher wants to tell the story himself/herself, the complete text of the recording is provided on the back of each story card. At this stage remember to encourage pupils to compare their previous ideas with what actually happened in the story. Play the recorded story and/or play the animation and ask pupils to point to the appropriate pictures in the Class Book.

### Stage 3 – After listening to the story

After listening to (or watching) the story together, ask pupils a few questions about it to make sure that they understood what happened. You may use the questions provided on the back of each story card or make up your own questions.

When answering, pupils additionally practise and consolidate the previously introduced language material. At this stage it is best to speak English.



## Stage 4 – Acting out

After having listened to the story a few times your pupils should be ready to act it out. Pupils can contribute to the story, first by making particular gestures and then, depending on the difficulty of the text, by using simple phrases. You may also play particular parts of the recording and ask pupils to repeat them each time.

Next, you may divide pupils into groups and ask each of them to say the lines of one character. Under the teacher's supervision and on the basis of the pictures, pupils quote the lines of appropriate characters. To make this exercise more interesting, you can bring items to be used as props.

## How to use the Story Cards

There are many ways that the Story Cards can be used with the stories in *Team Together Oman* Grade 4. Here are some ideas.

- Cover the numbers on the cards. Shuffle the cards, stick them to the board and ask pupils to arrange them in the correct order.
- Cover the numbers on the cards. Stick the cards to the board in the correct order. Ask pupils to close their eyes, then take away one card. The pupils are supposed to identify the missing card.
- Cover the numbers on the cards. Hide the cards in various places in the classroom. Ask pupils to find them and stick them to the board in the correct order.
- Show pupils a story card and read the corresponding lines. When reading, make intentional mistakes, e.g. say *red* instead of *yellow*. Pupils correct your mistakes.
- Distribute the story cards among a few pupils. Play the story recording. When a pupil hears the lines referring to his/her card, he/she should stand up and show it to the class.

## Exercises without story cards

- Ask pupils to draw a scene from the story they have heard.
- Ask pupils to invent another ending for the story they have heard.
- Pupils draw their favourite character.
- Talk to pupils about what the characters learnt.
- Ask the pupils about the way they would behave or feel if they were one of the characters.
- Read some lines from the story. Pupils should provide the name of the character who says the lines.

## How to do the class reading sessions

There are lessons for class reading throughout the year. These are indicated in the teaching notes and are usually at the end of every unit. However, you can use class reading flexibly to suit pupils' needs.

- Choose a big book with the class. It's beneficial if pupils contribute to the selection. You can present pupils with options and they say which story they would like to hear. Or, you can ask different pupils each time to choose a story. If you prefer, choosing a story can also be a reward for excellent work in class or for helping a classmate, or similar. The remaining unit reader can be read either at home or in classroom quiet time.
- For each picture, ask pupils what they can see. This is a pre-reading activity. Read the page. Ask pupils questions about what they have read. This might be simple checking that they have understood what they have read. Then ask pupils what they think might happen next. These are during-reading activities.
- Then at the end of the story, ask pupils questions about the story, or ask pupils what they liked about it. If you have class time, you can ask pupils to participate in a class reading post-reading activity, such as drawing a picture of their favourite character or an event from the story.

## How to work with posters

Posters can be a powerful and engaging tool for presenting or consolidating the language covered in the Class Book.

In *Team Together Oman* Grade 4, Semester 2 there are six full-colour vocabulary posters featuring the main characters of this level. Each poster can be used for presentation or revision of the first set of vocabulary from each unit.

## Techniques of working with posters

Stick the poster to the wall in a visible place. In this way it will remind pupils of the material they have covered.

**Predicting.** In order to create the atmosphere of anticipation and to invoke curiosity in children, before you show the pupils a poster, give them its title. Tell pupils that in a moment they will see a poster with e.g. *toys*. Ask pupils to think about the vocabulary which may be presented in the poster. Encourage pupils to provide examples of particular words related to this thematic group. In the case of toys it will be *a teddy, a doll, a ball, a kite*, etc. Then, stick the poster to the wall and check together how many words the pupils predicted correctly.

**Asking questions.** Point to the objects, persons, colours, etc. presented in the poster and ask questions *What's this? What colour is it? How many (balls) can you see? Is it a (doll)?*, etc.

**Finding and pointing.** Ask individual pupils to come to the poster, find and point to appropriate objects, e.g. *Point to the (red car)*, etc. You may also divide pupils into two teams and change finding particular elements into an exciting competition. Ask one person from the team to come to the poster and find a particular object. If he/she does it correctly, the team scores a point. If he/she makes a mistake, another team takes a turn. Pupils may replace the teacher and give the commands.

**Memory game.** Set a specific time limit, e.g. 30 seconds. Tell pupils to look at the poster carefully and remember as much as they can. Then, cover the poster or take it off the wall and ask pupils one by one about the objects presented in the poster. You may also ask about the features of these objects, e.g. *Is the (ball) (big)? What colour is the (kite)?* The pupils' task is to answer from memory. You may also conduct this exercise as a team competition, observing the time limit. The team who provided the biggest number of names of objects from the poster wins.

**True or false?** Point to various objects in the poster and make true or false sentences related to them. For example, point to a doll and say *It's a teddy*. Pupils answer *No*.

**Quiz.** Tell pupils that you are thinking about a certain picture from the poster. The pupils' task is to guess which picture you mean. You may describe the object you have in mind for more advanced pupils, e.g. *It's brown. It's small. What is it?* Pupils answer (*It's a teddy*.)

**Peeping through a keyhole.** Cut out a hole (5–7 cm wide) resembling a keyhole in the middle of a large sheet of paper. Place the sheet on the poster and ask pupils what they can see. Move the sheet on the poster so that each time pupils guess the name of another object.

**Singing.** Use a chant related to the subject of the poster and introduced in the Class Book. Ask one or more pupils to come to the poster. Play the chant; the task of pupils standing by the poster is to point to the objects mentioned in the recording.

**Placing words on the poster.** If pupils can recognise written words, you may ask them to place appropriate word cards below the pictures in the poster. One by one, pupils come to the poster and place a card with the corresponding word in the appropriate place. Then you may ask all pupils to read the words aloud together.

**Make your own poster.** Pupils can create their own posters, based on a similar topic.

## How to work with videos and animations

Videos are a great tool for conveying information to young learners. A combination of images, movement, colours, sounds, music and language fulfils its educational functions at all levels of understanding. Pupils may watch the same videos many times and each time their perception of the material they watch is enhanced.

### How is the video material presented?

In *Team Together Oman* Grade 4 there are four types of video material for each unit: story animations, Project videos, English in Action and Culture videos.

### When to use the video material?

- You can use the story animations either as the presentation stage, or after you have listened to and read the version available in the Class Book.
- Project videos are to be used as a way to make sure pupils understand the steps of the project.
- Culture videos are to be used as an extension of the content presented in the Class Books as they offer additional information about the topic covered in the lesson.

It is likely that during the first viewing pupils will not understand the entire text presented in the recording, but they will get the meaning of the pictures, sounds and the rhythm of the spoken language. They will remember some phrases, especially those which are often repeated.

You can also use the animations and the videos to revise the material. Children have got good short-term memory, but watching the same episodes again two months after new material was introduced will considerably stimulate their memorising ability.

What are the techniques of working with the video material?

- listening with the screen covered (*blind listening*)
- watching with the sound muted (*silent viewing*)

### How to use the video material?

- Watch the video with pupils from the beginning to the end. Encourage pupils to say aloud the English words which they remember from the recording.
- Watch the video again, stopping the recording after each scene or step so that you can ask pupils questions about the things they see.
- Pupils complete the photocopiable worksheet corresponding to the recording.

### Where can you find worksheets for the video material?

Worksheets for the video material are included in the photocopiable resources, which can be downloaded from the online resources.

## Flashcard games

### Which card is this?

Cut out a small square in the middle of an A4 sheet of white paper. Cover the flashcards with this sheet so that pupils can see only part of the picture in the cut-out hole. Ask pupils to guess what the cards show.

### Observation

Show pupils a flashcard, but do it quickly. Then ask them *What's this?* The pupils' task is to name the object shown on the card. If pupils fail to guess it the first time, show them the card again, a little more slowly than before.

### Guess and take it!

Hold up a flashcard. The pupil who is first to say the word presented in the card may take it. The pupil who collects the highest number of cards wins.

### Echo

Make sure that pupils are familiar with the echo technique. Show them the flashcards and say the relevant words. Ask pupils to repeat the words after you a few times, getting quieter and quieter, like an echo.

### Remember and say it!

Stick four or five cards to the board. Ask pupils to remember what they present. Then, remove the cards from the board and ask pupils to say the names. Repeat with other cards.

### Remembering the order

Select four flashcards from the same topic and stick them to the board. Ask a few volunteers to look at the pictures and say the names of the objects presented. Then, ask pupils to remember the order in which the cards are placed on the board. Stick the cards face down on the board and ask pupils to say the words in the correct order.

### What's missing?

Stick the flashcards on the board (or on the top of a table). Give pupils a few minutes to remember the order in which they are placed. Then, ask pupils to close their eyes. Remove one of the cards. Ask *What's missing?* Pupils identify the missing card.

### Snap!

Prepare flashcards from one vocabulary group. Say or write on the board one word from the group. Show pupils all cards from the group. When pupils see the card with the picture corresponding to the word, they call *Snap!*

### Which card have you got?

Select a few flashcards and give them to pupils. Ask them to pass the cards on in such a way that they cannot see what they show. At some point, say *Stop* and ask *Who's got the (apple)?* The pupil with the card you asked for says *Me!*

### Where is this card?

Stick the flashcards around the classroom. Say the words and pupils run to the appropriate cards, or point to them if there is not enough space.

### Picture dictation

Describe a flashcard (or flashcards) in detail and have pupils draw what you describe. You can also describe pictures from the Class Book for pupils to draw. Pupils may also play in groups.

### Listen and pass it on!

Distribute the flashcards with selected words among pupils (e.g. one card per desk). Speak out sentences including the selected words and ask the pupils to pass the appropriate cards to you.

### Standing up

Hand out the cards from one set, e.g. toys, to individual pupils. Say the names of the toys aloud. The pupil holding the card showing the toy stands up when he/she hears its name and then shows the picture to the other pupils.

### Raise your card

Distribute the cards among pupils. Tell pupils a short story in English. When a pupil hears the word depicted in his/her card, he/she raises it up.

### Yes!/No!

Show pupils the flashcards and ask them to name the pictures together with you. Then, show pupils the cards in such a way that only they can see the pictures. Say a word in English. Pupils say *Yes!* if the picture shows the word you said. If the picture does not show the given word, pupils say *No!* Continue saying words until all the pictures are correctly named.

### Numbers

Stick five flashcards on the board. Ask one pupil to come to the board and to write numbers under the pictures, following your instructions, e.g. *'Doll' is number (one)*. Do the same with the four remaining cards. Then, ask individual pupils *What's number (three)?*

### Charades

If it is possible, ask pupils to sit in a circle. Give one pupil the entire set of cards. Play some music. Pupils pass the set on when they hear the music. Stop the music. The pupil who holds the set stands up, selects one card and mimes the word (e.g. if he/she had chosen a picture of a banana, he/she mimes peeling it and eating it). The task of the others is to guess the word. The card described is taken away and the game goes on.

### Which is different?

Stick a set of five cards on the board: four from the same group and one from a different group. Ask pupils *Which is different?* The pupils' task is to find the odd card as quickly as possible.

### Categories

Revise the vocabulary belonging to two topics, e.g. toys and parts of the body, using the flashcards. Show pupils the flashcards and check if they can name them. Then, divide pupils into two groups and ask them to recall as many words belonging to one category as they can. Award the team one point for each correct answer.

### Game with the bag

Put a few flashcards belonging to various categories in a non-transparent bag. Ask pupils to pick one card from the bag and name the item it presents. A pupil picks up cards and names pictures until he/she takes a picture he/she is not able to name. Count all the correctly named cards and award the pupil one point for each card. Put the cards in the bag again and repeat the game with another pupil. The winner is the pupil who scores the highest number of points.

## Countdown

Divide the class into small groups. Give each group several shuffled flashcards relating to different units (prepare copies of cards if you want each group to have the same set). Ask the groups to divide the cards into separate categories (e.g. colours, school objects, etc.). The winner is the group which completes the task first.

## Easy or difficult?

Divide 20 flashcards into two groups: 'easy' (e.g. with vocabulary relating to the currently discussed unit) and 'difficult' (e.g. with vocabulary relating to previous units). Divide the class into two teams. Each team scores 5 points for each correctly given word from the 'difficult' group and 1 point for a word from the 'easy' group.

## Phonics games

---

### Stand or sit?

Say the target sound, e.g. *b-*, and write the letter on the board. Pupils repeat the sound. They then stand up and listen. If you say a word that starts with the target sound, e.g. *ball*, they stay standing. If you say a word that starts with another sound, e.g. *doll*, they should sit down. Start with the words that pupils know, and then move on to other words with the same initial sounds. The focus here is on recognising the sounds rather than on the meaning of the words. Be careful to choose words with pure initial sounds and not mix them up with clusters, e.g. *b-*, but not *bl-* or *br-*.

### Which letter?

Display A4 sheets of paper with large single letters drawn on them in different parts of the classroom. When you say a particular sound/letter or a word starting with one of the letters, pupils run to the correct sheet of paper. (If you do not have much room, pupils can just point to the correct letter.) Start with the sounds in isolation, move on to the words that pupils know, and then move on to other words starting with the same letter. The focus here is on recognition of the sounds rather than on the meaning of the words. Be careful to choose words with pure initial sounds and not mix them up with clusters, e.g. *b-*, but not *bl-* or *br-*. When pupils know more sounds, you can increase the challenge by putting four different letters around the classroom.

## Flashcard and Word Card games

---

### Match the cards

Stick word cards belonging to one group on the board in one column. Stick a shuffled set of corresponding flashcards in another column. Ask pupils to come to the board one by one and match the flashcards with the appropriate words.

### Mime the word

Stick five or six word cards to the board in one row. Prepare the corresponding flashcards and ask certain pupils to come to the board and place the pictures under the appropriate word cards. When all cards are correctly matched, point to particular words and encourage pupils to read them together. Then, take off the flashcards. Ask one pupil to come to the board and point at the word to be mimed. Do the same with the other words.

## Find a match

Prepare five flashcards and five corresponding word cards. Distribute them among pupils and then ask them to come to the front of the class. Explain to them that you will count to ten (or fifteen, if pupils know these numbers) aloud together with other pupils and during this time they have to find their match. When they find their partners, pupils stand up and raise their cards.

## Music cards

Prepare a recording with music. Distribute shuffled flashcards and corresponding word cards among pupils. Play the recording. The pupils' task is to pass cards on from one to another. When you stop the music, the pupils holding word cards stand up and read the words aloud. The pupils with flashcards stand up upon hearing a word corresponding to their picture.

## Draw the word

Place a set of word cards on the desk. Draw a box on the board. Ask a pupil to pick up the first card and draw the object mentioned in the card in the box on the board. Other pupils guess the word. When they guess the word, the pupil shows the word card to the class.

## Games with a puppet/soft toy

---

### Words and scenes

Using a soft toy, speak out a new word in English and ask pupils to perform a simple task, e.g. *Find something red. Stand up. Pick up an eraser. Point to ... Touch something ...*, etc.

### Questions

Using a soft toy, ask pupils simple questions, e.g. *What's your name? What colour is it? Have you got a pencil?*

### Can I have ..., please?

Distribute flashcards to pupils. Ask them to name objects presented in the cards. Then, using a soft toy ask for particular cards, e.g. *Can I have the (bird), please?* The pupils' task is to give the appropriate card to the toy.

### Pass the soft toy

If it is possible, ask pupils to sit in a circle. Play the recording of the song you want to revise and ask pupils to pass the soft toy to one another when they hear music. When you stop the recording, the task of the pupil holding the toy is to say a word or a line from the song. Start the recording again.

## Games with songs and chants

---

### Sing and respond

Provide a few pupils with one word they have to remember. (The words should come from the song or chant you want to revise.) Play the recording and ask pupils to stand up and sing and sit down when they hear their word.

### Sing and stand in the correct order

Use the flashcards with the objects appearing in the song you want to revise. Ask a few pupils to come to the board. Give them the cards. Explain to pupils that their task is to listen to the lyrics carefully and to stand in the order in which the words from their cards appear. The other pupils sing the song.

## Performances

Select a few songs or chants for which you can prepare simple costumes or props. Teach pupils to show the content of the song or chant with gestures or mimics. Invite parents, teachers or pupils from other classes to a mini-performance.

## TPR activities

### What does the picture present?

Distribute small sheets of paper among pupils and ask them to draw on them one object from the covered material, e.g. *food*. Collect the papers and stick them to pupils' backs without revealing to them what the pictures present. The aim of the game is to stimulate pupils to ask questions, thanks to which they will be able to guess which picture they have on their backs, e.g. *Is it a (pen)?* Pupils may walk around the classroom or play in pairs.

### Broken telephone

Divide pupils into two groups. Pupils stand in two rows. First pupils in each row should stay close to the teacher's desk. Put flashcards belonging to two categories, e.g. toys and classroom objects, on the desk. Whisper one word from different categories (e.g. *1 – pencil, 2 – robot*) to the two last pupils in the rows. Say *Start!* Pupils whisper the word one to another to the first pupil in the row. The task of this pupil is to select the appropriate picture card from the pile lying on your desk and show it to you. A team scores one point for every correctly chosen card. Then the first pupil in a row goes to its end and the game goes on.

### How many of us are there?

Play a recording with lively music and ask pupils to move around the classroom in a particular way (jumping, walking, moving). At some point stop the music and say a number between 2 and 5 in English. Pupils have to form groups composed of the appropriate number of people. Pupils who have not joined any group have to wait one turn. Continue the game.

### Catch and say it!

Ask pupils to stand in a big circle. Say a category of vocabulary (e.g. *toys*) aloud and throw a soft ball to a selected pupil. The pupil has to say a word from the category you chose. If the pupil doesn't catch the ball or say the appropriate word, he/she has to sit down. Continue the game until all pupils sit down.

### Pass the ball

Ask pupils to sit in a circle. Choose a category of vocabulary. Give pupils a small soft ball and ask them to pass it from hand to hand. Every pupil who receives the ball has to say a word belonging to the chosen category – if he/she fails to do so, he/she drops out of the game.

### The ball is burning

Pupils standing in a circle throw a ball or a soft toy to one another and name the colours. The ball or soft toy shouldn't be caught when somebody says *Black!* If despite that, somebody catches the ball, he/she kneels or squats down and continues playing. When he/she catches the ball properly in the next turn, he/she stands up.

## Guessing game: pictures

Ask one pupil to slowly draw on the board a picture presenting a new word from the current lesson. Other pupils try to guess what the picture presents and say the appropriate word. The pupil who guesses the word first draws the next picture.

## I name it and you point to it

Pupils sit in a circle. In the middle, place a few flashcards belonging to one vocabulary group. Ask pupils to keep their hands behind their backs. Say a word presented on one of the cards placed in the middle of the circle. The pupils' task is to touch it as quickly as possible. You can divide the class into teams and award points to the group whose representative touched the card first. Pupils may also play this game in pairs or in small groups.

## Salim says

Give pupils simple instructions. Warn them, however, that they can follow the instructions only when these are preceded by the phrase *Salim says*, e.g. when you say *Salim says jump*, pupils can jump, but when you say only *Jump*, they cannot move (explain to pupils that Salim is a king who gives them commands). The pupil who makes a mistake loses one point. Vary the speed of instructions to make the game more interesting. Later you may ask pupils to give instructions. Instead of the name Salim, you may use the word *teacher*, your name, or the name of a toy or puppet, if you use it.

## Word swat

Divide pupils into two teams. Ask them to stand in a line facing the board. Give the pupil at the front of each team a fly swat. Place words on randomly on the board. Say or describe a word. The pupil with the fly swat must run and swat the correct word/s. The pupil who completes the task first wins a point.

## Team games

### Board race

Divide the class into two teams. On the board draw a long racetrack divided into a number of stages corresponding to the number of questions prepared. Use pieces of colourful paper or magnets as pawns (one for each team). Ask pupils questions, e.g. show them flashcards, story cards or objects located in the classroom and ask *What's this? How many?* The pupil who provides the correct answer scores one point for his/her team and may move the pawn to the next field. The team which reaches the finishing line with the highest score is the winner.

### Answer and draw points

Divide the class into two teams. Invite representatives of both teams to the board in turns. Quietly give them particular pictures and ask them to draw their own appropriate pictures on the board. If the team members guess the word first, they win a point for their team.

### Repetition game

Divide the class into two teams. Invite one pupil from each team to the front of the class. Stick a few flashcards to the board and number them. Ask a pupil to provide the number of a picture on the board. Roll the dice or spin the spinner. The pupil has to repeat a given word the stated number of times. For the correct performance of the task, the pupil scores for his/her team the number of points equal to the number on the die or spinner.

## Team quiz

Show pupils a set of ten flashcards and ask them to name the objects presented. Raising each of the cards, ask *What is it?* The pupils' task is to name the picture *It's (a boat)*. Stick the cards face down on the board. Behind the cards, write numbers from 1 to 10. Divide pupils into two teams. Say the names of the objects on the back of the cards aloud. The pupils' task is to guess which number represents a specific picture. Reveal the card to which the pupils have pointed: if the answer is correct, the team scores 2 points. If the answer is incorrect, it's the turn of the other group to guess. The game continues until all the cards are revealed.

## Noughts and crosses

Divide the class into two teams: 'noughts' and 'crosses'. Draw the grid for noughts and crosses on the board. Place one card in each field of the grid, picture side up to the board. Ask a pupil from the first team to reveal one card. If the pupil can say the correct word, he/she may take the card and place the sign of his/her team in that field. Then the pupil from the other team does the same. The winner is the team which manages to put three signs in a row.

## Listen and touch!

Divide the class into two teams. Stick a certain number of flashcards to the board. Ask one pupil from each team to stand in front of the board. Say one of the words presented on the cards on the board. The pupil who touches the correct card first scores one point for his/her team. Repeat with other pupils and cards.

## Guess the name

Divide the class into two teams. Ask one pupil from each team to come to the front of the class and stand with their back towards you. Hold up a flashcard, count to three and say *Turn around*. The pupil who turns around first and says the correct word scores one point for his/her team. Repeat with other pupils and cards.

## Backs to the board

Divide the class into two teams. One pupil from each team sits with their back to the board. Write a word on the board. Team members describe the word (without saying that word) for them to guess. The first pupil to guess the word wins one point for his or her team. Repeat with other words and different pupils.



## Greeting the class

Hello. Hi!	How are you today?
Good morning/afternoon.	Is everyone here?
Come in.	Is anyone away today?
Sit down/Stand up, please.	Where is (Sami)?
What day is it today?	

## Starting the lesson

Are you ready?	Give this/these out, please.
Let's begin/start.	Have you got a (pencil)?
Listen (to me).	Open your books at page (4).
Look (at me/at the board).	Turn to page (6).
Take out your books/ notebooks/coloured pencils.	Open the window/door. Close the window/door.

## Managing the class

Be quiet, please.	Who's next?
Look at me/Listen to me.	Queue/Line up!
Come to the front of the class.	Repeat after me.
Come to the board.	Wait a minute, please.
Come here, please.	Hurry up.
Put your hands up/down.	

## Words of praise

Well done!	Much better.	Great work!
Excellent!	Good job.	Good luck!
Fantastic!	Congratulations!	Thank you.
That's nice.	That's correct!	

## During the lesson – instructions

Hold up your picture.	It's break time/lunch time.
Draw/Colour/Stick/Cut out ...	Wait a minute, please.
Write the answer on the board/ in your book.	Be careful.
Let's sing.	Sorry, guess/try again.
All together now.	Next, please.
	Again, please.

## During the lesson – questions

Are you ready?	May/Can I help you?
Do you understand?	Are you finished?
What do you think?	Who's finished?
Anything else?	What can you see?

## Pairwork/Groupwork

Find a partner.  
Get into twos/threes.  
Who's your partner?  
Work in pairs/groups.  
Make a circle.  
Work with your partner/friend/group.  
Show your partner/friend/group.  
Tell your partner/friend/group.  
Now ask your partner/friend/group.

## Language used for playing games

It's my/your/his/her turn.	Roll the dice.
Whose turn is it?	Move your/my counter (3) spaces.
You're out.	Miss a turn.
Don't look.	Go back (2) spaces.
No cheating.	Roll again.
Turn around.	I've won!
Close your eyes.	You're the winner!
Pass the (ball, cup), etc.	
Wait outside.	

## Useful phrases for the pupils

May/Can I go to the toilet?	I'm sorry.
I understand/I don't understand.	Can you help me?
Excuse me ...	I'm ready.
	I'm finished.

## Ending the lesson

Put your books/notebooks/coloured pencils away.  
Tidy up.  
Put that in the bin/rubbish bin, please.  
Collect the stickers/cards/spinners/scissors, please.  
The lesson is finished.  
That's all for today.  
Goodbye!  
See you tomorrow.  
Have a nice weekend/holiday.



# Hobbies

## Unit objectives

To talk about hobbies and sports

## Language

<b>Vocabulary</b>	<b>Hobbies and sports:</b> <i>build a robot, dress up, go fishing, go sailing, go windsurfing, kick, knit, play board games, play chess, play computer games, sew, skip</i> <b>Adverbs of manner:</b> <i>badly, carefully, easily, loudly, quickly, quietly, well, slowly</i>
<b>Grammar</b>	<i>can/can't</i>
<b>Functions</b>	Expressing agreement and disagreement and talking about preferences: <i>What shall we do? Do you want to (play a computer game)? Not really. I'd rather (play chess).</i>
<b>Phonics</b>	<b>ur:</b> <i>fur, curl</i> ; <b>Revise:</b> <i>ir, er</i> <b>Tricky word:</b> <i>can't</i>

## Learning outcomes

<b>Listening</b>	Demonstrate an awareness of intonation patterns when listening; Listen and respond to peers and adults; Listen and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics; Listen and identify familiar words, set phrases and specific information in short, simple texts on familiar topics; Listen to join in with songs, chants, jingles, rhymes, tongue twisters and simple dialogues; Respond verbally and non-verbally to short, basic, spoken and aural instructions; Respond to factual and literal questions; Identify core vocabulary; Respond to referential questions based on aural texts; Identify key and specific information in short, simple conversations/dialogues on familiar topics; Identify specific information in short, simple conversations/dialogues
<b>Speaking</b>	Talk about things they can and can't do; Express likes and dislikes; Make offers; Accurately reproduce modelled language; Articulate words and sentences using correct stress, rhythm and intonation; Use basic language structures when speaking; Express ideas using a range of familiar words, set phrases and expressions; Retell simple stories, personal experiences and events using a range of familiar words, set phrases and expressions; Ask and answer questions on familiar topics like daily activities, habits, times and events; Participate in short, simple interactions on familiar topics; Articulate sounds and isolated word forms and connected speech using correct pronunciation; Recite songs, rhymes, chants and tongue twisters individually and chorally; Sing a basic song, rhyme and chant from memory; Act out part of a picture story, short dialogue or role play
<b>Reading</b>	Decode unfamiliar words by using phonemic awareness and blending strategies when reading; Read frequently encountered words with ease; Recognize the effect of punctuation when reading; Read and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics; Read and identify familiar words, set phrases and key information in short, simple factual texts on familiar topics from the headings and illustrations; Answer factual questions about reading material; Extract factual details and specific information in short texts; Make basic inferences from simple information in short texts; Identify connections between short phrases by recognizing common linking words
<b>Writing</b>	Complete a simple form with basic personal details; Complete a phrase or sentence by supplying the missing word; Write simple sentences describing pictures, drawings or activities, etc., using words from a list; Write clearly formed letters and words; Use phonological awareness and blending strategies to write new words; Construct sentences and questions using correct spacing, capitalization, question marks, apostrophe/simple contractions and full stops based on a model; Write high frequency words correctly; Write legibly and neatly letters in script; Copy words, phrases and sentences accurately;



	Maintain appropriate spacing between letters in a word and between words; Spell frequently used words correctly; Write basic, single clause sentences given a model; Construct sentences using correct question marks
<b>Cognitive skills</b>	Express basic likes/dislikes and agreement/disagreement; Find uses for created objects or contents (e.g. in a play, story or game); Understand the steps needed to complete the activity; Say if they feel happy with what they have done; Recognize when a task has been completed; Say if a task has been completed well; Try to help solve a problem in the group; Explore different materials and decide what to use (projects); Say whether they like a story, song, or game, and give reasons for their choice/preference; Draw basic pictures to represent vocabulary and familiar concepts; Participate in drama based activities which allow for personal interpretation; Participate in activities that involve taking the role of familiar people; Listen and respond physically to songs, rhymes, chants and jingles; Use own ideas for doing creative activities like colouring, drawing and building to represent vocabulary and familiar concepts; Stay engaged and focused on short tasks, does not get distracted; Match objects, people, letters, pronunciation and words; Guess words from illustrations in storybooks; Recognize the differences between a story and a fact; Understand and carry out basic instructions for class/school; Take personal responsibility for one's own contribution to a group task; Make eye contact with group members; Use gesture and posture inclusively (e.g. sit in a circle, look at other children; wave to other children, point to where they could set); Engage with others to make sense of things around them; Observe rules of games when playing with other children; Take turns in shared activities; Share space and objects; Listen carefully, attend to, and take account of what others say

## Key competences

**Linguistic competence:** use language as an instrument for communication (L. 1–11)

**Mathematical, science and technological competences:** order sentences (L. 2)

**Digital competence:** use Class Book and Activity Book eBook (L. 1–11)

**Social and civic competences:** learn to be creative (L. 8); learn to remind people to do something (L. 6)

**Cultural awareness and expression:** raise awareness of cultural similarities and differences (L. 5)

**Learning to learn:** reflect on what has been learnt and self-evaluate progress (L. 1–11); use previous knowledge (L. 1); follow instructions (L. 1–11); personalisation of language learnt (L. 3 and 5)

**Initiative and entrepreneurship:** choose a topic for the project (L. 5)

## Future skills

**Critical thinking** Predicting (L. 7); Problem solving (L. 2); Logical thinking (L. 1, 2 and 5); Defining and describing (L. 1, 2, 4 and 5); Finding information (L. 1–3, 6, 7 and 8); Planning (L. 8); Reflecting on learning (L. 1–11)

**Creativity** Designing a form (L.8)

**Communication** Remembering words (L. 1); Describing what people are doing (L. 3); Answering questions (L. 4); Talking about sports and hobbies (L. 5 and 6); Expressing preferences (L. 6); Functional dialogue (L. 8); Challenge game (L. 10)

**Collaboration** Project groupwork (L. 5); Acting out (L. 2)

## Evaluation

- Assessment for Learning: throughout the unit (see detailed notes in the lesson plans)
- Self-assessment: Class Book p. 21; Activity Book p. 17
- Unit 5 Extra practice: Activity Book p. 18
- Unit 5 Photocopiable Resources (optional): Vocabulary 1 and 2, Grammar 1 and 2, Communication game, Song, Reading differentiation, Listening differentiation, Culture video, English in Action, CLIL, Self-assessment
- Unit 5 practice

## External tests

**Class Book**  
A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 3

**Activity Book**  
A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 5

# Vocabulary

## Lesson 1, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn and use hobbies and sports vocabulary
- **Target language:** *build a robot, dress up, go fishing, go sailing, go windsurfing, kick, knit, play board games, play chess, play computer games, sew, skip*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Speaking:** Can say what people are doing at the time of speaking, if supported by pictures or gestures (GSE 30). Can answer simple questions about their daily activities or routines, given a model (GSE 29).

### Materials

- Unit 5 flashcards (*build a robot, dress up, go fishing, go sailing, go windsurfing, kick, knit, play board games, play chess, play computer games, sew, skip*)
- Unit 5 poster: Hobbies
- stopwatch
- photocopiable 41

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique (see page 14)
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15); portfolio (see page 15)

## Lesson 1, part 1

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write *Hobbies* on the board. Use the Key question technique (see page 14) to ask *What's your favourite hobby or leisure activity?* Pupils raise their hands to answer.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to talk about hobbies.
- Place the Unit 5 flashcards or poster on the board. Point to each item and say the word. Pupils repeat after you.

## Practice

### Class Book

**5 Hobbies**

1 How many hobbies do you know?

10 How many jobs can you find in the picture? **pilot, scientist, chef, firefighter, farmer**  
Find two foods and two drinks. **fruit, cupcakes, orange juice and water**  
What's wrong in the picture? **There's a birthday present on one of the windsurfs.**

### 1 How many hobbies do you know? (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 10. Read the rubric and tell them to look at the picture. Pupils work in pairs and tell each other the hobbies they know.
- Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), ask pupils to say hobbies they know.
- Place pupils in the same pairs. With the stopwatch, explain that they have one minute to answer the questions together.
- Check answers as a class by having pupils raise their hands to give answers.
- **Extension** Have pupils describe the picture on page 10 in pairs, telling each other where the people in the picture are and what they are doing, and naming any objects they know, e.g. *beach, picnic, playing a game*.

Lesson 1, part 1 **Vocabulary** 5

2 Listen, point and repeat.

1 go fishing 2 go sailing 3 go windsurfing 4 play chess 5 play board games 6 play computer games

7 build a robot 8 dress up 9 knit 10 sew 11 skip 12 kick

3 Look for the words from Activity 2 in the picture on page 10. Write the missing hobby. **play computer games**

4 Find these children in the picture on page 10. What are they doing?

1 He's kicking a ball. 2 They're playing chess, dressing up. He's kicking a ball. 3 He's knitting. They're playing chess. 4 She's going windsurfing. 5 They're building a robot.

5 In pairs, ask and answer.

What are your hobbies? I like going fishing.  
When do you go fishing? I go fishing at the weekend.

Activity Book, Unit 5  
Lesson 1, part 2 eleven 11

2 **5.1 Listen, point and repeat.** (5 minutes)

- Tell pupils to count how many hobbies they knew on page 10.
- Play the audio, pausing after each item for pupils to point and repeat.
- Tell pupils to look at photos 1–12 and practise the new vocabulary. Tell pupils to give you answers as you mime the actions in random order.
- Have pupils say a word to their partner who points to the correct picture. Then they swap.

**5.1**

- 1 go fishing
- 2 go sailing
- 3 go windsurfing
- 4 play chess
- 5 play board games
- 6 play computer games
- 7 build a robot
- 8 dress up
- 9 knit
- 10 sew
- 11 skip
- 12 kick

**Diversity**

**Support**

- Divide the class into two groups. Play the audio again for each group to listen and repeat.

**Challenge**

- Play the audio again. Have pupils repeat without looking at the book. Ask different pupils to spell the words.

3 **Look for the words from Activity 2 in the picture on page 10. Write the missing hobby.** (5 minutes)

- Give pupils two minutes to work in pairs to find the hobbies. Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

4 **Find these children in the picture on page 10. What are they doing?** (5 minutes)

- Pupils work in pairs to complete the activity.
- Ask different pairs to give an answer for each picture.

**Extra activity Creativity**

- Pupils work in pairs. They draw their favourite hobbies and leisure activities from the lesson and label them in their notebooks. They can display their work on the classroom wall or put it in their portfolios (see page 15).

5 **In pairs, ask and answer.** (5 minutes)

- Place pupils in the same pairs for this activity.

**Extra activity TPR**

- Assign a hobby or sport to each pupil. Call out the words for each. When pupils hear their hobby or sport, they stand up and do a mime which is either a true or a false representation. The other pupils use the Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14) to show which.

**Finishing the lesson** (5 minutes)

- Pupils close their books and work in pairs. Give them one minute to write down the names of the hobbies and leisure activities on page 11 of their Class Books.
- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *How many hobbies did you remember?*

# Vocabulary

## Lesson 1, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Show pupils the Unit 5 flashcards and have them repeat the words chorally.
- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to choose pupils to spell the words aloud.

### Practice

#### Activity Book

Lesson 1, part 2

# 5 Hobbies

## Vocabulary

**1** Look at the Class Book page 10 and answer.

- 1 What are the boys sitting at the picnic table doing?  
They're playing chess.
- 2 Which costumes are the children trying on? scientist, farmer, pilot, chef, firefighter
- 3 What water sports can you see? windsurfing, sailing

**2** Look and write.

fishing computer games sew board games kick windsurfing  
dress up sailing chess build a robot skip knit

**Manar** go fishing go sailing go windsurfing

**Zaid** play computer games play board games play chess

**Sara** dress up sew kick build a robot knit skip

**3** What are they doing? Look at Activity 2 and write *True* or *False*.

1 Manar's playing chess.	<u>False</u>	2 Zaid's skipping.	<u>False</u>
3 Sara's building a toy house.	<u>False</u>	4 Zaid's playing computer games.	<u>True</u>
5 Sara's going fishing.	<u>False</u>	6 Manar's going sailing.	<u>True</u>

**8** eight

### 3 What are they doing? Look at Activity 2 and write *True* or *False*. (10 minutes)

- Pupils work individually to complete the activity. They then compare answers with a partner.
- Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).
- Have pupils share their words with the class.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Pupils close their books and work in pairs. Give them one minute to write down the names of the hobbies and leisure activities on page 11 of their Class Books.
- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils what they have learnt today.

#### Extra activity Photocopiable 41

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 41.

### 1 Look at the Class Book page 10 and answer. (10 minutes)

- Pupils work individually to complete the activity.
- Check answers as a class.
- Ask the pupils to close their books and say as many things as they can remember about the picture on page 10.

### 2 Look and write. (10 minutes)

- Have pupils work in pairs to write the activities.
- Check answers as a class and write them on the board.



# Story

## Lesson 2, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to listen to/watch a story
- **Target language:** revision of hobbies and sports vocabulary





### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can identify specific information in a simple story if guided by questions (GSE 35). Can follow simple dialogues in short illustrated stories, if they can listen while reading (GSE 26). Can understand the order in which events happen (e.g. in diary entries or a story) (GSE 41).
- **Speaking:** Can act out parts of a picture story using simple actions and words (GSE 30).

### Materials


- Unit 5 flashcards (hobbies)
- photocopiable 49

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)


-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14)
-  Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
-  Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 2, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

-  Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), ask pupils to say one hobby each from Lesson 1. Use the Unit 5 flashcards to confirm answers.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

-  Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to or watch a story.

## Practice

### Class Book

**Story**

**1 Before you read** Find three hobbies in the story.

**2 Watch or listen and read.** play chess, paint, go climbing, windsurfing

**Discovery Team**

**The activity day**

OK, what shall we do first? I want to play chess and paint. I want to go climbing, too.

OK, let's go climbing first!

I'd rather go windsurfing. But I can go climbing, too.

This is hard work!

You can climb very well, Lottie! But why are you breathing loudly and quickly?

Good idea!

Well, when I exercise, my heart goes faster. I need more air, so I breathe more loudly and more quickly.

Oh no! It's a baby bird! It can walk but it can't fly to its nest.

I can exercise and I can fly! I can breathe loudly, too!


What's that?

What's a nest?

It's a house for birds! The bird can't get back to its nest. Sami, can you see the nest?

12 twelve

### 1 Before you read Find three hobbies in the story. (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to pages 12 and 13.
-  Ask pupils to check their answers with a partner. Elicit answers.

### 2 Watch or listen and read. (10 minutes)

- Mime *breathe, monster, baby*. Write these words on the board.
- Play the audio or the animation.
- Check comprehension. Ask *Which animal is in danger? (The baby bird.); Why? (It can't fly up to its nest.); What does Bo do? (Flies over and rescues it.); What do you think Bo sees? (Accept any reasonable answers.)*.

### Diversity

#### Support

- Pre-teach other words that pupils might have problems with.

#### Challenge

- Before pupils open their books, tell them the title of the story and where it takes place. Pupils predict what might happen.

# Story

## 5.2

### The activity day

- 1 Fatma:** OK, what shall we do first? I want to play chess and paint. I want to go climbing, too.
- Lottie:** I'd rather go windsurfing. But I can go climbing, too.
- Fatma:** OK, let's go climbing first!
- Sami:** Good idea!
- 2 Lottie:** This is hard work!
- Bo:** You can climb very well, Lottie! But why are you breathing loudly and quickly?
- Lottie:** Well, when I exercise, my heart goes faster. I need more air, so I breathe more loudly and more quickly.
- 3 Bo:** I can exercise and I can fly! I can breathe loudly, too! What's that?
- 4 Sami:** Oh, no! It's a baby bird! It can walk but it can't fly to its nest.
- Bo:** What's a nest?
- Fatma:** It's a house for birds! The bird can't get back to its nest. Sami, can you see the nest?
- 5 Sami:** Look! Here's the nest!
- Fatma:** Bo, can you bring the baby bird up to the nest?
- 6 Bo:** Here you are, little bird!
- 7 Narrator:** *A few minutes later...*
- Bo:** What's this? Is this a house for birds, too?
- 8 Bo:** Help! I can't get out!
- 9 Bo:** Ah! Help! A monster! There's a monster! HELP!
- 10 Sami:** Here you are!
- Lottie:** What's Bo talking about? A monster? What animal lives there?

### Extra activity Collaborative work

- Ask pupils to work in pairs. Have them look back at story frame 2. Ask pupils to draw a diagram in their notebooks with coloured pencils to show Lottie's heart and lungs, adding arrows or other means to illustrate to Bo how the human body works. Elicit ideas on the board with a diagram if necessary.

### 3 What lives there? Go to page 106 to find out. (5 minutes)

- Explain to pupils that they have to look for clues in the story to know the answer. Pupils discuss in pairs. If they find it difficult to know the answer, draw their attention to the footprints in frame 10 which should match the footprints on page 106.

- Using the Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14), ask *Did you find what animal lives there?*

Lesson 2, part 1

5 Look! Here's the nest!

6 Here you are, little bird!

7 A few minutes later ...

8 Help! I can't get out!

9 Ah! Help! A monster! There's a monster! HELP!

10 Here you are!

Bo, can you bring the baby bird up to the nest?

What's this? Is this a house for birds, too?

What's Bo talking about? A monster? What animal lives there?

3 What lives there? Go to page 106 to find out. **a rabbit** **CLIL**

4 After you read Look at the story. Circle what happens first: a or b.

1 a The children go climbing.	2 a Lottie tells Bo about breathing.
b The children look at the map.	b Bo tries to breathe loudly.
3 a Sami finds a nest.	4 a Bo brings the baby bird to the nest.
b Bo finds a baby bird.	b Bo finds another animal house.
5 a Bo can't get out.	6 a Lottie asks what animal lives there.
b Bo thinks he sees a monster.	b Sami helps Bo.

5 Act out the story.

Activity Book, Unit 5  
Lesson 2, part 2 thirteen 13

### 4 After you read Look at the story. Circle what happens first: a or b. (5 minutes)

- Pupils work individually to complete the activity. Check answers as a class.

### 5 Act out the story. (5 minutes)

- Divide pupils into groups of four. Allocate a role to each pupil (Fatma, Lottie, Sami, Bo).
- Pupils act out the story in groups.

### Extra activity TPR

- Have pupils work in the same groups in different roles (Fatma, Lottie, Sami, Bo). Play the story. Pupils listen and act out the story miming what their role/the dialogue/the pictures demand.

### Extra activity Fast finishers

- Pupils find words in the story connected to hobbies and sports and draw them in their notebooks, illustrating each to help learn the vocabulary.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils what they remember from the story.
- Check answers as a class.

## Lesson 2, part 2

## Starting the lesson (5 minutes)


- Ask pupils to talk about their favourite scene from the story. Have them give reasons for their answers.


## Practice


## Activity Book


Lesson 2, part 2 Story 5

1 After you read Look, read and match. Then order.

a  What's a nest?  
I'd rather go windsurfing.

b  2

c  Help! I can't get out!  
Bo, can you bring the baby bird up to the nest?

d  4

2 What activities can you see on the map in Picture a?  
climbing playing knitting sailing  
chess The extra word is windsurfing.

3 Complete the sentences. Which is the extra word? is windsurfing.

windsurfing bird scared climbing monster nest help

1 The children decide to go climbing first.  
2 A baby bird can't get back to its house in the tree.  
3 Fatma wants Bo to take the baby bird up to its nest.  
4 Bo is scared because he thinks there is a monster inside the hole.  
5 The children help Bo.

4 Values Read and tick (✓). How do you work as a team?

1 Find out what you all want to do.

2 Do what you want to do.

3 Watch people do things for you.

4 All do something to help.

nine 9

## 1 After you read Look, read and match. Then order. (5 minutes)

- Give pupils one minute to complete the activity.
- Check answers as a class.

## 2 What activities can you see on the map in Picture a? (10 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually. They check answers in pairs.

## 3 Complete the sentences. Which is the extra word? (10 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually.
- Ask pupils which of the words isn't needed (*windsurfing*). Ask pupils if they would like to try windsurfing.

## 4 Values Read and tick (✓). How do you work as a team? (5 minutes)

- Pupils tick the correct options and then compare and discuss their answers in small groups, giving reasons why/why not.

## Extra activity Critical thinking

- Pupils make posters showing their answers to 4 and add other ways to work as a team. Pupils take it in turns to present their ideas to the class. The posters can be displayed.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils what they learnt from the story.

## Extra activity Photocopiable 49

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 49.

## CLIL Link

In Unit 5, the story is based around the heart and how it pumps blood around the body from Science.

The Discovery Team go climbing on the activity day event at the park. Bo asks Lottie why she is breathing loudly and quickly, and she explains that her heart is beating faster and she needs more air. Bo wants to exercise too, and when he is flying around he spots a bird that has fallen from its nest, which he takes back up to the tree. Then he sees a hole and gets scared because there are eyes glowing in the dark. The hole is a rabbits' burrow.

# Grammar

## Lesson 3, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn and use *can/can't* and *but*
- **Target language:** *I can (go sailing), but I can't (play board games). Can you (sew)? Yes, I can. No, I can't.*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can identify specific information about where people are from their surroundings, or from pictures with a short, simple description of where they are and what they are doing (GSE 30).
- **Speaking:** Can ask a range of questions to find the answer (GSE 36).

### Materials

- Unit 5 flashcards (hobbies)
- notebooks
- photocopiable 45

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Expert envoy technique (see page 15)
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 3, part 1

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write *The activity day* on the board. Ask *What do the kids do? What happens to Bo? What is the monster Bo finds underground?* and elicit answers.
- Ask pupils what else they remember from the story from Lesson 2. Prompt with questions: *What activities are there? Why does Lottie climb? Why does Bo's exercise go wrong? Who can/can't fly?*

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to use *can/can't* to talk about ability.
- Place the Unit 5 flashcards on the board. Point to a flashcard, says its name and have pupils repeat chorally. Then ask individual pupils to name a flashcard using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 3, part 1

### Grammar

**1** Look back! Tick (✓) the sentence in this picture.

- Bo, what are you doing?
- I can fly!
- Can you climb down?

**2** Listen and repeat.

I can go sailing and I can exercise.  
I can climb, but I can't play board games.  
Can you sew? Yes, I can./No, I can't.

**3** Circle the correct word. Then ask and answer the questions.

- Can/Can't Lottie climb well? Yes, she can.
- Can/Can't birds fly? Yes, they can.
- Why can/can't the baby bird get back to the nest? It can't fly.
- What can/can't Bo see in the hole? Bo can see a rabbit.

**4** Who is it? Ask and answer.

	Halima	Qais	Marwa	Hamzah
	✓	✗	✗	✓
	✓	✓	✗	✗
	✗	✗	✓	✓
	✓	✗	✓	✓

Is it a boy or a girl?  
It's a boy.

Can he skip?  
Yes, he can skip, but he can't sew.

Is it Qais?  
Yes!

14 fourteen

Activity Book Unit 5  
Lesson 3, part 2

### 1 Look back! Tick (✓) the sentence in this picture. (5 minutes)

- Have pupils work in pairs to look at the picture and say what is happening to Bo and why. They can refer to pages 12 and 13 to help if necessary.

### 2 5.3 Listen and repeat. (10 minutes)

- Pupils look at the story on pages 12 and 13. They find the sentences with *can/can't* in the story. Write on the board *I can fly!* Ask pupils *Who/What can fly? (Bo)*. Ask *Can you fly, (name)?* to elicit *No, I can't*. Write *It can't get back to its nest on the board*. Say *Why not? (It can't fly. It's a baby.)*. Write *Sami, can you see a nest up there?* on the board. Say *Can he?* (*Yes, he can.*). Ask *Can Bo bring the baby bird up to the nest? Why?* (*Yes, because he can fly.*). Ask pupils to write and illustrate these examples of *can/can't* in their notebooks.
- Play the audio. Ask *How do you make a question with can? (Can you/he/she/it + green word/verb) You know how/are able to. Is that can/can't? (can) You don't know how, you are not able to is ...? (can't)*.
- Ask pupils to make the sentences true for them by changing the words in red/green. Have pairs make a question by replacing *sew* with any verb of their choice that fits.



## 5.3

I can go sailing and I can exercise.  
I can climb, but I can't play board games.  
Can you sew?  
Yes, I can. / No, I can't.

### 3 Circle the correct word. Then ask and answer the questions. (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to the story on pages 12 and 13. Ask *Which picture frame shows the answer to question 1? In which picture frame is Lottie climbing? (2) Can you point to it?*
- Pupils complete the activity individually. They then compare answers with a partner.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### 4 Who is it? Ask and answer. (5 minutes)

- Draw pupils' attention to the pictures and the chart. Ask *What can you see in the pictures? (two girls, two boys, play computer games/build a robot/skip/sew).*
- Focus pupils' attention on the speech bubbles and the chart. Model the pronunciation. Divide the class into two halves, ask one half to repeat the questions, and the other the answers.
- Pupils work in pairs.

### Diversity

#### Support

- Pupils take turns to say some affirmative and negative sentences about the children in the pictures/chart first. Work together as a class. Elicit, guide and write the questions on the board.

#### Challenge

- Pupil A asks a question with *Is it/Can ...* about the picture and Pupil B answers. Then they swap roles.

### Extra activity TPR

- Say verbs about sports or physical abilities and have pupils mime/shake/nod their heads, e.g. *You can swim/climb, etc.*

### Extra activity Communication

- Pupils work in small groups. Set a time limit of one or two minutes for them to find as many things in common that they can/can't do. They can report back to the class taking it in turns, e.g. *We can ..., but we can't ...*

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Play *Backs to the board* (see page 22) with the Unit 5 flashcards. Then ask pupils which of the activities they can and can't do. Ask them which they would like to be able to do.

## Lesson 3, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the pictures and, in pairs, discuss which of the activities they find the most/least interesting. Ask them to give reasons for their answers.

### Practice

#### Activity Book

Lesson 3, part 2

### Grammar

1 Listen and match. Write.

2 Look at Activity 1. Who can't do the same thing? Write.

Adam, Muhannad and Rasha can't skip.

3 Write the questions and match the answers.

1 Amjed / sew Can Amjed sew ? c a No, they can't.  
2 Rasha / play chess Can Rasha play chess? d b Yes, she can.  
3 Huda / knit Can Huda knit ? b c No, he can't.  
4 Muhannad and Adam / skip Can Muhannad and Adam skip ? a d No, she can't.

4 Write two things you can do and two things you can't do.

I can \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_  
but I can't \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.

10 ten





### 1 5.4 Listen and match. Write. (10 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the pictures. Check pupils understand the task using the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14). Ask *What can/can't Amjed do?*
- Play the audio.
- Pupils match the people to the activities and then write their names.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).


### 5.4

- I'm Amjed. I can't sew, but I can kick the ball!
- I'm Muhannad. I can't skip, but I can play chess.
- I'm Huda. I can knit, but I can't sew.
- I'm Rasha. I can't skip and I can't play chess.
- I'm Marwa. I can knit and I can sew. It's fun.
- I'm Adam. I can't skip and I can't kick a ball.

# Grammar

- 2**  **Look at Activity 1. Who can't do the same thing? Write.** (5 minutes)
-  Pupils work individually and then check answers in pairs.
- 3** **Write the questions and match the answers.** (10 minutes)
- Ask pupils to look at the example question and answer and explain that they have to use the information in Activity 1 to complete the questions and match them to the answers.
  -  Place pupils in pairs. Use the Expert envoy technique (see page 15) when pairing pupils.
  - Check answers as a class.
- 4** **Write two things you can do and two things you can't do.** (5 minutes)
-  Pupils work individually to complete the activity and then share their sentences with a partner.
  - Ask volunteers to read aloud their answers if they're comfortable doing so.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

-  Ask *When and why do we use can/can't?* and elicit answers. Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to encourage pupils to reflect on what they found easy and difficult today.

### Extra activity Photocopiable 45

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 45.

# Vocabulary and Grammar

## Lesson 4, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn and use adverbs of manner
- **Target language:** *badly, carefully, easily, loudly, quickly, quietly, slowly, well*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can recognise familiar words and phrases in short, simple songs or chants (GSE 18).
- **Speaking:** Can sing a basic song from memory (GSE 22).

### Materials

- Unit 5 flashcards (*badly, carefully, easily, loudly, quickly, quietly, slowly, well*)
- photocopiables 41, 45, 53 and 57

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 4, part 1

### Starting the lesson (2 minutes)

- Ask *What can you do well and very well?* Say 'Well' means you are good, and 'very well' means you are very good at doing this. Elicit answers.

### Presentation (3 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to use some adverbs of manner (words that tell us how something happens) with *can*. They will also sing a song.
- Place the Unit 5 flashcards (adverbs of manner) on the board. Point to each flashcard, say the adverb and have pupils repeat after you.

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 4, part 1 **Vocabulary and Grammar** 5

1 Listen, point and repeat.

1 well      2 badly      3 loudly      4 quietly

5 carefully      6 quickly      7 slowly      8 easily

2 Listen and sing.

Muna can play board games well.  
She can knit easily.  
She can play chess carefully.  
She can skip very quickly.

Quickly, slowly, loudly, quietly,  
Easily, carefully:  
We all do things differently!

But I can write very well.  
I can draw very carefully.  
I can sew very quickly.  
I can sing very loudly.

Quickly, slowly, loudly, quietly,  
Easily, carefully:  
We all do things differently!

I can't play board games well  
And I can't knit easily.  
I can't play chess carefully  
Or skip very quickly.

3 Listen and repeat.

quick → quickly	I can't dress up quickly.
easy → easily	I can't knit easily.
good → well	I can write well.

4 In pairs, ask and answer.

- 1 What can you do well?
- 2 What can you do badly?
- 3 What can you do quietly?
- 4 What can you do slowly?

I can play board games very well. How about you?

5 Pupil A: Activity Book, page 68. Pupil B: Activity Book, page 70.

Activity Book, Unit 5  
Lesson 4, part 2      fifteen 15

### 1 5.5 Listen, point and repeat. (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 15.
- Play the audio. Pause after each word and have pupils repeat.
- Practise the vocabulary. Pupils use the adverbs to talk about the pictures. Ask *Who is running? (6 and 7)*; *How does he run? (slowly)*. Mime running fast. *Which runner is fast? (6)*; *How does he run? (quickly)*; *Who is a good player? (1)*; *How does she play sport? (well)*; *Who is strong? (8)*. Mime lifting heavy/light weights. *How does he lift weights? (easily)*; *Who is writing? (5)*; *How is he writing? (carefully)*; *Who isn't very good at sport? (2)*; *How does she play sport? (badly)*; *Who is singing? (3 and 4)*. Whisper *Which singer can't you hear well? (4)*; *How does he sing? (quietly)*. Shout *Which singer can you hear very well? (3)*; *How does he sing? (loudly)*.

### 5.5

1 well 2 badly 3 loudly 4 quietly 5 carefully  
6 quickly 7 slowly 8 easily

# Vocabulary and Grammar

## Extra activity Collaborative work

- Have pupils describe or mime the pictures with the adverbs to their partner who points to the correct picture. Then they swap.

## 2 5.6 & 5.7 Listen and sing. (10 minutes)

- Pupils look at the pictures and raise their hands to say which verb/adverb they can see.
- Play the song and tell pupils to stand up, listen and mime silently this time.
- Play the karaoke version of the song (track 5.7) and encourage pupils to sing along.

### 5.6

Muna can play board games well.  
She can knit easily.  
She can play chess carefully.  
She can skip very quickly.

Quickly, slowly, loudly, quietly,  
Easily, carefully:  
We all do things differently!

I can't play board games well,  
And I can't knit easily.  
I can't play chess carefully  
Or skip very quickly.

Quickly, slowly, loudly, quietly,  
Easily, carefully:  
We all do things differently!

But I can write very well.  
I can draw very carefully.  
I can sew very quickly.  
I can sing very loudly.

Quickly, slowly, loudly, quietly,  
Easily, carefully:  
We all do things differently!

## 3 5.8 Listen and repeat. (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to find examples of adverbs of manner in the song. Have pupils copy and illustrate these examples in their notebooks.
- Ask pupils to look at the grammar box and repeat as you play the audio. Focus on the pronunciation.
- Ask *Which words are adjectives? Which are adverbs of manner?* Elicit answers.

### 5.8

Quick, quickly: I can't dress up quickly.  
Easy, easily: I can't knit easily.  
Good, well: I can write well.

## 4 In pairs, ask and answer. (5 minutes)

- Ask a pupil to read the example in the speech bubble. Then put pupils in pairs and have them ask and answer the questions.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to choose some pairs to ask and answer the questions for the rest of the class.

## Diversity

### Support

- Before completing the activity, write the example on the board. The first pupil uses the example to say something true about themselves. *I can ... very well. How about you? (turning to the next pupil) This pupil says (name) can ... and I can ... How about you?* The pupils continue.

### Challenge

- Ask pupils to write more questions using the adverbs.

## 5 Pupil A: Activity Book, page 68. Pupil B: Activity Book, page 70. (5 minutes)

- Assign Pupil A or Pupil B and ask them to find the correct page in their Activity Book.
- Pupils work together to find out what each person can or can't do by asking and answering questions. Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to make sure pupils understand what they have to do.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.

## Extra activity Communication

- Place the Unit 5 flashcards (hobbies and adverbs of manner) around the room. Divide the class into two teams. Assign *hobby* to one group and *adverb* to the other. Pick a pupil from each group. Have all the other pupils shut their eyes. Pupils pick a card each and mime the action in the manner of the word for the other pupils to guess, e.g. *skip slowly, play chess loudly, etc.*

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *Do you like the song? Can you remember it without looking at the book?*
- Play the karaoke version of the song (track 5.7) again and encourage pupils to sing.

## Lesson 4, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Place the Unit 5 flashcards (adverbs of manner) on the board for a minute, have pupils study them and then remove them.
- Call out an adverb of manner and ask a volunteer to spell the word.

### Practice

#### Activity Book

Lesson 4, part 2 **Vocabulary and Grammar** 5

**1 Look and write.**

slowly quietly badly well easily carefully quickly loudly

1 slowly    2 badly    3 carefully    4 easily

5 well    6 loudly    7 quickly    8 quietly

**2** Look at Activity 1. Can you find pairs?  
1 slowly, quickly    2 well, badly    3 loudly, quietly

**3** Listen and match.

Muna, Anas, Noora, Yasir and Azza, Osamah and Salim, Aysha and Ruba

easily, badly, quickly, slowly, loudly, well

**4 Look at Activity 3 and complete.**

1 Muna can cook badly.    2 Noora can play the piano slowly.  
3 Anas can skip quickly.    4 Aysha and Ruba can play chess well.  
5 Osamah and Salim can sing loudly.    6 Yasir and Azza can sew easily.

eleven 11

#### 1 Look and write. (5 minutes)

- Pupils look at the pictures and complete the adverbs of manner with the words from the box.
- Pupils check answers in pairs.

#### 2 Look at Activity 1. Can you find pairs? (5 minutes)

- Pupils write the opposite adverbs of manner individually.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

#### 3 5.9 Listen and match. (10 minutes)

- Place pupils in pairs.
- Play the audio.
- Ask a pair to tell the class their answers. Ask the other pupils to raise their hands if they have the same answer. Ask pupils to say different answers.

#### 5.9

**Girl:** Hi, I'm Muna. I can do many things, but there's one thing I do badly. I cook badly! Look at my friends and how they can do some activities. Aysha and Ruba can play chess well. They play every day. Anas can skip quickly; he is the quickest boy in the class. Noora is the only one who can play the piano; she can play it slowly, but it sounds nice. This is Osamah and this is Salim. They can sing loudly. It's fun. And this is Yasir and this is Azza. They love arts and crafts. They can sew easily.

#### 4 Look at Activity 3 and complete. (10 minutes)

- Pupils complete the sentences individually.
- Have pupils swap books to check each other's answers.
- Check answers as a class.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write *Today I have learnt...* on the board and have pupils complete the sentence in their notebooks. Ask pupils to say how today's lesson has helped them with their English.

#### Extra activity Photocopiables 41, 45, 53 and 57

- Ask pupils to do photocopiables 41, 45, 53 and 57.



# Culture and Project

## Lesson 5, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn about ball games around the world
- **Target language:** revision of vocabulary and grammar

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33).
- **Writing:** Can write a short list of instructions for using or doing something (e.g. playing a game), given a model (GSE 42).
- **Speaking:** Can express their opinions on familiar topics, using simple language (GSE 41).

### Materials

- a variety of balls (sizes, purposes)
- coloured pencils
- photocopyable 61

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Traffic light cards technique (see page 14); Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: groupwork; pairwork; Three facts and a fib technique (see page 15)
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 5, part 1

### Starting the lesson (2 minutes)

- Show pupils all the balls you have. Write *Ball games* on the board. Ask *What's your favourite ball game? Why?* and elicit answers.

### Presentation (3 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will talk about ball games around the world.
- Introduce the key words from the text, e.g. *bat*, *wicket*, drawing pupils' attention to the pictures on page 16.

### Culture notes

- Rounders is a popular children's ball and bat game for English, Irish, Welsh and Scottish children, played since the 1500s. It was referenced in 1744, in a children's book, where it was called baseball. Points are scored by the team that bats, when a player hits the ball a long way and runs around all the bases in one turn.
- Australian (Aussie) rules football (footy) uses an oval ball like in rugby and involves two teams of 18 players. It's similar to football but to move the ball, you can use any part of your body.

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 5, part 1

CULTURE

## Ball games

around the world

What ball games do you know? Do you play with a bat? Do you play with your hands or feet?

**Baseball**

Baseball is a very popular game in the USA and in Japan. You play baseball with a bat and a ball. You must hit the ball, then you run quickly around the diamond.



diamond



bat

**Cricket**

Cricket is very popular in the UK, Australia, New Zealand, India and Pakistan. You play cricket with a bat and a very hard, fast ball. You must stand at a wicket. Then you hit the ball with the bat and run quickly to the other wicket.



wicket

**Australian Rules Football**

Australian Rules Football comes from Australia. You can run with the ball and you can kick it. It's a very exciting game! The players can jump very high!



**Fun fact**

Do you know that people all around the world play ball games?

**Project - Lesson 5, part 2**

**Make a rules poster for a ball game.**

- In groups, choose a sport.
- Find or draw pictures of this sport.
- Write about the sport. Answer these questions:
  - What's the name of the sport?
  - What can you do?
  - What must you do?
  - What mustn't you do?
- Present your poster to the class.

**The rules of volleyball**

You can play it indoors or outdoors. You must hit the ball with your hands. You must play on one side of the net. You mustn't catch the ball.



**1 Before you read** Which ball game is the most popular in your country?

**2 Listen and read.**

**3 After you read** Activity Book, page 12.

**4** What's different from sports at your school? Think of three things. Then tell your partner.

At school, we play ..., but we don't play ...

**Find out more! Watch the video.**

16 sixteen

### 1 Before you read Which ball game is the most popular in your country? (2 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 16 and read the question. Pupils discuss in pairs for one minute. Then ask for class feedback. Pupils raise their hands to offer ideas.

### 2 5.10 Listen and read. (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to find different pieces of sports equipment while they read.
- Play the audio all the way through.

- Check comprehension with questions *Where in the world do people love baseball? (Japan and the USA.); Can you run with the ball in Aussie Rules? (Yes.); What equipment do you need to play cricket? (A bat, a ball, a wicket).*

## 5.10

**Ball games around the world**

What ball games do you know? Do you play with a bat? Do you play with your hands or feet?

**Baseball**

Baseball is a very popular game in the USA and in Japan. You play baseball with a bat and a ball. You must hit the ball, then you run quickly around the diamond.

**Cricket**

Cricket is very popular in the UK, Australia, New Zealand, India and Pakistan. You play cricket with a bat and a very hard, fast ball. You must stand at a wicket. Then you hit the ball with the bat and run quickly to the other wicket.

**Australian Rules Football**

Australian Rules Football comes from Australia. You can run with the ball and you can kick it. It's a very exciting game! The players can jump very high!

3 **After you read Activity Book, page 12.**

- Pupils turn to page 12 in their Activity Books before they complete the Class Book activities for this lesson.

**Extra activity Critical thinking**

- Pupils work in pairs and find the similarities and differences between the ball games in the text, e.g. *you need ... you must ... you can ..., etc.*

4 **What's different from sports at your school? Think of three things. Then tell your partner.** (5 minutes)

- Place pupils in pairs for this activity.
- Walk around the class monitoring pairs.
- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to elicit ideas from different pairs.

**Diversity****Support**

- Write key phrases or words from the text on the board. Have pupils copy the words into their vocabulary lists. Explain meanings if necessary.

**Challenge**

- Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), ask pupils to say a key word from the text that is connected to the theme of ball games. Pupils write the words in their vocabulary lists.

▶ **Find out more! Watch the video.** (5 minutes)

- Tell pupils they are going to watch a video and to watch carefully.

**Extra activity TPR**

- Ask pupils to choose a ball game from their poster presentations and go outside to play it together.

**Activity Book**

Lesson 5, part 1

**CULTURE**

1 Complete the bubble web.

use a bat run quickly diamond kick the ball wicket

2 After you read Complete the sentences with one or two words.

high hard ~~baseball~~ bat can and a very wicket with ~~play~~

- 1 Many people play baseball in the USA and in Japan.
- 2 In baseball you hit the ball with a bat.
- 3 The cricket ball is (very) hard and fast.
- 4 In cricket, you must run from wicket to wicket.
- 5 In Australian Rules Football, players can kick the ball.

3 Think of a sport you play at school and answer.

- 1 What sport is it? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 How many players can play? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 What do you need to play it? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Can you play it well? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 What rules are there? Write two. \_\_\_\_\_

**I'm learning**

Make your own bubble web. Try other topics such as subjects at school, sports or food.

12 twelve

1 **Complete the bubble web.** (5 minutes)

- Pupils complete the bubble web in pairs with the words/phrases from the box. Explain that the words/phrases relate to more than one sport in some instances.
- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to check that pupils know what they have to do.
- Write the answers on the board.

2 **After you read Complete the sentences with one or two words.** (5 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually. Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).



# Culture and Project

## 3 Think of a sport you play at school and answer. (5 minutes)

- Pupils complete individually first.
- Place pupils in pairs to compare ideas and prepare for the poster activity.
- Walk around the class monitoring pairs.
- Place two pairs together and have pupils discuss their ideas.
- Ask for class feedback after pupils complete the activity.
- Read the *I'm learning box*. Pupils make their own bubble webs using a different topic. Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.

## Finishing the lesson (3 minutes)

- Using the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15), ask *What did you learn today?* and have pupils raise their hands to offer answers.

## Lesson 5, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Describe a ball game, e.g. *You play this with a ball. You stand at the wicket. You hit the ball with a bat, etc.* and have pupils name the sport. Include other sports not included on page 16 of the Class Book too.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will make a rules poster for a ball game.
- Elicit some of the rules for common ball games, e.g. *In football, players can't touch the ball with their hands (except the goalkeeper).*

## Practice – Project

### Class Book

Lesson 5, part 1

CULTURE

## Ball games

around the world

What ball games do you know? Do you play with a bat? Do you play with your hands or feet?

#### Baseball

Baseball is a very popular game in the USA and in Japan. You play baseball with a bat and a ball. You must hit the ball, then you run quickly around the diamond.



diamond



bat

#### Cricket

Cricket is very popular in the UK, Australia, New Zealand, India and Pakistan. You play cricket with a bat and a very hard, fast ball. You must stand at a wicket. Then you hit the ball with the bat and run quickly to the other wicket.



wicket

#### Australian Rules Football

Australian Rules Football comes from Australia. You can run with the ball and you can kick it. It's a very exciting game! The players can jump very high!



**Fun fact**

Do you know that people all around the world play ball games?

**1 Before you read** Which ball game is the most popular in your country?

**2 Listen and read.**

**3 After you read** Activity Book, page 12.

**4 What's different from sports at your school? Think of three things. Then tell your partner.**

At school, we play ..., but we don't play ...

**Find out more! Watch the video.**

16 sixteen

**Project - Lesson 5, part 2**

**Make a rules poster for a ball game.**

- In groups, choose a sport.
- Find or draw pictures of this sport.
- Write about the sport. Answer these questions:
  - What's the name of the sport?
  - What can you do?
  - What must you do?
  - What mustn't you do?
- Present your poster to the class.

**The rules of volleyball**

You can play it indoors or outdoors. You must hit the ball with your hands. You must play on one side of the net. You mustn't catch the ball.



### Make a rules poster for a ball game. (25 minutes)

- Divide pupils into groups of four. Have them decide in their groups which sport they are going to make a rules poster for.
- Ask a volunteer to read aloud the example.
- Explain that pupils should write and illustrate (with either drawings or photos) at least two rules – one with *must*, one with *mustn't* – on their poster.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Each group presents their poster to the class. Make sure each pupil says something.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Pupils use the Three facts and a fib technique (see page 15) to write sentences about the ball games they learnt about. Ask pupils to present their sentences to the class to spot the facts and the fib.

### Extra activity Photocopiable 61

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 61.

# English in action

## Lesson 6

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to talk about preferences
- **Target language:** *What shall we do? Do you want to (play a computer game)? Not really. I'd rather (play chess).*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can understand some details in short, simple dialogues on familiar everyday topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 30).
- **Listening:** Can understand short, simple dialogues in which speakers make arrangements to do something, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- **Speaking:** Can give simple reasons to explain preferences, given a model (GSE 35). Can make simple arrangements to do something (GSE 36).

### Materials

- Yes/No response cards
- photocopyable 65

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Yes/No response cards technique (see page 14); Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: groupwork; pairwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 6

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Ask pupils questions and have them respond using the Yes/No response cards technique (see page 14). Ask *Do you like playing football? Do you like playing board games/computer games? (Which?) Do you like arts and crafts/drawing? Do you like knitting/sewing?* Ask pupils to say what their hobbies are and what sports they do.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to talk about preferences.
- Write these verbs on the board: *play, go, do*. Ask pupils to predict phrases about hobbies and sports using the verbs on the board.

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 6

**English in action**  
Talking about preferences

1 What hobbies can you see in the pictures? Which do you want to do?

1 2

2 **5.11** Watch or listen. What would Sara rather do? **fishing on the lake**

3 **5.12** Watch or listen again, read and check.

What shall we do, Sara?  
Do you want to play a computer game?  
Not really. I'd rather play chess.  
I can't play chess very well.  
I'd rather go fishing.  
Good idea!  
OK, let's go fishing on the lake.

**Say it!**  
What shall we do?  
Do you want to play a computer game?  
Not really. I'd rather play chess.

4 **Plan your day.**  
Do you want to ...?  
Not really. I'd rather ...

Activity Book, Unit 5  
Lesson 6 seventeen 17

### 1 What hobbies can you see in the pictures? Which do you want to do? (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 17. Pupils discuss in pairs and then raise their hands to offer answers.

### 2 **5.11** Watch or listen. What would Sara rather do? (5 minutes)

- Play the audio or video. Do not confirm answers yet.

#### 5.11

**Boy:** What shall we do, Sara?  
**Sara:** Do you want to play a computer game?  
**Boy:** Not really. I'd rather play chess.  
**Sara:** I can't play chess very well. I'd rather go fishing.  
**Boy:** Good idea!  
**Sara:** OK, let's go fishing on the lake.

### 3 **5.12** Watch or listen again, read and check. (5 minutes)

- Play the audio or video again for pupils to watch or listen and read. Confirm the answer to Activity 2.
- Draw pupils' attention to the *Say it!* box. Read out the sentences and have pupils repeat as a class. Explain the meanings of the sentences if necessary.

# English in action

## Extra activity Collaborative work

- Divide the class into two groups. One group is Sara; the other is her friend. Play the audio and pause after each sentence. Pupils from each group repeat.

## 4 Plan your day. (5 minutes)

- Place pupils in pairs to complete the activity.
- **Extension** Pupils repeat the activity in different pairs.

## Diversity

### Support

- Give pupils one minute to prepare their ideas before speaking.

### Challenge

- Have pupils perform their conversation to the class.

## Extra activity TPR

- Team mimes. Ask a pair of pupils to mime exchanges from 4 silently, using body language. The other pupils suggest ideas, which are confirmed (or not) by the players.

## Activity Book

English in action

5

Talking about preferences

---

**1** Listen and tick (✓) what they would rather do.

1 a  b

2 a  b

3 a  b

4 a  b

**2** Complete the dialogue.

go to I'd rather idea let's \_shall\_

What shall we do, Razan?

Do you want to go to the bookshop?

Not really. I'd rather go to the park. I like the park.

Good idea!

OK, let's go to the park and fly our kites!

**3** In pairs, talk about what you want to do together. Look at the pictures in Activity 1 or use your own ideas.

thirteen 13

## 1 5.13 Listen and tick (✓) what they would rather do. (5 minutes)

- Check pupils understand *I'd rather*. Say it means you want to do one thing more than another.
- Play the audio.
- Confirm answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### 5.13

**1 Boy 1:** What shall we do?

**Girl 1:** Do you want to go fishing?

**Boy 1:** Not really. I'd rather go windsurfing. It's very windy!

**Girl 1:** OK. Let's go windsurfing.

**2 Girl 2:** What shall we have for lunch?

**Boy 2:** Do you want a cheese sandwich?

**Girl 2:** Not really. I like vegetables. I'd rather have a salad.

**Boy 2:** OK. Let's have a salad.

**3 Boy 3:** What shall we do?

**Girl 3:** Do you want to ride a bike?

**Boy 3:** Not really. I'd rather ride a scooter. My bike is broken.

**4 Girl 4:** What shall we do?

**Boy 4:** Do you want to listen to music?

**Girl 4:** Not really. I'd rather watch TV. My favourite TV programme is on now.

**Boy 4:** Yes! Good idea! Let's watch TV!

## 2 Complete the dialogue. (5 minutes)

- Pupils complete the dialogue with the words from the box.
- Check answers as a class.
- **Extension** Pupils read the dialogue in pairs.

## 3 In pairs, talk about what you want to do together. Look at the pictures in Activity 1 or use your own ideas. (3 minutes)

- Place pupils in pairs to talk about what they want to do. They use the pictures in Activity 1 (or their own ideas) and the dialogue in Activity 2 as a model.

## Finishing the lesson (2 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to encourage pupils to discuss their learning challenges and successes. Ask *What shall we do tonight, ... or ...?* Pupils respond appropriately.

## Extra activity Photocopiable 65

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 65.

# Skills

## Lesson 7, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to read and understand a text about a leisure centre and the activities you can do there
- **Target language:** revision of unit vocabulary and grammar





### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can find specific information about typical free-time activities for young people in simple illustrated information leaflets (GSE 39).

### Materials

- notebooks
- photocopyable 69

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)



-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
-  Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Expert envoy technique (see page 15)
-  Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15); Learning diary (see page 15)

## Lesson 7, part 1

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write *Leisure centre* on the board. Have pupils raise hands and tell you things they expect to or would like to be able to do in a leisure centre.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

-  Explain that in this lesson pupils will read a text about a leisure centre. Explain *Give-it-a-go Day* is the same as Activity day.
-  Write the words *trampoline*, *safety harness*, *races* and *arts and crafts* on the board. Ask pupils to work in pairs and find the pictures that show these activities on page 18.
- Ask pupils to point to the pictures for feedback.

### Diversity

#### Support

- Give pupils some extra information before they read. Say *The text is about the activities you can see in the pictures. What equipment do you need? Can you do these activities/hobbies/sports?*

#### Challenge

- Ask pupils extra questions: *Have you been to a leisure centre? What can you do there? What activities are on the page?*

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 7, part 1

**Skills**

Reading

- 1 Before you read Look at the pictures. Which activity do you want to try?
- 2 Listen and read Listen and read. How much do the activities cost? 10 OMR


**Muscat Leisure Centre**

**Give-it-a-go Day!**

Do you want to find a new hobby or try a new sport? Come to our Give-it-a-go Day! We've got a lot of different sports and activities for you!


Trampolining

Jump as high as you can on our amazing trampolines! With the safety harness on, you can jump very high or try some more exciting moves!




Climbing

Do you love climbing trees? Come and try our climbing wall! You can learn to climb safely and have lots of fun!




Races

We've got a lot of fun races, too! There are running races in the morning and afternoon.



Arts and crafts

Do you love making things? Come and try your hand at lots of different arts and crafts! Would you rather learn knitting or sewing? Or would you rather learn painting or drawing?



3 After you read Answer the questions.

In which activity ...

1 can you use paint?	Arts and crafts
2 can you jump very high?	Trampolining
3 can you use pencils?	Arts and crafts
4 can you wear something on your head?	Climbing
5 can you wear a safety harness?	Trampolining / Climbing

When: Saturday 10<sup>th</sup> April, 10 o'clock to 4 o'clock

Where: Muscat Leisure Centre


Cost: just 10 OMR, for all activities!

**Fill in your form now!**

18 eighteen
Activity Book Unit 5 Lesson 7, part 2

## Reading

### 1 Before you read Look at the pictures. Which activity do you want to try? (5 minutes)

-  Refer pupils to page 18. Pupils work in pairs. Ask pupils to give reasons for their answers and ask each other *Why/Why not?*
- Ask a few pupils to report back to the class.

## Skills

- 2** 🎧 **5.14 Listen and read. How much do the activities cost?** (15 minutes)
- Before pupils do the activity, remind them that when they first listen to and read a longer text, they do not need to understand every word. They just have to get the general idea or gist of the text.
  - Play the audio.
  - Check comprehension with questions. Ask *What day and time is Give-it-a-go Day? (10<sup>th</sup> of April 10 am–4 pm.); What activities can you try? (Trampolining, climbing, races, arts and crafts.); Why do you need a safety harness? (To try trampolining and climbing.); Where can you climb? (Up a climbing wall.); When can you do fun races? (All day, morning and afternoon.); What's another way to say painting, drawing, sewing and knitting? (Arts and crafts).*

## 5.14

**Muscat Leisure Centre****Give-it-a-go Day!**

Do you want to find a new hobby or try a new sport? Come to our Give-it-a-go Day! We've got a lot of different sports and activities for you!

**Trampolining**

Jump as high as you can on our amazing trampolines! With the safety harness on, you can jump very high or try some more exciting moves!

**Climbing**

Do you love climbing trees? Come and try our climbing wall! You can learn to climb safely and have lots of fun.

**Races**

We've got a lot of fun races, too! There are running races in the morning and afternoon.

**Arts and crafts**

Do you love making things? Come and try your hand at lots of different arts and crafts. Would you rather learn knitting or sewing? Or would you rather learn painting or drawing?

**When:** Saturday 10<sup>th</sup> April, 10 o'clock to 4 o'clock.

**Where:** Muscat Leisure Centre.

**Cost:** just 10 OMR, for all activities!

**Fill in your form now!**

**Extra activity Critical thinking**

- 👥 Pupils work in pairs and find all the nouns and verbs in the text connected to the theme of leisure activities. They write the words in their notebooks under two separate headings.

- 3** **After you read Answer the questions.** (5 minutes)

- 👥 Pupils complete the activity individually. They then compare answers with a partner.
- 🗣️ Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

**Extra activity Collaborative work**

- 👥 Pupils work in groups to think of more/different leisure activities for their own Give-it-a-go Day (e.g. at school, a local leisure centre, an outdoor space). Have them draw and label activities they think of.

**Extra activity Fast finishers**

- Pupils write their ten favourite words from this lesson in their notebooks. They write the meanings or draw pictures next to the words.

**Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)**

- 👥 Pupils close their books. They work in pairs and tell each other what they can do at the leisure centre. They take turns to say a sentence.
- 👣 Walk around the class monitoring pairs.
- 📖 Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *Did you remember everything? What do you think about Give-it-a-go Day?*



## Lesson 7, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to name all the activities you can do at a leisure centre, apart from the ones mentioned in the text from the first part of the lesson. Ask them how they can stay safe while doing the activities.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to tell you what they can remember about the Muscat Leisure Centre from the last lesson. Have pupils say what kinds of activities children can do there, when the activities take place and how much they cost. They can quickly read the text again if necessary.
- Ask them to identify the two adverbs of manner in the text (*safely, high*).

### Practice

#### Activity Book

Lesson 7, part 2

**Skills**

---

**Reading**

**1 After you read** Look and read. Choose the correct word and write.



cost



race



climbing wall



safety harness



arts and crafts



trampoline

1 You can learn climbing here.

2 The money you need to pay for something.

3 You wear this when you go climbing or trampolining.

4 Many people running at the same time.

5 You use it to jump very high.

6 You can make many creative things if you do this activity.

climbing wall

cost

safety harness

race

trampoline

arts and crafts

**2 Circle the correct word.**

1 The Give-it-a-go Day is at the weekend in the week.

2 You can climb a tree wall on the Give-it-a-go Day.

3 You can't run in a race in the morning evening.

4 You can can't make something with your hands.

5 The Give-it-a-go Day is in a park leisure centre.



6 You pay 10 OMR for three activities everything you do.





14 fourteen

## Reading


### 1 After you read Look and read. Choose the correct word and write. (10 minutes)

- Ask volunteers to describe the pictures.
- Read the sentences aloud and elicit the meaning of any words that they may not know (*pay, creative, etc.*)
-  Explain to pupils that they read the sentences and write the correct word.
- Give pupils time to complete the activity individually. They compare answers with a partner.
-  Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### 2 Circle the correct word. (10 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually. Tell them that they are now going to look for specific information. They can refer to page 18 of their Class Books to find the answers.
-  Use the Expert envoy technique (see page 15) to have stronger pupils help weaker pupils do the activity if necessary.
-  Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### Finishing the lesson (10 minutes)

-  Pupils write down what they achieved in their Learning diary (see page 15), in particular what they learnt about reading longer texts: *Today I read about ... and I learnt ...*

#### Extra activity Photocopiable 69

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 69.

# Skills

## Lesson 8, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to understand a listening task; to make a plan with a partner; to complete a form
- **Target language:** revision of vocabulary and grammar

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can identify people in their immediate surroundings or in pictures from a short, simple description of where they are and what they are doing (GSE 30).
- **Speaking:** Can make simple arrangements to meet or do something (GSE 39).
- **Writing:** Can complete a simple form with basic personal details (GSE 29).

### Materials

- photocopiable 73

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; Two stars and a wish technique (see page 15); Think-pair-share technique (see page 15); groupwork
- Independent learning: Learning diary (see page 15)

## Lesson 8, part 1

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Play the song from Lesson 4 (track 5.6) and encourage pupils to join in and do the actions.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to children talk about what they can and can't do well and then fill in a form.
- Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), ask pupils to say activities and hobbies they can do well.

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 8, part 1 5

**Listening**

1 **Look at the pictures. Listen and choose the correct picture.**

1 Who can run very quickly?

(A) (B) (C)

Sara      Sheikha      Azza

2 Who plays chess badly?

(A) (B) (C)

Ammar      Talal      Basim

**Speaking**

2 **Make a plan with a partner about which activities you'd like to do at the Give-it-a-go Day.**

What activity do you want to do?

I want to do trampolining.

Why?

Because you can jump high and it's exciting!

I'd rather ...

**Writing**

3 **Read the form. Who is Rashid's emergency contact? Younis Al Kharousi**

**Muscat Leisure Centre**

First name: RASHID

Surname: AL KHAROUSI

Date of birth: 23/02/15

Address: EAST ROAD, MUSCAT

Home phone number: 968 12345678

Emergency contact: YOUNIS AL KHAROUSI

Relationship: FATHER

Emergency contact phone number: 968 12345678

Any allergies? YES - ALLERGIC TO BEE STINGS

Taking part in: TRAMPOLINING, CRAFTS, CLIMBING

Signature: Younis Al Kharousi

**Writing**

Use capital letters when you fill in a form.

4 **Fill in your own form.**

1 **Plan**

- Who's your emergency contact?
- What's his/her phone number?
- Do you have any allergies?

2 **Write**

- Create and fill in your form.

3 **Check your work**

- Complete all the parts?

## Listening

### 1 5.15 Look at the pictures. Listen and choose the correct picture. (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 19 and tell them to read the questions and the names before they listen so they know what to listen for.
- Play the audio.
- Pupils check answers in pairs



## 5.15

**1 Who can run very quickly?**

**Girl:** It's Give-it-a-go Day! at the sports centre tomorrow.

**Boy:** What's that?

**Girl:** It's an activity day. You can try a lot of different activities. There are races, too. I'm in a running race with Sara. She runs very quickly. I'm worried about it!

**Boy:** What about Azza? Is she in the race? She can run very quickly too, can't she?

**Girl:** Azza? No, she runs very slowly. It's Sara who runs quickly.

**2 Who plays chess badly?**

**Boy:** And on Tuesday it's the school chess competition.

**Girl:** Who's playing in the school chess competition?

**Boy:** Basim. But he's terrible at chess, he plays so badly! Ammar is much better.

**Girl:** Why isn't Ammar playing?

**Boy:** He's ill so he can't play. That's why Basim is playing.



**Diversity****Support**

- Write the questions above on the board for pupils to answer.

**Challenge**

- Ask more comprehension questions: *When is Give-it-a-go Day? (Tomorrow.); Where is Give-it-a-go Day? (At the sports centre.); Who is the fastest, Sara or Azza? (Sara.); Why isn't Ammar playing in the competition? (He's ill, so he can't.).*


**Speaking****2 Make a plan with a partner about which activities you'd like to do at the Give-it-a-go Day. (10 minutes)**

-  Pupils work in pairs.
-  When they have made a plan, ask one pupil in each pair to stand up and sit with another pupil from another pair. Pupils then repeat the activity.
- Ask different pupils to tell the class about the activities their partner(s) wants to do.

**Writing****3 Read the form. Who is Rashid's emergency contact? (5 minutes)**

- Give pupils a minute to read the text and find the answer.
- Check comprehension with questions *When's Rashid's birthday? (27<sup>th</sup> February.); What is the phone number to call if there is an emergency? (968 12345679.); Is he racing? (No.).*

**Extra activity TPR**

-  Using the Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14), pupils respond to your questions: *Do you know how to fill in a form like this? Are you ready to write this text?*

**4 Fill in your own form. (5 minutes)**

- Read the Writing tip to pupils.
- Plan: Go through the bullet points as a class. Elicit suitable answers and write notes for each on the board.
- Write: Draw pupils' attention to Rashid's writing in the Class Book and how he fills in the form using capital letters and commas (in his address and when listing the activities he wants to take part in). Write the form on the board and elicit information to complete it (the information can be made up).
- Check your work: As a class, check that all sections of the form have been filled in correctly.

**Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)**

- Tell pupils that they will complete their own form for a leisure centre in the next lesson. Ask them to think about what they could write.

## Skills

## Lesson 8, part 2

## Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Place pupils in pairs. Ask them to brainstorm the sections of the form without looking at their Class Books.

## Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will complete their own form with personal information. Ask them why it's important to provide an emergency contact and their phone number and allergy information.

## Practice

## Activity Book

Lesson 8, part 2

5

Writing

Use capital letters when you fill in a form.

**1 Read and match.**

1 First name:	a MILK
2 Surname:	b LOTTIE
3 Date of birth:	c ANNE SULLIVAN
4 Address:	d SULLIVAN
5 Home phone number:	e MOTHER
6 Emergency contact:	f CHESS, SWIMMING
7 Relationship:	g 15/01/2015
8 Any allergies?:	h 23 REGENT STREET, ELY
9 Taking part in:	i 1229 324354

**2 Fill in your own form.**

**1 Plan**

Read and answer. Make notes.

- Who's your emergency contact? \_\_\_\_\_
- What's his/her phone number? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you have any allergies? \_\_\_\_\_

**2 Write**

Use your notes and write.

First name: _____	Emergency contact: _____
Surname: _____	Relationship: _____
Date of birth: _____	Any allergies? _____
Address: _____	Taking part in: _____
Home phone number: _____	

**3 Check your work**

Read your form again and tick (✓).

All in capital letters?  Correct spelling?  Clear handwriting?

**3 Design your own form and take it home. Ask your family to fill it in.**

fifteen 15

**2 Fill in your own form.** (15 minutes)

- Use the Think-pair-share technique (see page 15) to discuss the writing plan from the Class Book in the last lesson. Refer pupils to the Tip box before completing the activity.
- Walk around monitoring pupils as they answer and offer help and support.
- Pupils work individually to use their notes and complete the information in the form.
- When they have finished, ask pupils to check their writing by ticking the boxes to show they have done each of these things.
- Using the Two stars and a wish technique (see page 15), pupils read and check each other's work, taking into account the writing tip.
- Encourage pupils to read out their completed forms to their classmates

**3 Design your own form and take it home. Ask your family to fill it in.** (10 minutes)

- Have pupils look at the form on page 19 of the Class Book. Pupils design their own form in their notebooks, adding any categories they wish.
- Work can be displayed for parents and other classes to see.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Pupils write down what they achieved in their Learning diary (see page 15): *Today I wrote ...*

**Extra activity Photocopiable 73**

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 73.

## Writing

**1 Read and match.** (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to Activity Book page 15. Remind them of what they learnt about capital letters and commas in the last lesson.
- Pupils complete the activity individually and then check answers in pairs.
- Check answers as a class.

# Phonics

## Lesson 9

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn a new spelling for the sound /ɜ:/; to revise alternative spellings for this sound; to read simple words containing the target sound; to revise previously taught tricky words; to learn the new tricky word: *can't*; to adopt strategies to recognise and read tricky words in sentences
- **Target language:** -ur /ɜ:/: *fur, curl, surf, burn, hurt*
- **Tricky word:** *can't*



### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can understand basic factual statements relating to pictures or simple texts (GSE 30).
- **Listening:** Can identify key information from short audio recordings, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 31).
- **Speaking:** Can say simple tongue twisters and other types of playful language (GSE 27).
- **Writing:** Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).

### Materials

- Optional teacher-made flashcards for the sound /ɜ:/, with *er*, *ir* and *ur* spellings
- Optional teacher-made flashcards for tricky word: *can't*


### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Peer learning: pairwork

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Review the sound /ɜ:/ from Grade 2. Write the different spellings on the board (*ir*, *er*). Point to these at random and ask pupils to say the sound. Are they the same or different? (*the same*)
- Ask pupils if they can remember any words that contain the /ɜ:/ sound. You can invite them up to draw a picture or do a mime to represent the word.
- Write *er* and *ir* on the board. Say words with each spelling, for example *girl*, *fern*. Encourage pupils to point to the correct digraph each time. If they find this difficult, write the words on the board and ask volunteers to come up and draw a line to the correct digraph.
- Then write any words from the previous activity which aren't already on the board, and invite pupils to identify the letters in each word that make the /ɜ:/ sound. They can come up and circle the letters, or tell you which ones to choose.
- If pupils find it difficult to remember the different spellings for this vowel digraph, you may wish to use flashcards and games to revise this further.

### Presentation (2 minutes)


-  Tell pupils that in this lesson, they will learn a new way to spell the sound /ɜ:/ and study some words which use this spelling.


### Practice

#### Class Book

Lesson 9


**Phonics**

1  Listen and say.




**ir**

bird




**er**

herbs




**ur**

fur





**ur**


curl

2  Listen and say the tongue twister.

Is that a bird in the herbs?  
It isn't a bird. It has fur  
and curls!




3  Listen and write. Then say.




1

s\_ **ur** \_f




2

h\_ **ur** \_t



3


b\_ **ur** \_n


4  Listen and match. Then write.


1 **ur**

2 **er**

3 **ir**

a  sh\_ **ir** \_t

b  b\_ **ur** \_n

c  f\_ **er** \_n

20 twenty

Activity Book, Unit 5  
Lesson 9

### 1 5.16 Listen and say. (5 minutes)

- Look at Activity 1 on page 20 with the class. Focus on the pictures and talk about what the pupils can see. Explain that they might recognise some of these words from earlier levels. Check understanding of *bird* and *herbs* if they weren't covered in the lesson opener. Ask pupils to say what is the same and what is different about them. (*They have the same sound but a different spelling.*)
- Point to the digraphs on the page and recap the sound.
- Play the audio. Help pupils to match each sound and word in the audio to a digraph or picture. They point to each object as they hear the word.
- Model the words, emphasising the /ɜ:/ sound each time and ensuring this is clear. Encourage pupils to repeat the words, then point to each picture in turn and have them say the words independently.

## Phonics

- Display teacher-made flashcards or use the whiteboard to show the three spellings of the /ɜ:/ sound again. Say the words in a different sequence and ask pupils to point to the correct spelling each time.
- Write the gapped form of the words on the board: b \_\_ d, h \_\_ bs, f \_\_, c \_\_ l. Elicit the missing letters as a class to check understanding.

## 5.16

ir bird  
er herbs  
ur fur, curl

2  **5.17 Listen and say the tongue twister.** (5 minutes)

- Write *ir*, *er* and *ur* on the board. Look at the picture in Activity 2 with the class and see if pupils can identify any of the items in the picture that contain these spellings.
- Explain that pupils will hear a tongue twister that relates to the picture, and they should point to the items in the picture as they listen. Play the audio.
- Play the audio again and ask the pupils to follow the words in the tongue twister as they listen.
- Play the audio a third time and ask pupils to join in with the tongue twister.
- Check understanding by using your flashcards or the whiteboard to show the three different spellings, and asking pupils to say the corresponding word or words from the tongue twister.
- Repeat the tongue twister as a class until pupils are confident with the language and the pronunciation.

## 5.17

Is that a bird in the herbs?  
It isn't a bird. It has fur and curls!

3  **5.18 Listen and write. Then say.** (5 minutes)

- Explain that pupils will now learn some more words with the new *ur* spelling for the /ɜ:/ sound.
- Play the audio. Tell pupils to listen and point to each picture in turn. Check understanding of each word using mimes or gestures to demonstrate meaning.
- Play the audio a second time and pause for pupils to complete the words with *ur*.
- Play the audio a third time, pausing after each item for the class to repeat each word.
- You can check answers by copying the gapped words onto the board and inviting pupils to come up and complete the words.

## 5.18

1 surf  
2 hurt  
3 burn

4  **5.19 Listen and match. Then write.** (5 minutes)

- Focus on Activity 4. Point to each of the digraphs in turn for pupils to say, and ensure they are saying the same sound each time. Then look at each of the pictures and show that there is a gapped word beside each one. Some of these words (*shirt*, *fern*) are revised from earlier grades, so elicit or model the words and check understanding.
- Play the audio for pupils to hear the sounds and the words.
- Play the audio for item 1 again and ask pupils to match the digraph to the correct picture on the right. Confirm that it is picture b, *burn*. Then ask pupils to complete the word with the correct letters.
- Repeat with items 2 and 3.
- Check answers by writing the digraphs on the board or displaying your own flashcards. Ask pupils to say the words for each picture and point to the correct digraph.

## 5.19

1 ur burn  
2 er fern  
3 ir shirt

**Extra activity TPR**

- Write *ir*, *er* and *ur* on the board. Ask pupils to tell you some words with each spelling.
- Write *ir*, *er* and *ur* in large letters on three separate pieces of paper, and stick these up in different parts of the classroom.
- Say a word with one of the spellings, e.g. *fern*. Pupils move to stand under the correct piece of paper, or point to it. Check they are correct, then repeat with more words to practise all of the spellings.

## Activity Book

## Phonics

Lesson 9

- 1 Look, listen and repeat.



I can't surf!

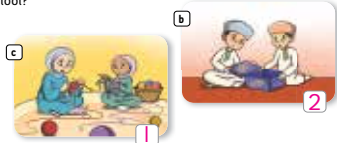
Can the bird fly?  
No, it can't.Tricky word  
can't

- 2 Listen and write. Then look and number.

- They can't knit!
- Can they play board games?  
No, they can't.
- Why can't you go to school?  
Because I don't feel very well.



3



2

- 3 Look and write. Listen, check and say.

can can't

We can't fly a kite.We can't play tennis.We can't ride a bike.But we can sail a boat!

16 sixteen

- 1 5.20 Look, listen and repeat. (3 minutes)

- Start by revising the tricky words that pupils covered in Grade 4 Semester 1 (*bye, any, Mr, Mrs, people*). You can make flashcards of each word to elicit the form orally as a class. Then write sentences containing each word and invite volunteers to read them out.
- Remind pupils that tricky words, which appear frequently in texts, can't be decoded in the same way as other words because not all the letters within these words follow the rules of phonics. Remind them that they should try to memorise tricky words where possible and use phonetic cues, if appropriate, to help them.
- Look at page 16 with the class. Focus on the word at the top of the page and explain that pupils will learn a new tricky word. Read it out, then write the word *can* on the board and ask children to read it aloud. Ask pupils if the two words have the same medial sound (*no*).
- Look at Activity 1 and play the audio for pupils to listen and follow the sentences under the pictures. Point to the highlighted word each time and model the pronunciation again for pupils to repeat. Explain that it's possible to decode the 'a' in the affirmative *can* with phonetic knowledge, but they need to memorise the sound of *can't* as it doesn't follow the same rules.

- Play the audio again, then put pupils in pairs to practise the sentences. Remind them to swap roles so they both have a turn at saying the tricky word.
- If time allows, ask one or two pairs to perform their sentences for the class.

## 5.20

A: I can't surf!

B: Can the bird fly?

A: No, it can't.

- 2 5.21 Listen and write. Then look and number. (5 minutes)

- Focus on Activity 2 and give pupils time to look at the pictures. Play the audio once all the way through for pupils to listen.
- Play the first sentence of the audio again. Pause for pupils to complete the sentence with the correct word, then ask pupils to find the matching picture and write 1 in the box.
- Repeat for the second and third sentences.
- Check answers, then play the audio in full again for pupils to repeat.
- For more speaking practice, pupils can work in pairs to point to a picture for their partner to read out the correct sentence.

## 5.21

1 They can't knit!

2 Can they play board games?  
No, they can't.3 Why can't you go to school?  
Because I don't feel very well.


- 3 5.22 Look and write. Listen, check and say. (4 minutes)

- Look at Activity 3 with the class. First, look at the pictures. Discuss what pupils can see and what they think is happening in each one.
- Then point out the words in the word box and elicit each one from the class. Explain that they will use these words to complete the sentences.
- Pupils look at the pictures and read the gapped sentences. They use visual clues in the images to help them decide whether to use the affirmative or negative form for each sentence. Give pupils time to work on this quietly.
- When the majority of pupils have finished, play the audio so the class can check their answers.
- Then play the audio all the way through again for pupils to listen and repeat. They can say the sentences as a whole class, then practise in pairs, taking the different roles for the two speakers.
- If appropriate, they could stand up and use mime or gesture to represent the different activities.

**5.22**

We can't fly a kite.  
We can't play tennis.  
We can't ride a bike.  
But we can sail a boat!

**Finishing the lesson** (3 minutes)

- On their notebooks, pupils draw two pictures of activities – one which they can do, and one which they can't do. Pupils draw and then write their sentences using *I can ... and I can't ...*
- Ask pupils to show their work and read out their sentences.
-  Then put them into pairs for them to act out their sentences, using mime and gestures for the activities.



# Review

## Lesson 10, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to review unit language
- **Target language:** unit language

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Speaking:** Can name activities and say what people can and can't do, if supported by pictures or gestures (GSE 30). Can ask a range of questions in pair games to find the answer (GSE 36).
- **Writing:** Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).

### Materials

- Unit 5 flashcards (hobbies and adverbs of manner)
- Unit 5 poster: Hobbies
- photocopyable 77

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique (see page 14)
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 10, part 1

### Starting the lesson (2 minutes)

- Ask pupils a key question about hobbies and sports: *Which hobbies and sports are healthy/enjoyable for you? Why?* Accept all reasonable answers.

### Presentation (10 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will do revision of the unit vocabulary and then play a game.
- Revise the adverbs of manner by asking pupils to write down as many as they can remember in one minute. Ask different pupils to write them on the board, e.g. *well, badly, loudly, quietly, quickly, slowly, easily, carefully.*
- Revise hobbies and sports with the Unit 5 flashcards and poster. Stick the flashcards on the board and have different pupils write the words underneath: *build a robot, dress up, go fishing, go sailing, go windsurfing, kick, knit, play board games, play chess, play computer games, sew, skip.*

### Extra activity TPR

- Divide the class into two teams. Hide the Unit 5 flashcards around the room. Call out a word and have two pupils (one from each team) search for the flashcard. They shouldn't take the flashcard. The pupil who finds the flashcard gets two points. One flashcard each gets one point each.

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 10, part 1 Review 5

**1 Test your partner. Give him/her ten seconds for each question. Use the pictures.**

Can you name ...

- 2 craft activities?
- 2 outdoor activities?
- 3 indoor activities?

**2 In pairs, say what people can or can't do.**

	Nawal	Rawan	Basim	Saeed
well	😊	😞	😊	😊
carefully	😞	😊	😊	😞
quietly	😞	😊	😊	😞
loudly	😊	😞	😞	😊
quickly	😊	😊	😊	😊

She can swim well.  
She can sing loudly.  
She can't talk quietly.

Yes!  
Nawal.

**Challenge**

Challenge your classmates and play the game!

Work in two teams. Look back through the unit to find the answers to these questions.

- 1 Find a child dressed up as a firefighter. (1 point) **p. 10**
- 2 Who wants to go windsurfing in *The activity day*? (1 point) **Lottie**
- 3 What do you need to play cricket? (1 point) **a bat, a ball and a wicket**

Now think of three more questions to ask the other team.

Activity Book, Unit 5  
Lesson 10, part 2 twenty-one 21

### 1 Test your partner. Give him/her ten seconds for each question. Use the pictures. (3 minutes)

- Pupils work in pairs to ask and answers the questions. Explain that they should use the pictures to help them.
- Walk around the room monitoring pairs.

### 2 In pairs, say what people can or can't do. (5 minutes)

- Place pupils in small groups.
- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to choose pupils to name the activities. Explain to pupils that they have to read what each person can or can't do using the adverbs of manner in the table.
- Read aloud the example.
- Walk around the room monitoring groups.

# Review

- Ask different groups to tell the class about each person in the chart.

## Diversity

### Support

- Read through the adverbs in the table and elicit pupils understanding of both these and the activities in the pictures before they complete the activity. Explain meanings if necessary. Read the example in the speech bubble to the class.

### Challenge

- Ask pupils to form the questions and write them on the board in a given time limit.

## Challenge (15 minutes)

### Challenge your classmates and play the game!

- Choose team A and team B. Decide on a time limit.
- Each team finds the answers to questions 1–3. Then they write three more questions based on Unit 5. They should use a similar structure to the one on the Class Book page.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary. Divide the class into two teams.
- Give pupils two minutes to think of the three extra questions.

### Extra activity Fast finishers

- Pupils think of more questions for the Challenge game.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write on the board *In Unit 5, I can ... I am good at ... I am not very good at ...* Pupils copy the sentences into their notebooks and complete them with their own evaluation. Ask different pupils *What will you do to practise more?*

## Lesson 10, part 2

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Revise with pupils when we use capitals and commas. Have pupils come to the board and write sentences with capitals and commas in the correct place.

## Practice

### Activity Book

Lesson 10, part 2 Review 5

**1** What can or can't your family do? Complete the table.

go fishing play chess play board games skip knit sew play computer games  
go windsurfing kick a ball build a robot go sailing sing play the guitar  
cook ride a bike play tennis skateboard

well easily badly carefully slowly quickly loudly quietly

Family	can	can't
Me	play chess well	skip quickly

**2** Look at Activity 1 and write.

I can play chess well but I can't skip quickly.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Self-assessment**

My work in Unit 5 is OK good excellent.

My favourite lesson is the one about \_\_\_\_\_

Now I can \_\_\_\_\_

I need to work more on \_\_\_\_\_

seventeen 17

- 1** What can or can't your family do? Complete the table. (2 minutes)
- Go through each of the activities to make sure pupils understand what they are.
  - Pupils do the activity individually.
  - Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to check pupils understand what they have to do.
- 2** Look at Activity 1 and write. (3 minutes)
- Pupils write complete sentences based on the information from Activity 1. Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
  - Ask different pupils to read out their sentences to each other in groups and compare.

### Self-assessment (2 minutes)

- Pupils do the activity individually.

Extra practice

Activity Book

**Extra practice** Lesson 10, part 2

**1 Complete the missing letters. Use a, e, i, o or u.**

1 go fishing	2 play chess	3 skip
4 go sailing	5 build a robot	6 go windsurfing
7 sew	8 play computer games	9 kick
10 dress up	11 knit	12 play board games

**2 Follow the lines and write. Use can or can't.**

1 Yousuf \_\_\_\_\_  
2 Rawan \_\_\_\_\_  
3 Rashid and Muna \_\_\_\_\_  
4 Faisal and I \_\_\_\_\_  
5 Me \_\_\_\_\_

1 Yousuf can't ride a bike  
2 Rawan can't play tennis  
3 Rashid and Muna can play chess  
4 Faisal and I can sew  
5 I can fish

**3 Write about what you can or can't do.**

carefully well loudly quietly quickly slowly easily badly

1 run _____ I can run <u>quickly</u> .	2 sing _____
3 read _____	4 paint _____
5 knit _____	6 play chess _____

18 eighteen

**1 Complete the missing letters. Use a, e, i, o or u.** (5 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity in pairs. Ask different pairs to read a clue and an answer each.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

**2 Follow the lines and write. Use can or can't.** (5 minutes)

- Pupils work individually. Ask different pupils to read out a sentence.

**3 Write about what you can or can't do.** (5 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually, then discuss as a class.

Vocabulary and Grammar reference

Activity Book

Vocabulary

**1 Translate the words into your language. Add more words to the list.** (5 minutes)

- Pupils work in pairs to complete the list. Check answers as a class.

Grammar

**2 Read and complete.** (3 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually, then compare in pairs.

Dictation (5 minutes)

- Have pupils turn to page 73 in their Activity Book.
- Play the audio for pupils to individually listen and write the sentences.
- Check the answers as a class.

5.23

- I go fishing at the weekend.
- He can sing very loudly.
- Shall we play a computer game?

Lesson 10, part 2 Vocabulary and Grammar reference 5

**Vocabulary**

**1 Translate the words into your language. Add more words to the list.**

<b>Hobbies and free time</b>	_____	<b>Adverbs</b>	_____
build a robot	_____	badly	_____
dress up	_____	carefully	_____
go fishing	_____	easily	_____
go sailing	_____	loudly	_____
go windsurfing	_____	quickly	_____
kick	_____	quietly	_____
knit	_____	slowly	_____
play board games	_____	well	_____
play chess	_____	_____	_____
play computer games	_____	_____	_____
sew	_____	_____	_____
skip	_____	_____	_____

**Grammar**

**2 Read and complete.**

What well quick can't knit reads Can loudly speak

Can – Affirmative and negative			Can – Questions			
I	can <sup>1</sup> speak _____	English.	<sup>3</sup> What	can	I	do?
He/She/It	<sup>2</sup> can't play	tennis.			he/she/it	
We/You/They					we/you/they	
			<sup>4</sup> Can	I	sing?	
					he/she/it	
				we/you/they		

Regular adverbs			Irregular adverbs	
quick	+ quickly	I run very quickly.	good →	<sup>5</sup> well
careful	ly carefully	He <sup>6</sup> reads carefully.		They <sup>7</sup> knit well.
loud	ly loudly	She speaks loudly.		

Go to Dictation on page 73. nineteen 19

Finishing the lesson (2 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils *What do you need to practise more? How can you do that? What are you already doing?*

Extra activity Photocopiable 77

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 77.

# Get ready for...

## Lesson 11

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to practise for the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Parts 3 and 5
- **Target language:** unit vocabulary and grammar

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33).

### Materials

- face response cards

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Happy/sad face technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: Expert envoy technique (see page 15); pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to say what hobbies, sports or leisure activities they usually do on Fridays and Saturdays.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will practise for the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Exam in the Class Book and the Activity Book.

### Practice

#### Class Book

- 1 **Read the story. Choose and write a word from the box.** (20 minutes)
  - Refer pupils to page 22. Tell pupils that this is the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 3 exam.
  - Read the Exam tip to pupils before they complete the activity.
  - Check pupils understand the task. Ask pupils to look at the words and pictures in the box first.
  - Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).
  - Ask pupils to prepare to say why each option is right/wrong and why, with evidence from the story.

## Get ready for...

Lesson 11

### A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 3

- 1 **Read the story. Choose and write a word from the box.**

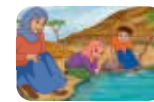
**Exam**  
Read the whole story before you write anything. Then read the list of words. Try all the words and choose the word that best fits.



jumps



school



family



river



fishing



swim

Yasir loves going (1) fishing. He goes fishing on Fridays and Saturdays, and sometimes he goes fishing after (2) school. Sometimes his dad goes with him, sometimes his sister Rasha goes with him, and sometimes he goes on his own. He goes to the (3) river near his house. It's very beautiful, with lots of trees around it. There are lots of fish in the river. One day, Yasir is fishing quietly next to the river. There's a (4) family nearby: a mother, a little boy and a girl. The children are playing happily. Suddenly Yasir hears a cry. The little boy is in the river, and he can't (5) swim. Yasir (6) jumps in and brings him back to his mother. The family is happy that the little boy is OK. Well done, Yasir!

Now tick (✓) the best name for the story.

- 1 Yasir's hobby
- 2 Dad goes fishing
- 3 Yasir's day at the river

22 twenty-two

Activity Book, Unit 5  
Lesson 11

### Diversity

#### Support

- Pupils choose the name for the story individually within a time limit of 30 seconds. Tell pupils to think about any words they don't know and ask them to say if they need these to decide on the best name for the story. Ask pupils to try and explain the words.

#### Challenge

- Pupils complete the activity individually. Write the correct answers on the board and explain the grammar points where needed.

### Extra activity Collaborative work

- Divide the class into pairs that will work together to write their own stories, using the one in this unit as a model. They can draw a storyboard or a cartoon, or write a story and illustrate it.

### Extra activity Communication

- Divide the class into groups that will discuss what they liked about the unit, using the Expert envoy technique (see page 15). Pupils write their opinion about the unit under lesson headings. The envoy reports back to the class.

### Extra activity TPR

- Using the Happy/sad face technique (see page 14), pupils react to your questions: *How much did you like Activity 1? Was it easy, OK or difficult?*

## Activity Book

## Get ready for...

Lesson 11

## A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 5

Think!

## 1 Complete the sentences.

can windsurf goes quickly is kicking

1 Hamzah likes football. Today, he is kicking a ball on the beach.2 Hamzah kicks the ball into the sea! But his sister Huda can windsurf well.3 Huda goes quickly and gets the ball. Well done Huda!

20 twenty

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask how successful pupils' learning is so far and, on a scale of 1–5, have them rate how much they enjoyed this unit.
- Congratulate pupils on completing the unit.

## Shared reading Unit 5

- Focus a lesson on shared reading with the class. Follow procedures as set out in the Teacher's Book Introduction (see page 17).

## Unit 5 practice

- Pupils now complete the Unit 5 practice. Give pupils support where necessary and focus time on areas where pupils commonly needed extra help. Praise pupils for their hard work.

## 1 Think! Complete the sentences. (8 minutes)

- Tell pupils that this is the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 5 exam.
- Ask a pupil to read the phrases in the box.
- Ask questions about each of the pictures. Picture 1: *Where are the family? What are they doing/ wearing? What items can you see?*; Picture 2: *What are the father and son doing? Where does the ball go? How does the father feel? What is the girl doing?*; Picture 3: *What does the girl do with the ball? How do Hamzah and his father feel?*
- Give pupils time to complete the activity individually
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).



# Optional lesson

## Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to revise unit language with fun tasks
- **Target language:** revision of unit language

## Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33).
- **Speaking:** Can name activities and say what people can and can't do, if supported by pictures or gestures (GSE 30). Can ask a range of questions in pair games to find the answer (GSE 36). Can express their opinions on familiar topics, using simple language (GSE 41).
- **Writing:** Can label simple pictures related to familiar topics by copying single words (GSE 16).

## Materials

- Unit 5 flashcards (hobbies and adverbs of manner)
- Unit 5 poster: Hobbies
- spinner
- one counter per pupil

## Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Traffic light cards technique (see page 14); Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; Expert envoy technique (see page 15)
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Brainstorm all the topics, language and themes of the unit with the class. Use the Unit 5 flashcards or poster as prompts.
- Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), ask pupils to say which part of the unit they most enjoyed and why.

## Presentation (5 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson, pupils will play a game. Ask pupils to look at the game in the Class Book. Ask pupils what they think they have to do.

## Practice

### Class Book

Fun corner **5**

**1 Play and say.**

I can build a robot quickly. I can play board games well.

### Start 1

1	
2	build a robot / quickly
3	
4	Miss a turn
5	knit / well
6	
7	
8	play chess / well
9	Have another go
10	
11	play computer games / quietly
10	
9	Have another go
8	sew / easily
7	
6	kick a ball / well
5	
4	
3	play board games / well
2	Miss a turn
1	

### Start 2

12	Go back 2 spaces	sew / carefully climb / quickly	13	
----	------------------	------------------------------------	----	--

### Finish 2

	24
	23
play board games / well	22
Go back 2 spaces	21
sing / loudly	20
	19
	18
exercise / easily	17
Move forward one space	16
knit / carefully	15
	14
sing / loudly	15
	16
Move forward one space	17
skip / slowly	18
	19
skip / quickly	20
Go back 2 spaces	21
	22
kick a ball / easily	23
	24

### Finish 1

Activity Book, Unit 5  
Fun corner twenty-three 23

### 1 Play and say. (15 minutes)

- Use the Unit 5 flashcards or poster to quickly review vocabulary from the unit.
- Put pupils in pairs and ask them to choose who is going to be 1 and who is going to be 2. Explain the rules of the game. Ask a pupil to read aloud the speech bubbles.
- Both pupils put their counters on their corresponding positions. Player 1 starts on Start 1 and player 2 on Start 2. The first player to land on Finish 1 or 2 wins the game. Players take it in turns to spin the spinner and move their counter. When a player lands on a green square, they have to make a sentence with *can* or *can't*, the activity and the adverb. If they get the sentence correct, they get another go. When they land on a blank space, they have to make up their own sentence.
- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to check pupils know what they have to do.

Activity Book

**Fun corner** 5

**1 Look, read and draw the path.**

I can skip.	I can kick.	I can play computer games.	I can build a robot.
I can't skip.	I can dress up.	I can go windsurfing.	I can't kick.
I can knit.	I can go sailing.	I can play board games.	I can't play chess.
I can't dress up.	I can play chess.	I can sew.	I can go fishing.

**2 Write about you. Then act the sentence. Can your partner guess?**

1 I can \_\_\_\_\_ well.

2 I can \_\_\_\_\_ quickly.

3 I can \_\_\_\_\_ loudly.

4 I can \_\_\_\_\_ easily.

twenty-one 21

**Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)**

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask what pupils have learnt today. Ask *Did you enjoy the Fun corner? Which activity did you like the most?*

**1 Look, read and draw the path. (5 minutes)**

- Ask pupils to look at the pictures and elicit each activity. Explain that they have to use the pictures to draw a path to cross the grid.
- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to help pupils who haven't understood what they have to do.
- Check answers as a class.

**2 Write about you. Then act the sentence. Can your partner guess? (5 minutes)**

- Pupils complete the sentences with an activity of their choice (they don't have to use the activities shown in the pictures). They then act out the sentence for their partner to guess.
- Use the Expert envoy technique (see page 15) to help pupils who haven't understood what they have to do.
- Call on volunteers to act out their sentences for the rest of the class.

# Graded readers 1 and 2

## Lessons 1–2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to review the phonics and language from Unit 5
- **Target language:** *chess, fishing, boat, birds, carefully, hurt, backpack; Shall we play chess, Malik? I can't play chess. Sorry. But I like going fishing. Can we go fishing?*
- **Phonics:** *ur*; revise *ie, er*
- **Tricky word:** *can't*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can identify specific information in short, simple dialogues in which speakers make arrangements to do something, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 36). Can understand people's preferences in informal conversations, if the speakers talk slowly and clearly (GSE 38). Can identify people in their immediate surroundings or in pictures from a short, simple description of where they are and what they are doing (GSE 38).
- **Speaking:** Can express their opinions on familiar topics, using simple language (GSE 41). Can express agreement using simple fixed expressions (GSE 33). Can give simple reasons to explain preferences, given a model (GSE 35).
- **Reading:** Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can identify the main themes of a simplified story (GSE 36). Can understand basic factual statements relating to pictures or simple texts (GSE 30).



### Learning outcomes

- **Listening:** Listen and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics.
- **Speaking:** Ask and answer questions on familiar topics like daily activities, habits, times and events; Use basic language structures when speaking; Act out part of a picture story, short dialogue or role play.
- **Reading:** Read frequently encountered words with ease; Read and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics; Answer factual questions about reading material; Extract factual details and specific information in short texts.
- **Cognitive skills:** Participate in activities that involve taking the role of familiar people; Say whether they like a story, song or game, and give reasons for their choice/preference; Recognise the differences between a story and a fact.

### Materials


- Unit 5 flashcards
- Unit 5 poster: Hobbies
- the Big Book

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)


-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Peer-learning: pairwork; groupwork

## Lesson 1, option A

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

-  Explain that the next story is about a craft day at school. Brainstorm craft activities that pupils might do during a craft lesson at school and write these on the board. Use the Unit 5 flashcards to help if necessary.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Look at page 24 with the class. Ask pupils what they can see. Read the story title *It's Craft Day* and ask pupils what they think the story will be about.
-  Explain that pupils will now participate in a shared reading activity where you will all enjoy a story together using The Big Book. Explain that some of the words from Unit 5 will feature in the story. Ensure that they are sitting comfortably, and in a position where they can see the text and the pictures easily.

### Before reading (5 minutes)

- Prepare pupils for the tricky word they will encounter in the story by writing it on the board to practise together (*can't*).
- Write on the board *Can you fly? No, I can't*. Encourage pupils to do some speed reading while you point to each word. Remind them to use phonetic cues and visual memory strategies.

## During reading (15 minutes)

## Class Book

## Graded reader 1

## It's Craft Day!

Today is a special day at school. It is Craft Day!  
The children can sew, knit and dress up. They can build a robot, too.



## Graded reader 1 5

Bayan is Samira's friend. Bayan can sew and she can knit, too.  
She can help Samira. She can help her to dress up.



## Graded reader 1

Bayan works carefully. She sews and she knits quickly.  
Samira watches her quietly.



## Graded reader 1 5





## Graded readers 1 and 2

- Begin reading the story to the pupils. Look at the pupils while you read and keep a good pace. Give time for the pupils to enjoy the story, pausing to allow them to predict what might happen next. Read expressively, changing your voice for different characters, and use facial expressions and different volume levels when appropriate. Ensure that pupils look at the pictures to help them understand the story.
- Pause at the end of each page and take time to ask questions to check understanding and then encourage pupils to make predictions about what will happen next. After reading page 24 to the pupils, ask *What special day is it in school? (Craft Day.); What can the pupils do? (Sew, knit dress up and build a robot.); Can Samira knit or sew? (No.); Can she build a robot? (Yes.); What does she have on her desk? (A pencil case with rabbits on it.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 25: *What can Bayan do? (Sew and knit.); What clothes can she help Samira make? (She can help to make a shirt and hat for her.); What does Samira say? (Thank you, Bayan.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 26: *How does Bayan work? (She works carefully.); What does Samira do? (She watches her quietly.); Can Samira see her shirt and hat now? (Not now.); Why do you think this is? (Pupils' own answers).*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 27: *What is Samira's costume? (A Rabbit.); What has it got?; (Fur, curls and long ears.); What does Bayan give her? (Herbs.); Does Samira like dressing up? (Yes.).*

### Post reading (5 minutes)


- Write the sentence with *can't* from the story on the board. Ask pupils if they can identify the tricky word in the sentences and circle it (*can't*).
- Encourage pupils to read whole sentences with support and reinforce the meaning of any sentences you focus on using picture cues, actions and explanations.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write the phonic spellings on the board: *ur, ir, er*.
- Ask pupils to find words in the story that contain these spellings (*fur, curl, shirt, herbs*). Segment each word and write them on the board below each heading and point to them for pupils to read. See if pupils can add other words to each list.

## Lesson 2, option A



### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

-  Ask pupils to work in pairs. They tell each other what they can remember about the story *It's Craft Day!*
- Ask pairs to share what they can remember with the class.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Say sentences from the story, but include some mistakes. If the sentence is correct, pupils do not do anything. If there is a mistake, they clap. Encourage them to correct the mistake.
- Say sentences from the speech bubbles. Pupils say who said it.

### Act the story (25 minutes)

-  First, ask pupils to work in pairs. They take it in turns to read a sentence from the story. Go around and offer help as they do this.
-  Now divide the class into groups of three (Samira, Bayan, narrator). Explain that they are going to act out the story. Ask pupils to choose a part to play, or you can allocate roles. Explain that the narrator will read the story as the others act, and will help the actors with prompts if they forget or do not know what to say.
- Give pupils time to practise their roles.
- When they are ready, groups take turns to perform the story to the class.
- Encourage the class to clap at the end.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils if they liked the story. Give them a few minutes to evaluate it and encourage them to think about what they liked and didn't like, what they thought of the characters, whether they were able to read the words and whether they understood the plot.
- Ask pupils which character was their favourite and encourage them to give reasons for their answers.



## Lesson 1, option B

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Review the phonics from Unit 5. Write *ur*, *ir* and *er* on the board. Ask pupils to say any words they can remember with these sounds.
- Use the Unit 5 flashcards and poster to revise the vocabulary for hobbies. If you're using the poster, choose a pupil to come and tap on the picture of the word you say.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Look at page 28 with the class. Read the story title *Let's Go Fishing!* and ask pupils what they think the story will be about. Ask them if they have ever been fishing.
- Explain that pupils will now participate in a shared reading activity where you will all enjoy a story together. Explain that some of the words from Unit 5 will feature in the story. Ensure that they are sitting comfortably and in a position where they can see the text and the pictures easily.

### Before reading (5 minutes)

- Prepare pupils for the tricky word they will encounter in the story by writing it on the board to practise together (*can't*). You can also present the words *boat*, *birds*, *backpack*.

## During reading (15 minutes)

### Class Book

Graded reader 2

## Let's Go Fishing!

Rashid and Malik are friends. It is Saturday afternoon and the boys are at Rashid's house.



Graded reader 2

5

It's a beautiful day. The boys can see lots of birds, and they can see lots of fish.



## Graded readers 1 and 2

## Graded reader 2

It's a sunny afternoon. The boys are hot on the boat. Malik wants his water, but where is his backpack?



## Graded reader 2

5



- Begin reading the story to the pupils. Look at the pupils while you read and keep a good pace. Give time for the pupils to enjoy the story, pausing to allow them to predict what might happen next. Read expressively, changing your voice for different characters, and use facial expressions and different volume levels when appropriate. Ensure that pupils look at the pictures to help them understand the story.
- Pause at the end of each page and take time to ask questions to check understanding and then encourage pupils to make predictions about what will happen next. After reading page 28 to the pupils, ask *Who are Rashid and Malik? (Friends.); What day is it? (Saturday.); Where are the boys? (They are at Rashid's house.); What does Rashid want to do? (Play chess.); Can Malik play chess? (No, he can't.); What does he want to do? (Go fishing); What do they use to go fishing? (Rashid's dad's boat.).*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 29: *What's the day like? (Beautiful); What can the boys see? (Lots of birds and fish.); What are the birds doing? (They are getting fish.); What colour is Malik's backpack? (Orange and brown); Can the girl windsurf well? (Yes, she can.); Can Rashid windsurf? (No, he can't.) What can he do? (He can get a big fish.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 30: *Are the boys hot? (Yes.); Where is Malik's water? (In his backpack.); Can Malik find his backpack? (No, he can't.) Can Rashid see his backpack? (No, he can't.) What has he got? (A fish.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 31: *What does Malik tell Rashid to do with the 'fish'? (To get it carefully and not to hurt it.); What colour is the 'fish'? (Brown and orange.); Do they get it quickly? (Yes.) It is a fish? (No.) What is it? (Malik's backpack.)*

## Post reading (5 minutes)

- Choose sentences with *can't* in from the story and write them on the board. Ask pupils if they can identify the tricky word in the sentences and circle it (*can't*).
- Encourage pupils to read whole sentences with support and reinforce the meaning of any sentences you focus on using picture cues, actions and explanations.


## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write the phonic spelling on the board: *ur, ir, er*.
- Ask pupils to find words in the story that contain these spellings (*windsurf, hurt, bird, her*). Segment each word and write them on the board below each heading and point to them for pupils to read. See if pupils can add other words to each list.

## Lesson 2, option B

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

---

-  Ask pupils to work in pairs. They tell each other what they can remember about the story *Let's Go Fishing!*.
- Ask pairs to share what they can remember with the class.



### Presentation (5 minutes)

---

- Say sentences from the story, but include some mistakes. If the sentence is correct, pupils do not do anything. If there is a mistake, they clap. Encourage them to correct the mistakes.
- Say sentences from the speech bubbles. Pupils say who said it, Rashid or Malik.

### Act the story (25 minutes)

---

-  First, ask pupils to work in pairs. They take it in turns to read a sentence from the story. Go around and offer help as they do this.
-  Now divide the class into groups of three (Malik, Rashid, narrator). Explain that they are going to act out the story. Ask pupils to choose a part to play, or you can allocate roles. Explain that the narrator will read the story as the others act, and will help the actors with prompts if they forget or do not know what to say.
- Give pupils time to practise their roles.
- When they are ready, groups take turns to perform the story to the class. Encourage them to do the actions as they speak.
- Encourage the class to clap at the end.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

---

- Ask pupils if they liked the story. Give them a few minutes to evaluate it and encourage them to think about what they liked and didn't like, what they thought of the characters, whether they were able to read the words and whether they understood the plot.
- Ask pupils if they think fishing is fun and why/why not.



# Our town

## Unit objectives

To talk about places in the local area

## Language

<b>Vocabulary</b>	<b>Places in the local area:</b> <i>bridge, bus stop, café, car park, clothes shop, hotel, market, mosque, shopping mall, square, train station, zoo</i> <b>Adjectives:</b> <i>ancient, busy, cheap, expensive, modern, noisy, quiet, safe</i>
<b>Grammar</b>	Past simple of <i>to be</i> <i>There was/were</i> affirmative and negative sentences and questions
<b>Functions</b>	Drawing conclusions and making recommendations: <i>I was at the... What was it like? It was... How was it? You should (go and see it)!</i>
<b>Phonics</b>	<b>dge:</b> <i>bridge, hedge; ge:</i> <i>stage, large</i> <b>Tricky words:</b> <i>was, were</i>

## Learning outcomes

<b>Listening</b>	Detect a story sequence; Demonstrate an awareness of intonation patterns when listening; Listen and respond to peers and adults; Listen and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics; Listen and identify familiar words, set phrases and specific information in short, simple texts on familiar topics; Listen to join in with songs, chants, jingles, rhymes, tongue twisters and simple dialogues; Respond verbally and non-verbally to short, basic, spoken and aural instructions; Respond to factual and literal questions; Identify core vocabulary; Respond to referential questions based on aural texts; Identify key and specific information in short, simple conversations/dialogues on familiar topics; Demonstrate specific information in short, simple conversations/dialogues
<b>Speaking</b>	Respond verbally to direct questions, suggestions and visual input; Accurately reproduce modelled language; Articulate words and sentences using correct stress, rhythm and intonation; Use basic language structures when speaking; Express ideas using a range of familiar words, set phrases and expressions; Retell simple stories, personal experiences and events using a range of familiar words, set phrases and expressions; Ask and answer questions on familiar topics like daily activities, habits, times and events; Participate in short, simple interactions on familiar topics; Articulate sounds and isolated word forms and connected speech using correct pronunciation; Recite songs, rhymes, chants and tongue twisters individually and chorally; Sing a basic song, rhyme and chant from memory; Act out part of a picture story, short dialogue or role play
<b>Reading</b>	Decode unfamiliar words by using phonemic awareness and blending strategies when reading; Read frequently encountered words with ease; Recognize the effect of punctuation when reading; Read and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics; Read and identify familiar words, set phrases and key information in short, simple factual texts on familiar topics from the headings and illustrations; Answer factual questions about reading material; Extract factual details and specific information in short texts; Make basic inferences from simple information in short texts; Decode unfamiliar words by using phonemic awareness and blending strategies when reading; Read frequently encountered words with ease; Recognize the effect of punctuation when reading; Read and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics; Read and identify familiar words, set phrases and key information in short, simple factual texts on familiar topics from the headings and illustrations; Answer factual questions about reading material; Extract factual details and specific information in short texts; Make basic inferences from simple information in short texts

<b>Writing</b>	Complete a phrase or sentence by supplying the missing word; Write simple sentences describing pictures, drawings, or activities, etc., using words from a list; Write clearly formed letters and words; Use phonological awareness and blending strategies to write new words; Construct sentences and questions using correct spacing, capitalization, question marks, apostrophe/simple contractions and full stops based on a model; Write high frequency words correctly; Write legibly and neatly letters in script; Copy words, phrases and sentences accurately; Maintain appropriate spacing between letters in a word and between words; Spell frequently used words correctly; Write basic, single clause sentences given a model
<b>Cognitive skills</b>	Find uses for created objects or contents (e.g. in a play, story or game); Understand the steps needed to complete the activity; Say if they feel happy with what they have done; Recognize when a task has been completed; Say if a task has been completed well; Try to help solve a problem in the group); Explore different materials and decide what to use; Say whether they like a story, song, or game, and give reasons for their choice/preference); Draw basic pictures to represent vocabulary and familiar concepts; Participate in drama based activities which allow for personal interpretation; Participate in activities that involve taking the role of familiar people; Listen and respond physically to songs, rhymes, chants and jingles; Use own ideas for doing creative activities like colouring, drawing and building to represent vocabulary and familiar concepts; Stay engaged and focused on short tasks, does not get distracted; Match objects, people, letters, pronunciation and words; Guess words from illustrations in storybooks; Recognize the differences between a story and a fact; Understand and carry out basic instructions for class/school; Take personal responsibility for one's own contribution to a group task; Make eye contact with group members; Use gesture and posture inclusively (e.g. sit in a circle, look at other children, wave to other children, point to where they could set); Engage with others to make sense of things around them; Observe rules of games when playing with other children; Take turns in shared activities; Share space and objects; Listen carefully, attend to, and take account of what others say

## Key competences

**Linguistic competence:** use language as an instrument for communication (L. 1–11)

**Mathematical, science and technological competences:** order pictures and sentences to complete a task (L. 2)

**Digital competence:** use Class Book and Activity Book eBook (L. 1–11)

**Social and civic competences:** learn to be creative (L. 1); be collaborative (L. 2); raise awareness of social skills and empathy (L. 3)

**Cultural awareness and expression:** raise awareness of cultural similarities and differences (L. 5)

**Learning to learn:** reflect on what has been learnt and self-evaluate progress (L. 1–11); use previous knowledge (L. 1); follow instructions (L. 1–11); personalisation of language learnt (L. 3 and 5)

**Initiative and entrepreneurship:** choose a topic for the project (L. 5)

## Future skills

**Critical thinking** Predicting (L. 7); Problem solving (L. 2); Logical thinking (L. 1, 2 and 5); Defining and describing (L. 1, 2, 4 and 5); Finding information (L. 1–3, 6–8); Planning (L. 8); Reflecting on learning (L. 1–11)

**Creativity** Making a poster of historic buildings in Oman (L. 5)

**Communication** Describing a town (L. 1); Asking and answering questions (L. 3); Talking about towns and things people did in the past (L. 1, 3, 5, 6 and 8); Functional dialogue (L. 6); Challenge game (L. 10)

**Collaboration** Project groupwork (L. 5); Acting out (L. 2)

## Evaluation

- Assessment for Learning: throughout the unit (see detailed notes in the lesson plans)
- Self-assessment: Class Book p. 43; Activity Book p. 31
- Unit 6 Extra practice: Activity Book p. 32
- Unit 6 Photocopiable Resources (optional): Vocabulary 1 and 2, Grammar 1 and 2, Communication game, Song, Reading differentiation, Listening differentiation, Culture video, English in Action, CLIL, Self-assessment
- Unit 6 Practice

## External tests

### Class Book

A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 2 and Part 6

### Activity Book

A1 Movers Listening Part 2



# Vocabulary

## Lesson 1, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn and use words related to places in a local area
- **Target language:** *bridge, bus stop, café, car park, clothes shop, hotel, market, mosque, shopping mall, square, train station, zoo*





### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Speaking:** Can say what's in a town (e.g. buildings, places) using basic words and phrases (GSE 30). Can ask about the location of places in a town, using simple language (GSE 35).

### Materials


- Unit 6 flashcards (*bridge, bus stop, café, car park, clothes shop, hotel, market, mosque, shopping mall, square, train station, zoo*)
- Unit 6 poster: Our town
- fly swats
- stopwatch
- photocopyable 42

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)


-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique (see page 14)
-  Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14)
-  Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
-  Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 1, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

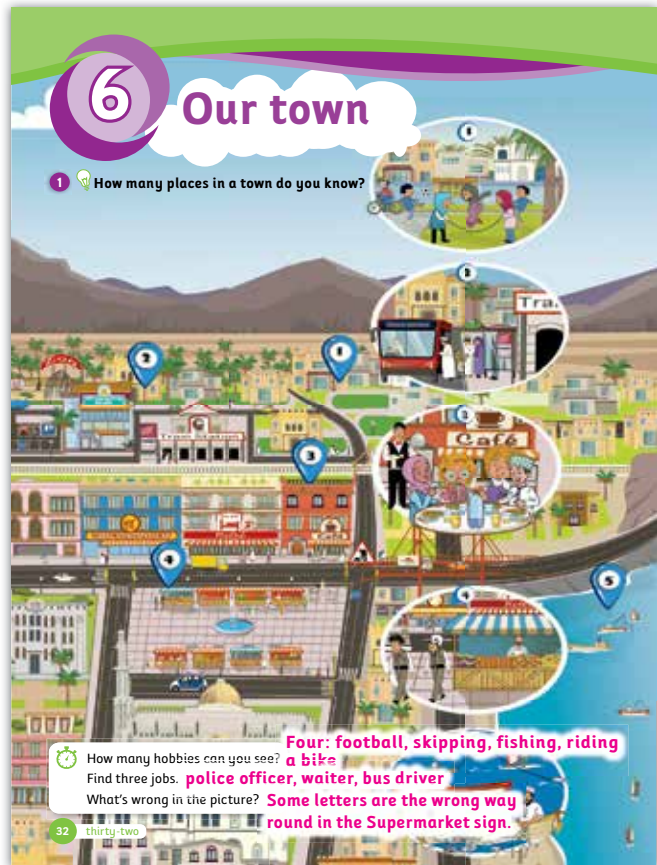
-  Write *Our town* on the board. Explain the meaning if necessary. Use the Key question technique (see page 14) to ask *Is this school in a town? Vote! Hands up for 'Yes, it is,' Hands up for 'No, it isn't a town.'* Ask *Why do you say that? Why is/isn't it a town? What makes a place a town/village/city?*

### Presentation (2 minutes)





-  Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to talk about places in a local area.
- Ask *Do you prefer to be in the town or the country? Why?*

## Practice

### Class Book



### 1 How many places in a town do you know? (5 minutes)

-  Refer pupils to page 32. Read the rubric and tell pupils to look at the picture in pairs and find the places they know.
-  Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), ask pupils to say the names of the places in the town they know.
-  Use the stopwatch and explain that they have one minute to answer the questions together.
- Check answers as a class. Have pupils raise their hands to give answers.
- **Extension**  Ask pupils to look at page 32. Have them describe the picture in pairs, telling each other what they can see, e.g. *the sea, a waiter, people fishing.*

Lesson 1, part 1 **Vocabulary** 6

2 Listen, point and repeat.

1 market

2 square

3 shopping mall

4 car park

5 train station

6 bus stop

7 hotel

8 mosque

9 café

10 clothes shop

11 bridge

12 zoo

3 Look for the words from Activity 2 in the picture on page 32. Write the missing word. clothes shop

4 Read the sentences and write the missing words. Then say.

- I want to buy food. I can go to the market or the shopping mall.
- I want to buy a lot of different things. I can go to the shopping mall.
- I want to travel in and out of the city. I can go to the bus stop.
- I want to have fun. I can go to the park, the café or the zoo or train station.
- I want to sit outside. I can go to the square.

5 In pairs, ask and answer.

buy a T-shirt      go out in the evening  
buy some fruit    eat and drink  
see some animals    cross the busy road

Where can I buy a T-shirt?  
You can go to the clothes shop or the shopping mall.

Activity Book, Unit 6  
Lesson 1, part 2      thirty-three      33

## 2 6.1 Listen, point and repeat. (10 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 33. Tell them to count how many places in the town they know.
- Place the Unit 6 flashcards or poster on the board. Point to each picture and say the word. Pupils repeat after you.
- Play the audio.
- Ask pupils to say something about the places, e.g. *You can find a bus here, you can have a coffee here, etc.*
- Model and ask pupils to repeat. Have pupils say *It's a ...* to their partner and their partner points to the correct picture. Then they swap.

### 6.1

1 market   2 square   3 shopping mall   4 car park  
5 train station   6 bus stop   7 hotel   8 mosque  
9 café   10 clothes shop   11 bridge   12 zoo

### Diversity

#### Support

- Divide the class into two groups. Play the audio again for each group to listen and repeat.

#### Challenge

- Play the audio again. Have pupils repeat without looking at the book. Ask different pupils to then spell out the words orally.

## 3 Look for the words from Activity 2 in the picture on page 32. Write the missing word. (5 minutes)

- Give pupils one minute to work in pairs to find the place words. Ask them to say which is missing. Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

## 4 Read the sentences and write the missing words. Then say. (5 minutes)

- Pupils do the activity and check their answers in pairs.
- Have pupils take it in turns to say the sentences for their partner to complete.

### Extra activity Critical thinking

- Pupils work in pairs to make a list of things, people, animals or cars do in the places. Then they make true or false sentences using adverbs of manner, e.g. *People can sleep badly in a hotel, etc.* Ask different pairs to report back to the class to decide *yes, no* or *maybe* using the Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14), e.g. *Elephants eat quietly in the zoo.* Ask pupils who decide *maybe* to say why.

## 5 In pairs, ask and answer. (5 minutes)

- Check pupils understand the words in the box. Say the options and ask pupils to pretend they are tourists, so they must communicate by miming the actions.
- Place pupils in pairs to complete the activity.

### Extra activity TPR

- Have pupils work in pairs or groups of three or four to represent one of the places 1–12. Tell them that they are now going to make their own town by using their bodies to make a bridge, a building, a zoo with animals, etc.

### Extra activity Creativity

- Pupils work in pairs to design a town in their notebooks. Ask pupils to present their town to another group or the class.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Divide pupils into groups to play *Word swat* (see page 21) with the Unit 6 flashcards.
- Encourage pupils to reflect on what they found easy and difficult today.

# Vocabulary

## Lesson 1, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Put the Unit 6 flashcards or poster on the board and have pupils name the places. Ask pupils to say some of the things they can do or see in the places.

### Practice

#### Activity Book

Lesson 1, part 2

## 6 Our town

### Vocabulary

**1** 🕒 Look at the Class Book page 32 and answer.

- What's the man sitting in the boat doing? He's fishing.
- Are some people getting on a train? No, they aren't. They're getting on a bus.
- What's to the left of the café? The hotel.

**2** Look and write.

bridge	market	shopping mall	café	square	mosque
hotel	clothes shop	train station	bus stop	zoo	car park

  
 1  
zoo

  
 2  
car park

  
 3  
market

  
 4  
café

  
 5  
mosque

  
 6  
train station

  
 7  
square

  
 8  
clothes shop

  
 9  
shopping mall

  
 10  
bridge

  
 11  
bus stop

  
 12  
hotel

**3** Answer the questions with words from Activity 2.

- Where can I sleep? hotel
- Where can I buy food? market/shopping mall
- Where can I take the bus? bus stop
- Where can I pray? mosque
- Where can I have a hot drink? café

**4** 🗨️ Which places from Activity 2 do you go to at the weekend?  
Compare in pairs.

22 twenty-two

**1** 🕒 Look at the Class Book page 32 and answer. (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils what they remember from Lesson 1. Have them open their Class Books to page 32 and look at the picture.
- Put pupils in pairs. Have them say as many things as they can about it to their partners.
- Pupils complete the activity individually and check answers in pairs.

**2** Look and write. (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the pictures and describe what each one shows.
- Pupils work individually and check answers in pairs.
- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to check answers.
- Extension** Ask pupils to spell the words.

**3** Answer the questions with words from Activity 2. (10 minutes)

- Pupils work individually to complete the activity.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).
- Ask pupils more questions about the places, e.g. *What can you use to cross a river/road? Where can you buy a T-shirt? Where can you catch a train? Where can you leave your car?*

**4** 🗨️ Which places from Activity 2 do you go to at the weekend? Compare in pairs. (10 minutes)

- Pupils ask and answer in pairs and then report back to the class.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Play *Board race* (see page 21) with the Unit 6 flashcards.
- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask what pupils have learnt today. Ask *Did you enjoy the lesson?*

#### Extra activity Photocopiable 42

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 42.

# Story

## Lesson 2, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to listen to/watch, read and act out a story about a flood
- **Target language:** revision of places in the local area; *underground, flood, broken*





### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can follow simple dialogues in short illustrated stories, if they can listen while reading (GSE 26). Can identify specific information in a simple story, if guided by questions (GSE 35). Can understand the order in which events happen (e.g. in diary entries or a story) (GSE 41).
- **Speaking:** Can describe basic differences between two pictures showing familiar activities, using simple language (GSE 39). Can act out parts of a picture story using simple actions and words (GSE 30).

### Materials


- Unit 6 flashcards (places in a local area)
- Unit 6 poster: Our town
- photocopyable 50

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)


-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14)
-  Peer learning: groupwork; pairwork
-  Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 2, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

-  Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), show pupils a Unit 6 flashcard or point to a place on the poster and ask them to name the place and spell it.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

-  Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to or watch a story.

## Practice

### Class Book

**Story**

**1 Before you read** Find four places in a town. Find someone in a black and yellow uniform.

**2 Watch or listen and read.** *train station, mosque, hotel, café*  
*The engineers are wearing black and yellow uniforms.*

**The flood**

Hey, Lottie, come and help us with our Social Studies project! It's about our town 150 years ago.

I was at the bookshop yesterday. I've got these books and these old maps.

That's interesting! The train station and mosque were here 150 years ago, but the zoo and the shopping mall weren't. They're modern.

There was a wadi in our town 150 years ago! Where is it now?

It's underground now, under the roads.

'... there's a deep flood in the town, next to the café. We don't know why ...'

Hey! Look at this map! 150 years ago, there was a wadi next to the café!

Yes! That wadi is underground now. Maybe the wadi is the problem.

We must tell someone! Come on!

34 thirty-four

- 1 Before you read** Find four places in a town. Find someone in a black and yellow uniform. (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to pages 34 and 35. Pupils work individually to complete the activity.
- Check answers as a class.

- 2 Watch or listen and read.** (10 minutes)

- Write *flood* on the board. Draw on the board and explain or translate the word.
- Play the audio or the animation.
- Check comprehension: *Why are the children looking at an old map of their town? (For their Social Studies project.); Which places in their town are more than 150 years old? (The train station and mosque.); What are the children watching on the tablet? (Local TV news.); What is the problem? (There's a deep flood in town.); What does Bo see when he swims in the flood? (A broken wall / Why the wadi is coming out.).*



# Story

## 6.2

### The Flood

- 1 Fatma:** Hey, Lottie, come and help us with our Social Studies project! It's about our town 150 years ago.
- 2 Sami:** I was at the bookshop yesterday. I've got these books and these old maps.
- Fatma:** That's interesting! The train station and mosque were here 150 years ago, but the zoo and the shopping mall weren't. They're modern.
- 3 Lottie:** There was a wadi in our town 150 years ago! Where is it now?
- Sami:** It's underground now, under the roads.
- 4 Engineer:** '... there's a deep flood in the town, next to the café. We don't know why ...'
- 5 Fatma:** Hey! Look at this map! 150 years ago, there was a wadi next to the café!
- 6 Sami:** Yes! That wadi is underground now. Maybe the wadi is the problem.
- Lottie:** We must tell someone! Come on!
- 7 Lottie:** Bo, go and look! Be very quiet!
- 8 Bo:** I was very quiet!
- Lottie:** And ... what was down there?
- Bo:** The wall is broken. The wadi is coming out. It was very noisy!
- 9 Lottie:** Excuse me. There's an underground wadi next to the café. The flood is coming from there!
- Man:** OK, thank you!
- 10 Sami:** We were right! Well done, Discovery Team!

### Diversity

#### Support

- Pre-teach words that pupils might have problems with, e.g. *underground*, *broken*, etc.

#### Challenge

- Before pupils open their books, tell them the title of the story. Pupils predict what might happen, using the information they have from the picture in Lesson 1.

- 3** **It's a café now, but what kind of shop was it 150 years ago? Go to page 106 to find out. Use page 32 to help you. (2 minutes)**

- Pupils discuss in pairs.
- Using the Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14), ask *Did you find the answer?*

Lesson 2, part 1 6

**7** Bo, go and look! Be very quiet!

**8** I was very quiet!

And ... what was down there?

The wall is broken. The wadi is coming out. It was very noisy!

**9** Excuse me. There's an underground wadi next to the café. The flood is coming from there!

**10** OK, thank you!

We were right! Well done, Discovery Team!

**3** **It's a café now, but what kind of shop was it 150 years ago? Go to page 106 to find out. Use page 32 to help you.**

**4** **After you read** Number the sentences in the correct order.

a Bo goes underground. 4

b The children tell the man about the underground wadi. 5

c Fatma and Sami are doing a project in the shed. 1

d The children watch the news and hear about the flood. 2

e The children go to the square. 3

**5** **Look at pages 32 and 106. With your partner, find five differences between the town then and now.**

**6** **Act out the story.**

There was a bakery 150 years ago and now...

Activity Book, Unit 6  
Lesson 2, part 2 thirty-five 35

- 4** **After you read** Number the sentences in the correct order. (5 minutes)

- Pupils work individually to complete the activity. Elicit answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### Extra activity Critical thinking

- Pupils work in pairs and write two sentences to say what happens next in the story, to add to those in Activity 4. They compare sentences with another pair and choose the best two, or rewrite their sentences to include all the ideas.

- 5** **Look at pages 32 and 106. With your partner, find five differences between the town then and now. (5 minutes)**

- Put pupils in pairs, nominating each Pupil A and B. Ask Pupils B to turn to page 106, and Pupils A to page 32.
- Pupils sit so they can't see each other's picture.
- Pupils take it in turns to describe their picture, e.g. *There's a ..., but ...* Ask *How about now/150 years ago?*
- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to choose pupils to say what's the same and what's different.



### 6 Act out the story. (5 minutes)

- Divide pupils into groups of five. Allocate a role to each pupil (Fatma, Lottie, Sami, Bo, the engineer).
- Pupils act out the story in groups.

#### Extra activity Critical thinking

- Pupils research, using books, photographs or maps on the Internet, their own location 150 years ago to find out what was there then and what is new.

#### Extra activity Fast finishers

- Pupils find words connected to the places in a town in the story and write the words in their notebooks.

### Finishing the lesson (3 minutes)

- Ask pupils what their favourite part of the story was. Have them read it to their partner.

## Lesson 2, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils what they remember from the story.

### Practice

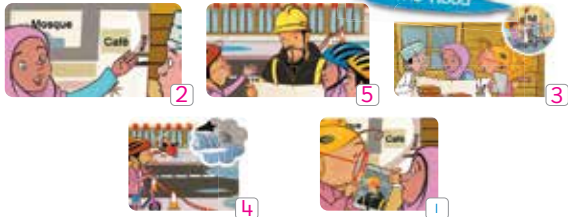
#### Activity Book

Lesson 2, part 2 Story 6

1 After you read Read and complete. Then match.

problem coming wall -flood- wadi

- There's a deep flood in town.
- 150 years ago, there was a wadi next to the café.
- The Discovery Team thinks the wadi is the problem.
- Bo finds that the underground wall is broken.
- The Discovery Team finds out where the flood is coming from.



2 Read and write True or False.

- It's a sunny day in the town. False
- The children are doing a Science project about the town. False
- 150 years ago there was a zoo in the town. False
- Sami goes down to the underground wadi. False
- The roads in the town are under water. True

3 Correct the false sentences in Activity 2.

1 It's a rainy day in the town. 2 The children are doing a Social Studies project about the town.

3 There was a train station/mosque 150 years ago. 4 Bo goes down to the underground wadi.

4 Values Read and tick (✓).

- Children's opinions are important.
- Don't listen to children.
- People of all ages can do important work.
- Children are not important.

twenty-three 23

### 1 After you read Read and complete. Then match. (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to say what is happening in each of the pictures.
- Ask pupils to complete the sentences with the words in the box and then match them to the pictures.
- Check answers as a class.

### 2 Read and write True or False. (5 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually.
- Check answers as a class.

### 3 Correct the false sentences in Activity 2. (10 minutes)

- Pupils work in pairs to complete the activity.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to choose pupils to read aloud the answers.

### 4 Values Read and tick (✓). (10 minutes)

- Pupils work individually to read the sentences and then check answers in pairs.
- Have a class discussion. Ask pupils to say why items 2 and 4 aren't very appropriate to say. Elicit ideas for more diplomatic ways to say this, e.g. *That's one/an interesting idea. Why/What about (add the issue/challenge/problem or say why you don't like it with a good reason).*

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Using the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15), ask pupils to say what they enjoyed about the lesson.

#### Extra activity Photocopiable 50

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 50.

#### CLIL Link

In Unit 6, the story is based around the concept of old maps and what these can tell us about how our town used to be, from Social Studies.

There is a flood in the town square, and the Discovery Team find out that there used to be a wadi next to the café – that is where the water is coming from. They find this out by looking at a map of how the town was 150 years ago. They let the engineers know about their discovery so that they can fix the problem.

# Grammar

## Lesson 3, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn and use *was/were*
- **Target language:** *yesterday, last night*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can understand short, simple dialogues or stories about past events if spoken slowly and clearly and guided by questions or pictures (GSE 39).
- **Speaking:** Can ask where others were in the past, using *was/were*, given a model (GSE 37). Can say where they and others were in the past, if supported by questions or prompts (GSE 40).

### Materials

- Unit 6 flashcards (places in a local area)
- photocopyable 46

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; Expert envoy technique (see page 15)
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 3, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Ask pupils what they remember from the story from Lesson 2. Prompt with questions, e.g. *What was the emergency in the town? What did Bo see underground? How was the town different 150 years ago? How did the Discovery Team help?*

### Presentation (10 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to use *there was* and *there were* to talk about the past.
- To contextualise the language, ask pupils *Were you at the shopping mall yesterday?* Elicit truthful answers from pupils. Write answers on the board, e.g. *(Talal) was ... and (Samira) wasn't ...*
- Ask different pupils *Were you in/at ... yesterday morning?* Elicit or tell pupils the short forms, *Yes, I was./No, I wasn't.* Write these on the board. Ask *Was (Talal/Samira) in/at ... yesterday morning?* and elicit *Yes, she/he was./No, she/he wasn't.*

## Practice

### Class Book


**Grammar** Lesson 3, part 1

1 Look back! Tick (✓) the sentence in this picture.

1 We were right!

2 There was a wadi in our town 150 years ago.




3 I was at the bookshop yesterday.



2 Listen and repeat.

She <b>was</b> at the zoo a week ago.	They <b>were</b> at the market yesterday.
<b>Were</b> you at the café last night?	Yes, I <b>was</b> . / No, I <b>wasn't</b> .
Where <b>were</b> you yesterday morning?	I <b>was</b> at the shopping mall.

3 Listen and circle.

1  2  3 

4 Circle the correct answer.

1 I was **wasn't** at the bookshop yesterday evening.

2 Were you at the market **two weeks ago**? **Yes, we were.**  No, we weren't.

3 Ali **was** **wasn't** at the zoo last night.

4 They **were** **were** on holiday in Salalah last summer.

5 In pairs, ask and answer. Where were you ...

- last Saturday?
- a year ago?
- yesterday at 8 o'clock in the morning?

Where were you last Saturday?  
I was at the zoo.

6 Pupil A: Activity Book, page 68. Pupil B: Activity Book, page 70.

36 thirty-six Activity Book Unit 6 Lesson 3, part 2

### 1 Look back! Tick (✓) the sentence in this picture. (2 minutes)




- Refer pupils to pages 34 and 35.
- Ask pupils to say where they found the answer.

### 2 6.3 Listen and repeat. (3 minutes)

- Explain to pupils that we use *was* with the *I, He, She* and *It*; and we use *were* with *You, They* and *We*.
- Ask pupils to look at the words in green. Explain that they all refer to times in the past. Translate them into pupils' own language if necessary.
- Play the audio.
- Write *I was ...* on the board and ask the class where they were yesterday morning.

#### 6.3

She **was** at the zoo a **week ago**.  
They **were** at the market **yesterday**.  
**Were** you at the café **last night**?  
Yes, I **was**. No, I **wasn't**.  
Where **were** you **yesterday morning**?  
I **was** at the shopping mall.



- 3  **6.4 Listen and circle.** (5 minutes)
- Ask different pupils to describe what they can see in the pictures.
  - Play the audio and have pupils circle the correct picture.
  -  Pupils work individually, then check in pairs.
  -  Confirm answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### 6.4

- 1 **Noora:** Hi, Azza! Hi, Hamzah! How was your weekend?  
**Azza:** It was good, thanks. I was at the zoo on Saturday afternoon with my family.  
**Noora:** Weren't you there a week ago, too?  
**Azza:** Yes, I was! But we love going to the zoo.
- 2 **Azza:** How about you, Noora?  
**Noora:** It was a bit boring. I was at the market with my dad on Saturday.
- 3 **Azza:** How was your weekend, Hamzah?  
**Hamzah:** It wasn't very exciting. On Saturday, I was at the clothes shop with my grandad, looking for new trousers. But there weren't any in the shop.

### Extra activity Communication

- Pupils listen to the audio again and say how the children show interest. Elicit by pausing the audio just after *How was your weekend? Weren't you there a week ago, too? How about you? How was your weekend, Hamzah?* Discuss as a class how these questions show interest.

- 4 **Circle the correct answer.** (5 minutes)
-  Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to check pupils understand what they have to do.
  -  Pupils check answers in pairs.



### Diversity

#### Support

- As a class, elicit which sentences are negative/positive and whether they need negative/positive short answers.


#### Challenge

- Where possible, pupils also write the questions and the correct short answers.


- 5  **In pairs, ask and answer. Where were you ...** (5 minutes)
- Ask two pupils to read the example. Elicit the correct questions and write them on the board.
  -  Pupils work in pairs.

- 6  **Pupil A: Activity Book, page 68.**

-  **Pupil B: Activity Book, page 70.** (5 minutes)

-  Place pupils in pairs and tell them to choose who is going to be A and who is going to be B. Ask them to find the correct page in their Activity Book.
- Pupils work together to complete the table with the missing information about where the children were by asking and answering questions.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.

### Finishing the lesson (2 minutes)

-  Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *When do we use was/wasn't or were/weren't?*

## Grammar

## Lesson 3, part 2

## Starting the lesson (5 minutes)





- On the board, write *Where were you yesterday/three days ago/last Saturday?* Place pupils in pairs and have them ask and answer the questions.

## Practice

## Activity Book

**Grammar** Lesson 3, part 2







1 Listen and tick (✓).

- Who was at the zoo last week? 
- Where were Samira and Maryam yesterday? 
- Which was the most difficult exam? 
- When was Sheikha's party? 

2 Complete the questions with **was** or **were**.

- Where were Rahaf and Jasim two days ago?
- Was Rahaf at the market last Sunday?
- Were Rahaf and Jasim at the clothes shop last Tuesday?
- Where were you and Jasim last Monday?

3 Today is Saturday. Look and answer the questions in Activity 2.

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
Rahaf	Jasim and I	Rahaf and Jasim	Rahaf	Rahaf and Jasim	Jasim	Today
						

- Rahaf and Jasim were at the bank two days ago.
- No, she wasn't. She was at the post office.
- No, they weren't. They were at the bookshop.
- We were at the market.

24 twenty-four

## 1 Listen and tick (✓). (10 minutes)

- Ask questions about the pictures: *What are the places? What school subjects are they? How do you say each of the dates?*
- Explain that pupils have to tick the correct picture. Play the audio.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

## 6.5

## 1 Who was at the zoo last week?

**Boy 1:** I was at the market with my mum last week. There were delicious fruit and vegetables.

**Girl 1:** Really? I don't like going shopping.

**Boy 1:** What do you like doing?

**Girl 1:** I love going to the zoo. I was at the zoo with my dad last week.

## 2 Where were Samira and Maryam yesterday?

**Boy 2:** Hi, Samira. Hi, Maryam.

**Girls 2 and 3:** Hi, Qais.

**Boy 2:** Where were you yesterday? I was at the café, but you weren't there.

**Girl 3:** Sorry, Qais. Maryam and I were at the shopping mall doing some shopping.

**Boy 2:** That's fine.

## 3 Which was the most difficult exam?

**Boy 3:** How were your exams last week, Areej?

**Girl 4:** Good, I think.

**Boy 3:** For me, the Maths exam was the easiest.

**Girl 4:** Yes, for me, too. I think Science was the most difficult of all.

**Boy 3:** Yes, it was very difficult.

## 4 When was Sheikha's party?

**Boy 4:** How was your weekend, Halima?

**Girl 5:** It was fantastic! I was at Sheikha's party.

**Boy 4:** Was the party on Friday?

**Girl 5:** No! I was at a concert on Friday. Sheikha's party was on Saturday.

2 Complete the questions with **was** or **were**. (10 minutes)

- Have pupils complete the activity individually.
- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to check answers.

## 3 Today is Saturday. Look and answer the questions in Activity 2. (10 minutes)

- Place pupils in pairs. Use the Expert envoy technique (see page 15) when choosing pairs. Ask pupils to name the places in the pictures.
- Pupils complete the answers.
- Check answers as a class.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *Did you understand the grammar? Is there anything that you didn't understand?*

## Extra activity Photocopiable 46

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 46.

# Vocabulary and Grammar

## Lesson 4, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn and use adjectives to describe places; to learn and use *there* with *was/wasn't* and *were/weren't*; to learn and sing a song
- **Target language:** *noisy, busy, cheap, expensive, quiet, safe, ancient, modern*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can recognise familiar words and phrases in short, simple songs or chants (GSE 18).
- **Speaking:** Can repeat single words if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 18). Can sing a basic song from memory (GSE 22).
- **Writing:** Can write about past activities using simple language, given a model (GSE 40).

### Materials

- Unit 6 flashcards (*noisy, busy, cheap, expensive, quiet, safe, ancient, modern*)
- True/False response cards
- photocopiables 42, 46, 54 and 58

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: True/False response cards technique (see page 14); Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15); Three facts and a fib technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 4, part 1

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- On the board, write *Where were you yesterday in the evening? What can you remember from the last lesson?* Pupils discuss their answers in pairs.
- Elicit answers.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn and use vocabulary to describe places, things and people, and how to use *there* with *was/were*. They will also sing a song.
- Place the Unit 6 (adjectives) flashcards on the board. Go through each adjective and have pupils repeat after you. Elicit the meaning of each adjective.
- Draw a Venn diagram on the board and label the three circles with *people, places* and *things*. Ask pupils to

suggest a word/adjective they know that can describe one or all these things and write their ideas on the board. Accept all reasonable suggestions.

### Practice

#### Class Book

Lesson 4, part 1 Vocabulary and Grammar 6

1 Listen, point and repeat.

1 noisy 2 busy 3 cheap 4 expensive 5 quiet 6 safe 7 ancient 8 modern

2 Listen and sing.

Many years ago,  
When I was very small,  
This town was very quiet and safe.  
It isn't the same now at all!

There were a lot of small, cheap shops. Now there's a modern shopping mall.  
There weren't a lot of noisy roads. There are busy roads and car parks.  
There weren't any expensive hotels. But there is one place that's still the same:  
It was very different, you know! Our ancient mosque and park!

Many years ago ... Many years ago ...

3 Listen and repeat.

There was an expensive shop.	There weren't a lot of noisy roads.
Was there a café?	Yes, there was./No, there wasn't.

4 What do you know about your town 100 years ago? Ask and answer.

1 Were there any cars? Were there any cars?

2 Was there a noisy train station?

3 Was there a modern shopping mall? No, there weren't, but there were quiet roads.

4 Was there a busy market?

5 Use the words to make sentences about your town 100 years ago.

hotel	bridge	ancient	modern	busy
clothes shop	car park	quiet	safe	expensive
car park	bus stop	cheap	noisy	

I think there was a busy hotel and cheap clothes shops. There weren't any modern car parks.

Activity Book, Unit 6  
Lesson 4, part 2 thirty-seven 37

### 1 6.6 Listen, point and repeat. (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 37.
- Play the audio.
- Practise the vocabulary using the True/False response cards technique (see page 14). Say the following sentences and ask pupils to hold the up a card.

*At lunchtime our school is noisy/quiet.*  
*Our town is ancient/modern.*  
*Holidays in Dubai are cheap/expensive.*  
*Climbing mountains is safe/dangerous.*  
*Muscat/Riyadh/Amman is quiet/busy.*

### 6.6

1 noisy 2 busy 3 cheap 4 expensive 5 quiet  
6 safe 7 ancient 8 modern

### Extra activity Collaborative work

- Have pupils say a word to their partner and their partner points to the correct picture. Then they swap.



# Vocabulary and Grammar

## 2 🎧 6.7 & 6.8 Listen and sing. (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the pictures and raise their hands to say who they can see (*an old man thinking about when he was a boy, running*).
- Play the song and tell pupils to listen only this time. Play the song again and have pupils join in.
- Play the karaoke version of the song (track 6.8) and encourage pupils to sing.

### 6.7

Many years ago,  
When I was very small,  
This town was very quiet and safe.  
It isn't the same now at all!

There were a lot of small, cheap shops.  
There weren't a lot of noisy roads.  
There weren't any expensive hotels.  
It was very different, you know!

Many years ago,  
When I was very small,  
This town was very quiet and safe.  
It isn't the same now at all!

Now there's a modern shopping mall.  
There are busy roads and car parks.  
But there is one place that's still the same:  
Our ancient mosque and park!

Many years ago,  
When I was very small,  
This town was very quiet and safe.  
It isn't the same now at all!

## 3 🎧 6.9 Listen and repeat. (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to find examples of *There was/were* and *wasn't/weren't* in the song. Have pupils copy and illustrate these examples in their notebooks.
- Ask pupils to look at the grammar box and repeat as you play the audio. Focus on the pronunciation.

### 6.9

**There was** an expensive shop.  
**There weren't** a lot of noisy roads.  
**Was there** a café?  
Yes, **there was**.  
No, **there wasn't**.

## 4 🗣️ What do you know about your town 100 years ago? Ask and answer. (5 minutes)

- 🧑🧑 Place pupils in pairs for this activity. Check pupils understand that they are making guesses using *I think ...*
- Ask two pupils to read out the examples in the speech bubbles.
- Check answers as a class.

## 5 🌟 Use the words to make sentences about your town 100 years ago. (5 minutes)

- 🧑🧑 Place pupils in pairs. Check pupils understand that they are making guesses, using *I think ...*
- Ask pupils to illustrate their sentences with simple drawings in their notebooks.
- Walk around the class monitoring pairs.

### Diversity

#### Support

- 🧑🧑 Read out the example in the speech bubble. Point out to pupils that they need to use *I think* and that they aren't expected to know, they are guessing. Give pupils preparation time. Working in pairs, they write their sentences in their notebooks.

#### Challenge

- 🧑🧑 Let pupils work in pairs without preparation time, and have them say their sentences and respond with *Yes, I think you're right* or *I'm not sure, because ...*

### Extra activity TPR

- 🧑🧑 Hand out the Unit 6 flashcards (adjectives) to different groups of pupils. Tell them they have one minute to practise a mime for the others to copy. After copying, pupils should say the opposite adjective.

### Extra activity Fast finishers

- 🧑🧑 Ask pupils to make statements about their town, city or village using the Three facts and a fib technique (see page 15). In small groups, pupils take it in turns to read their sentences aloud.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask *Do you like the song? Can you remember it without looking at the book?*
- Play the karaoke version of the song (track 6.8) again and encourage pupils to sing.

## Lesson 4, part 2

### Starting the lesson (10 minutes)

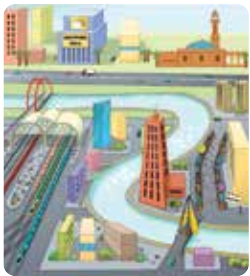
- Play *What's missing* (see page 19) with the Unit 6 flashcards (adjectives).
- Show pupils a flashcard and have them say its opposite.

### Practice

#### Activity Book

Lesson 4, part 2 **Vocabulary and Grammar** 6

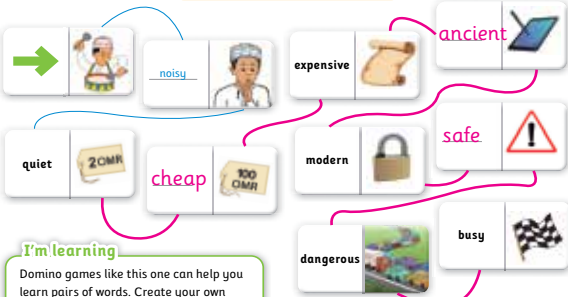
1 Complete the sentences about this city 10 years ago.



- 1 There was a noisy train station.
- 2 There were modern bridges.
- 3 There was an expensive shopping mall.
- 4 There was an ancient mosque.
- 5 There was a busy market.

2 Look, match the domino cards and write.

cheap ancient noisy safe



**I'm learning**  
Domino games like this one can help you learn pairs of words. Create your own domino game with other words you know: big, small, tall, short...

twenty-five 25

- Pupils complete the activity individually and then check answers in pairs.
- Read the *I'm learning* box.
- Put pupils into pairs or small groups.
- Ask them to use the game on the Activity Book page as a model. Tell them to make ten dominoes each. Their dominoes should have a picture on one half and an adjective on the other.
- One pupil begins by putting down a tile. Pupils then take turns playing tiles to match the pictures or words of the tiles on the table. Monitor pupils, helping when necessary. The player to play the most tiles wins.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Check feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### Finishing the lesson (10 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *Do you understand how we use adjectives to describe places? Was it easy or difficult? Why?*

#### Extra activity Photocopiables 42, 46, 54 and 58

- Ask pupils to do photocopiables 42, 46, 54 and 58.

### 1 Complete the sentences about this city 10 years ago. (10 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the picture and name some of the things they can see.
- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to check pupils understand what they have to do.
- Pupils complete the activity in pairs.
- Check answers as a class.

### 2 Look, match the domino cards and write. (10 minutes)

- Ask pupils to name the items they can see on the dominoes. Explain to pupils how to play dominoes if they don't know. Explain that they must match the pictures on the tiles to words in the box. Ask pupils to look at the example and to notice how the picture and the word match.

# Culture and Project

## Lesson 5, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn about historic buildings in Oman; to make a poster of a historic building in Oman
- **Target language:** revision of vocabulary and grammar

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can identify the main topic of a simple structured text (GSE 38). Can extract factual details from a simple text (GSE 40).
- **Listening:** Can understand simple phrases related to familiar topics, if spoken slowly and clearly and supported by pictures (GSE 27).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about familiar places in a basic way (GSE 35). Can talk about something they like or dislike and give reasons, if guided by questions (GSE 39).
- **Writing:** Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).

### Materials

- sheets of A4 paper
- coloured pencils
- pictures of ancient and modern buildings
- photocopyable 62

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: portfolio (see page 15); Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

### Culture Sources (online)

- rohmuscato.org.om
- pettitts.co.uk
- sultanqaboosgrandmosque.com
- lonelyplanet.com
- ehsanbayat.com

## Lesson 5, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Put the pictures of buildings on the board and refer pupils to page 38. Check understanding of the words *ancient* and *modern*. Ask *Which buildings are modern and which are ancient?*

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn about historic buildings in their country.

### Culture notes

- Jibreen Castle was an important centre of learning for astrology, medicine and Islamic law and inside the castle, there's a lot of other interesting features, such as painted ceilings and hidden rooms. Jibreen is located between the mountains and an especially dry part of the desert. It's incredibly hot for most of the year, which why the castle has a *falaj* (irrigation channel). This channel, which runs through the outer courtyard, was not used for drinking and washing but as an early type of air-conditioning system!

### Practice

#### Class Book

## Historic buildings in Oman

Historic buildings aren't always old! They can be modern, too. Let's take a look at three very different historic buildings.

**Name:** Sultan Qaboos Grand Mosque, Muscat  
**Year:** 2001

20,000 people can pray in the beautiful Grand Mosque in Muscat. Inside, there is the world's second biggest carpet. It has 28 different colours. Wow!

**Name:** Royal Opera House, Muscat  
**Year:** 2011

Today, people go to the Royal Opera House to see music, art and culture from around the world. The amazing building also has cafés, restaurants and pretty gardens.

**Name:** Jibreen Castle  
**Year:** 1675

Imam Bil-Arab Bin Sultan built the strong walls of this big building in Bahla. Did you know that it was also a school for Islamic Studies and Science? Amazing!

**Fun fact**

There are more than 500 forts and castles in Oman!

**Project** -- Lesson 5, part 2

**Make a poster of historic buildings in Oman.**

- 1 In groups, choose a historic building. Each group must choose a different building!
- 2 Find or draw pictures of this building.
- 3 Write about the building:
  - What's its name?
  - Where is it?
  - Is it ancient or modern?
- 4 Present your building to the class.
- 5 Put the buildings together on a poster.

Suhar Fort

This is Suhar Fort. It is in Al Batinah North Governorate. It is an important ancient building.

**Find out more!** Watch the video.

38 thirty-eight

### 1 Before you read Is there a historic building in your city? Is it modern or ancient? (3 minutes)

- Explain that *historic* refers to famous or very important buildings, not just old ones.
- Give pupils time to think about their town or city in pairs. Then pupils share their answers with the class.

### 2 6.10 Listen and read. (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the pictures on page 38. Ask if they recognise any of the buildings.

- Play the audio for pupils to listen and read in silence. Play the audio again for pupils to read aloud.
- Check with comprehension questions, e.g. *How many people can pray at the Sultan Qaboos Grand Mosque? (20,000.); How many colours has it got? (28.); What can you go and see at the Royal Opera House? (Music, art and culture.); What else has the Royal Opera House got? (Cafés, restaurants and pretty gardens.); Where is Jibreen Castle? (Bahla.); Was it only a castle? (No, it wasn't. It was also a school.).*
- **Extension** 🗨️ Pupils work in pairs to make and respond to statements, e.g.  
Pupil A: *There's a big carpet.*  
Pupil B: *the Sultan Qaboos Grand Mosque.*  
Pupil B: *It's got strong walls.*  
Pupil A: *Jibreen Castle.*

## 6.10

**Historic buildings in Oman**

Historic buildings aren't always old! They can be modern, too. Let's take a look at three very different historic buildings.

**Name:** Sultan Qaboos Grand Mosque, Muscat

**Year:** 2001

20,000 people can pray in the beautiful Grand Mosque in Muscat. Inside, there is the world's second biggest carpet. It has 28 different colours. Wow!

**Name:** Royal Opera House, Muscat

**Year:** 2011

Today, people go to the Royal Opera House to see music, art and culture from around the world. The amazing building also has cafés, restaurants and pretty gardens.

**Name:** Jibreen Castle

**Year:** 1675

Imam Bil-Arab Bin Sultan built the strong walls of this big building in Bahla. Did you know that it was also a school for Islamic Studies and Science? Amazing!

**Extra activity Critical thinking**

- 🗨️ Have pupils think about the three buildings in pairs. Ask *Why do you think these buildings have the design they have?* Pupils discuss reasons. Share pupils' ideas with the class.
- Ask a volunteer to read the Fun fact. Ask *Why do you think these castles and forts were built?* Write pupils' ideas on the board.

**3 After you read Activity Book, page 26.**

- Pupils turn to page 26 in their Activity Books before they complete the Class Book activities for this lesson.

**4 Which building do you want to visit? Why? Tell your partner.** (5 minutes)

- 🗨️ Pupils discuss the buildings, saying which they would like to visit the most. Encourage pupils to give reasons for their choices.

**Diversity****Support**

- Write the key words from the text on the board, e.g. *building, historic, beautiful, biggest, different, carpet, culture, amazing, pretty, strong, tallest.* Have pupils copy the words into their vocabulary lists. Review the meanings of the words.

**Challenge**

- 🗨️ In pairs, pupils find all the adjectives in the texts (*important, old, modern, historic, beautiful, big, different, amazing, pretty, strong, tall*). They write sentences with the adjectives to describe places in their town or city.
- 📁 Suggest pupils put their work in their portfolios (see page 15).

**Find out more! Watch the video.** (5 minutes)

- 📺 After watching the video, use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils questions about what they found interesting about the video. Encourage them to say, e.g. *The best part for me was when ...*

**Activity Book**


Lesson 5, part 1

**CULTURE**


**1 Look and number.**

modern **1** **2** ancient **3** restaurants **2** strong walls **3** carpet **1**


**1**



**2**



**3**



**2 After you read Match the sentence halves.**

<p>1 The Sultan Qaboos Grand Mosque</p> <p>2 The Royal Opera House</p> <p>3 Jibreen Castle</p>	<p>a has got cafés, restaurants and pretty gardens.</p> <p>b has very strong walls.</p> <p>c has got the world's second biggest carpet.</p> <p>d was a school for Islamic Studies and Science.</p> <p>e shows music, art and culture from around the world.</p> <p>f is where many people go to pray.</p>
--	---

**3 Read and choose.**

- The Royal Opera House is the most **ancient** **modern** building and Jibreen Castle is the most **ancient** **modern**.
- I think the Royal Opera House is **bigger** **older** than Jibreen Castle, but the Sultan Qaboos Grand Mosque is the **biggest** **oldest** building.
- Jibreen Castle is the oldest building, and the Royal Opera House is the **lowest** **tallest**.

**26** twenty-six



# Culture and Project

- 1 **Look and number.** (3 minutes)
  - Ask pupils to say the names of the buildings.
  - Pupils complete the activity individually.
  - Check answers as a class.
- 2 **After you read Match the sentence halves.** (5 minutes)
  - Pupils complete the activity in pairs.
  - Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).
- 3 **Read and choose.** (5 minutes)
  - Pupils complete the activity individually.
  - Check answers as a class.

## Finishing the lesson (4 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *Which building was the most interesting for you? Why?*
- Encourage pupils to reflect on what they found easy and difficult today.

## Lesson 5, part 2

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Ask pupils to say what they remember about the three buildings from the first part of the lesson without looking at the texts. Encourage them to use adjectives to describe them.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson, pupils will make a poster about important buildings in Oman.

### Practice – Project

#### Class Book

#### Make a poster of historic buildings in Oman. (30 minutes)

- Divide pupils into groups of three. Give each group a piece of paper and some coloured pencils.
- Brainstorm a list of historic buildings in Oman and write them on the board (these can include the buildings pupils learnt about in the first part of the lesson).
- Ask groups to choose one of the buildings. Make sure that each group chooses a different building.
- Explain that pupils should find photos or draw pictures of the building and write a paragraph about it using the texts and the example project in the Class Book as models. Tell them that their paragraphs should include its name, where it is, whether it's ancient or modern and why it's important. They should also include some interesting facts about their building.

- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Each group presents their building to the class. Make sure each pupil from each group reads out some information.
- Make a classroom display of the finished posters.

## Historic buildings in Oman

Historic buildings aren't always old! They can be modern, too. Let's take a look at three very different historic buildings.

**Name:** Sultan Qaboos Grand Mosque, Muscat  
**Year:** 2001

20,000 people can pray in the beautiful Grand Mosque in Muscat. Inside, there is the world's second biggest carpet. It has 28 different colours. Wow!

**Name:** Royal Opera House, Muscat  
**Year:** 2011

Today, people go to the Royal Opera House to see music, art and culture from around the world. The amazing building also has cafés, restaurants and pretty gardens.

**Name:** Jibreen Castle  
**Year:** 1675

Imam Bil-Arab Bin Sultan built the strong walls of this big building in Bahla. Did you know that it was also a school for Islamic Studies and Science? Amazing!

**Fun fact**

There are more than 500 forts and castles in Oman!

**Project – Lesson 5, part 2**

**Make a poster of historic buildings in Oman.**

- 1 In groups, choose a historic building. Each group must choose a different building!
- 2 Find or draw pictures of this building.
- 3 Write about the building:
  - What's its name?
  - Where is it?
  - Is it ancient or modern?
- 4 Present your building to the class.
- 5 Put the buildings together on a poster.

SUKHAR FORT

This is Sukhar Fort. It is in Al Batinah North Governorate. It is an important ancient building.

**Before you read** Is there a historic building in your city? Is it modern or ancient?

**2 Listen and read.**

**3 After you read** Activity Book, page 26.

**4 Which building do you want to visit? Why? Tell your partner.**

I want to visit Jibreen Castle because ...

**Find out more! Watch the video.**

38 thirty-eight

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils what they have learnt today. Ask pupils how this lesson has helped them understand more about historic buildings in Oman.
- Then ask them to say at least five adjectives to describe buildings.

#### Extra activity Photocopiable 62

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 62.



# English in action

## Lesson 6

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn to draw conclusions and make recommendations
- **Target language:** *I was at the ... What was it like? It was ... How was it? You should go and see it!*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can understand a simple text about a past event (GSE 35).
- **Listening:** Can extract factual information from short, simple dialogues or stories about past events if spoken slowly and clearly and guided by questions or prompts (GSE 39).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about a familiar place in a basic way (GSE 35). Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41).

### Materials

- photocopiable 66

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Ask pupils to think of two or three places they like to visit, and why. Give a minute for pupils to think. Then ask them to tell a partner. Elicit some ideas. Ask the class to tell you places they remember from the last lesson and ask pupils to spell these as you write them on the board.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Ask *Where were you last summer/on your last holiday/at the weekend?* and have pupils answer. Respond to different answers and ask *How was it? What was it like? Do you think I/other pupils would like it there? Why/Why not? Do you recommend it? Why?*
- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn how to make recommendations.

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 6 **English in action** Making recommendations **6**

- 1 What places in your town are very busy? What places are very quiet?
- 2 **6.11** Watch or listen and write. Where were Kayla and Emily yesterday?   
 Kayla: at the new shopping mall, Emily: at the zoo
- 3 **6.12** Watch or listen again, read and check.

Hey, Emily, I was at the new shopping mall yesterday with my mum.

Really? What was it like?

It was very new and modern. There were a lot of shops. But it was very busy. Where were you yesterday?

I was at the zoo with my dad.

How was it?

The tickets were expensive, but the animals were amazing. You should go and see it!

Good idea!

**Say it!**

I was at the clothes shop.  
What was it like?  
It was very busy.  
How was it?  
It was/They were amazing.  
You should go and see it!

4 In pairs, talk about somewhere you visited. Use the places and adjectives in the box or your own ideas.

zoo square market café train station clothes shop  
busy exciting expensive modern amazing old quiet traditional

Activity Book, Unit 6 Lesson 6 thirty-nine 39

### 1 What places in your town are very busy? What places are very quiet? (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 39. Pupils discuss in pairs and then raise their hands to offer answers.

### 2 **6.11** Watch or listen and write. Where were Kayla and Emily yesterday? (5 minutes)

- Play the audio or video. Pupils write their answers before giving feedback. Do not confirm answers yet.

### 6.11 & 6.12

**Kayla:** Hey, Emily, I was at the new shopping mall yesterday with my mum.

**Emily:** Really? What was it like?

**Kayla:** It was very new and modern. There were a lot of shops. But it was very busy. Where were you yesterday?

**Emily:** I was at the zoo with my dad.

**Kayla:** How was it?

**Emily:** The tickets were expensive, but the animals were amazing. You should go and see it!

**Kayla:** Good idea!

# English in action

## 3 6.12 Watch or listen again, read and check. (5 minutes)

- Play the audio or video again for pupils to watch or listen and read. Confirm the answer to Activity 2.
- Draw pupils' attention to the Say it! box. Read out the sentences and have pupils repeat as a class. Explain meanings if necessary.

### Extra activity Collaborative work

- Divide the class into two groups. One group is Emily and the other group is Kayla. Play the audio and pause after each sentence. Pupils from each group repeat what they hear in unison.
- Have different pupils stand up and read the dialogue to the class.

## 4 In pairs, talk about somewhere you visited. Use the places and adjectives in the box or your own ideas. (5 minutes)

- Place pupils in pairs to complete the activity.
- Walk around the class monitoring pairs.
- **Extension** Pupils repeat the activity in different pairs.

### Diversity

#### Support

- Give pupils one minute to prepare their ideas before talking in pairs.

#### Challenge

- Have pupils perform their conversation to the class.

### Extra activity Fast finishers

- Pupils write four things they remember from this lesson.

## Activity Book

**English in action** 6

Making recommendations

Lesson 6

**1** **Read and choose the best answer.**

<p>1 Where were you yesterday?</p> <p>a Yes, I was.</p> <p>b No, there wasn't any.</p> <p><b>c</b> I was at the new café.</p>	<p>2 You should go and see it.</p> <p>a Anything else?</p> <p>b Hey, Nawal!</p> <p><b>c</b> Good idea!</p>
<p>3 How was it?</p> <p><b>a</b> It was boring.</p> <p>b I was at the park.</p> <p>c Really?</p>	<p>4 What was it like?</p> <p>a Yes, I like it very much.</p> <p><b>b</b> It was nice and quiet.</p> <p>c No, it wasn't.</p>

**2** **Complete the dialogue with sentences 1–4 in Activity 1.**

Hey Aseel, I was at the new café yesterday.

Really? What was it like?

It was beautiful and clean, but it was very busy. Where were you yesterday?

I was at the new market yesterday.

How was it?

There was a lot of noise, but the fruit was delicious. You should go and see it.

Good idea!

**3** **Circle the correct words.**

- The new shopping mall was quiet and modern old.
- There were lots of people at the shops. The shops were very quiet busy.
- The old mosque was very traditional modern.
- The film was very exciting busy. You should go and see it!
- I like the zoo, but the tickets were expensive new.

**4** **In pairs, ask and answer.**

- Where were you last Saturday? \_\_\_\_\_
- What was it like? \_\_\_\_\_
- Was it boring or exciting? \_\_\_\_\_

twenty-seven 27

## 1 Read and choose the best answer. (3 minutes)

- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

## 2 **Complete the dialogue with sentences 1–4 in Activity 1.** (4 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually.
- Check answers as a class.

## 3 **Circle the correct words.** (3 minutes)

- Pupils work individually.
- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to check answers.

## 4 **In pairs, ask and answer.** (3 minutes)

- Pupils work in pairs. Ask different pupils to report back and tell the class something their partner said.

## Finishing the lesson (2 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *What do you think a visitor to your country should do?* and elicit answers.

### Extra activity Photocopiable 66

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 66.

# Skills

## Lesson 7, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to read and understand a reading text
- **Target language:** revision of unit vocabulary and grammar





### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can extract factual information from short, simple dialogues or stories about past events if spoken slowly and clearly and guided by questions or prompts (GSE 39).
- **Reading:** Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can identify main paragraph topics in simple texts on familiar subjects, if supported by prompts or questions (GSE 41).

### Materials

- slips of paper, one for each pupil
- photocopyable 70

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)


-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); True/False response cards technique (see page 14)
-  Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
-  Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 7, part 1

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write *Istanbul then and now* on the board. Write the current year under *now*, and ask *What was the year 400 years ago?* Write the answer under *then* and ask *What do you think is different about Istanbul then and now?* Give pupils one minute to write down some ideas. Have pupils raise their hands and offer ideas. Accept all reasonable suggestions.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

-  Explain that in this lesson pupils will read a text comparing how Istanbul was in the past, and how it is today.
- Ask pupils to look at the images on page 40 and say what they see. Ask for predictions about what ideas the text will contain.

## Practice


### Class Book

Lesson 7, part 1

**Skills**

**Reading**

1 **Before you read** Look at the text. How many paragraphs are there? 4

2  Listen and read.

**Istanbul then and now**

1 400 years ago, Istanbul was very different! The city was smaller than today. The Bosphorus was very busy, with a lot of boats. There weren't any cars or car parks, but there were a lot of horses! There weren't any trains or train stations. The roads weren't very safe. There were a lot of markets, but there weren't any cinemas. Galata Bridge was the only bridge in Istanbul.

2 In 1660, there was a huge fire. After the fire, there were very few buildings left in Istanbul.

3 Today, the city is much bigger and it's very busy! If you go to Taksim Square, there are people and trams everywhere! There are a lot of shopping malls, markets and cinemas.

4 There are a lot of bridges in Istanbul now. The most famous bridge is the Bosphorus Bridge.

3 **After you read** Match the headings to the paragraphs.


a	Istanbul today	3	b	Istanbul 400 years ago	1
c	The Great Fire	2	d	Bridges today	4

40 forty


Activity Book, Unit 6  
Lesson 7, part 2

## Reading

### 1 Before you read Look at the text. How many paragraphs are there? (5 minutes)

-  Refer pupils to page 40. Pupils discuss in pairs first.

### 2 6.13 Listen and read. (15 minutes)


- Before pupils do the activity, remind them not to worry if they do not understand every word, as long as they get the gist the first time they read and listen.
- Play the audio.
-  Check comprehension using the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15). Ask *Which paragraph tells us about a famous bridge in Istanbul? (4.); Which paragraph tells us why the city was smaller after an emergency? (2.); Which paragraph is about places and transport now? (3.); Which paragraph is about places and transport then? (1).*

## 6.13



**Istanbul then and now**

- 1 400 years ago, Istanbul was very different! The city was smaller than today. The Bosphorus was very busy, with a lot of boats. There weren't any cars or car parks, but there were a lot of horses! There weren't any trains or train stations. The roads weren't very safe. There were a lot of markets, but there weren't any cinemas. Galata Bridge was the only bridge in Istanbul.
- 2 In 1660, there was a huge fire. After the fire, there were very few buildings left in Istanbul.
- 3 Today, the city is much bigger and it's very busy! If you go to Taksim Square, there are people and trams everywhere! There are a lot of shopping malls, markets and cinemas.
- 4 There are a lot of bridges in Istanbul now. The most famous bridge is the Bosphorus Bridge.

**Extra activity Critical thinking**

-  Pupils work in pairs and find all the words in the text connected to the themes of places and how to travel in a city. Remind pupils to update their vocabulary lists.
- Pupils create picture crossword clues with the words in their lists in their notebook. They swap their crosswords with others groups to complete.


**3 After you read Match the headings to the paragraphs.** (5 minutes)

-  Pupils work individually, then check answers with a partner. Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) or the TPR activity below.
-  In groups, pupils can research and write another paragraph about Istanbul now.


**Extra activity TPR**

- An alternative for answers to Activity 3: Tell pupils each wall or corner of the class represents *a*, *b*, *c* or *d*. Say *The heading for paragraph 1 is ...* Pupils move to the wall or corner to show their answers.

**Diversity****Support**

-  Elicit and write a question for each paragraph on the board from the whole class. Have pupils answer in pairs. Decide which one is the most interesting/easiest, etc.



**Challenge**

-  Ask pupils to write two or three questions with a partner. Pairs work with another pair to ask and answer their questions. Have pupils choose one question from each group to ask the class.

**Extra activity Fast finishers**

- Pupils write their ten favourite words or expressions from this lesson in their notebooks.

**Finishing the lesson** (5 minutes)

-  Put pupils in pairs. Ask them to discuss which paragraph in the text they found the most/least interesting. Encourage them to give reasons for their answers.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
-  Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to choose pairs to give you their answers and reasons.

## Lesson 7, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Using the True/False response cards technique (see page 14), say different statements about the text from the first part of the lesson, e.g. *Istanbul was bigger 400 years ago. (False.); The roads weren't safe. (True.); In 1960, there was a huge fire. (False.),* etc. Pupils correct the false statements.

### Presentation (10 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will practise what they remember about the text.
- Ask pupils to tell you what words they remember from the last lesson. Write them on the board. Put pupils in pairs and ask them to write sentences using the words on the board. Pupils share their sentences with the class.

### Activity Book

Lesson 7, part 2


**Skills**

**Reading**

**1 After you read Complete the table.**

smaller car parks bigger a lot of markets a lot of horses  
a lot of bridges no trains cinemas The Bosphorus one bridge

Istanbul	
400 years ago	Now
smaller	bigger
a lot of horses	car parks
a lot of markets	a lot of markets
no trains	a lot of bridges
The Bosphorus	cinemas
one bridge	The Bosphorus



**2 Look at the table. Find two things in common.**  
markets                      The Bosphorus

**3 Choose the correct answer.**

- Today Istanbul is smaller bigger than 400 years ago.
- The Bosphorus was very quiet busy 400 years ago.
- In the past, people used horses cars to travel around Istanbul.
- The huge fire was in 1660 1666.
- The Bosphorus Bridge Galata Bridge was the only bridge across the Bosphorus in Istanbul.





28 twenty-eight

## Reading

- 1 After you read Complete the table.** (10 minutes)
- Ask pupils to look at the picture and describe some of the things that they can see. Encourage them to use the past tense.
  - Give pupils five minutes to complete the activity individually. They compare answers with a partner.
  - Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).
- 2 Look at the table. Find two things in common.** (5 minutes)
- Pupils work individually to use the table in activity 1 to find and write two things that were the same 400 years ago and now.
  - Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
  - Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).
- 3 Choose the correct answer.** (5 minutes)
- Place pupils in pairs to complete the activity.
  - Walk around the class, monitoring pairs.
  - Place two sets of pairs together and have them compare answers. Have pupils show evidence in the text if they don't agree on the correct answer.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Pupils close their books. They work in pairs and tell each other what they remember about each of the headings from the first part of the lesson.
- Walk around the class, monitoring pairs.
- Ask pupils to think about and write the answers to these questions in their notebooks in their first language: *Which activity helped you learn best? Why? What stopped you from learning? Why?*
- Give pupils a small piece of paper each. Ask them to choose one answer. Pupils write this down.
- Pupils hand you their exit ticket anonymously at the end of the class.

### Extra activity Photocopiable 70

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 70.



# Skills

## Lesson 8, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to understand a listening task; to talk and write about their town or city in the past and now
- **Target language:** revision of vocabulary and grammar

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can identify specific information related to a familiar topic in a short, simple text (GSE 37).
- **Listening:** Can extract factual information from short, simple dialogues or stories about past events if spoken slowly and clearly and guided by questions or prompts (GSE 39).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41).
- **Writing:** Can write short descriptive texts (4–6 sentences) on familiar personal topics (e.g. family, animals, possessions), given a model (GSE 35).

### Materials

- Unit 6 flashcards (places in a local area and adjectives)
- slips of paper, enough for each group
- pupils' anonymous exit tickets from the previous lesson
- photocopyable 74

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; Two stars and a wish technique (see page 15); Think-pair-share technique (see page 15)
- Independent learning: Learning diary (see page 15); Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 8, part 1

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to think back to what helped them learn in the last lesson, and what didn't help them learn.
- Ask pupils to find their exit ticket. If they don't have them, give pupils a slip of paper.
- Have pupils write or draw *Today, I can ... to help me learn*, on one side of the slip. Pupils can use L1.
- Ask pupils to put their slips in their notebooks. Tell pupils they will reflect on them at the end of the class.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to a conversation about a trip, talk about their town or city now and in the past, and then write a description.
- Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), ask pupils to say place names and words to describe these places. Use the Unit 6 flashcards to help if necessary.

### Practice

#### Class Book

Lesson 8, part 1 6

**Listening**

1 Listen and choose.

- Last week Bayan was in ...  
A London. B Lisbon.
- Bayan's hotel was ...  
A ancient. B modern.
- In the park there was ...  
A a café. B a mosque.
- Bayan's favourite place was ...  
A the zoo. B the bridge.

**Speaking**

2 Talk about your town or city in the past and now.

- What was there 100 years ago?
- What is there now?

100 years ago, there was ... Now there is ...

**Writing**

3 Read Ibrahim's text. What do they build in his city? **boats**

**My town then and now**

Hi, my name's Ibrahim. I live in Sur. 300 years ago, there were boats from many different countries in Sur. There weren't many houses and there weren't any cars or buses!

Today, Sur is a big, modern city. There are lots of houses, cars and buses. There is also a beautiful bridge. People also build many boats in Sur.

Writing  
When you have two adjectives, use a comma between the adjectives. A big, modern city.

4 Write about your town or city in the past and now.

- Plan**

  - What's the name of your town or city?
  - What was there 100 years ago?
  - What can you see there now?

- Write**

I live in ...  
100 years ago, there were/ weren't ...  
Today, there are/aren't ...

- Check your work**

  - A paragraph for each new idea?
  - Commas between adjectives?

Activity Book, Unit 6  
Lesson 8, part 2 forty-one 41

### Listening

#### 1 6.14 Listen and choose. (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 41 and tell them to read the sentences carefully before they listen so they know what to listen for.
- Play the audio.
- Check answers as a class.

## 6.14

- Man:** I hear you were in London last week, Bayan. Tell me all about it.
- Girl:** It was great. We were in a hotel next to the Victoria train station. It was a big, modern hotel.
- Man:** Wasn't that very expensive?
- Girl:** No, it was a cheap hotel.
- Man:** Great.
- Girl:** Next to the hotel there was a beautiful park. There was even a café in the park.
- Man:** Fantastic! What was your favourite place?
- Girl:** My favourite place was the zoo! There were so many animals!

## Diversity

## Support


- Write the questions in the Challenge section below on the board for pupils to answer.

## Challenge

- Ask comprehension questions: *Did Bayan go to London alone? (No.); Did she stay with friends? (No, in a hotel.); Did she pay a lot of money for the hotel? (No, it was cheap.); Was the park far away? (No, it was next to the hotel.).*

## Speaking

## 2 Talk about your town or city in the past and now. (5 minutes)


-  Pupils work in pairs.
- When they have talked about their town or city in the past and now, ask one pupil in each pair to sit with another pupil from another pair.

## Writing

## 3 Read Ibrahim's text. What do they build in his city? (5 minutes)

- Pupils read the text and find the answer.
- Check comprehension with questions: *Does he live in Muscat? (No, he doesn't.); Were there boats from a lot of different countries 300 years ago? (Yes, there were.); Were there many cars and buses? (No, there weren't.); What is Sur like now? (It's big and modern.); What are there a lot of? (Houses, cars and buses.); What else is there? (A beautiful bridge.)*
- Have pupils read the Tip box. Ask them to circle an example of adjectives separated by a comma in the text. Explain that we use commas between two or more adjectives that are describing the same noun to avoid writing 'and'.

## Extra activity TPR

-  Using the Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14), pupils respond to your questions: *Do you know how to write a description like this? Are you ready to write this description? Do you have any information to help you? Are you going to plan your ideas first? Ask How?*

## 4 Write about your town or city in the past and now. (10 minutes)

- Plan: Go through the bullet points as a class. Pupils then work individually to answer the questions. Elicit answers and write them on the board.
- Write: Draw pupils' attention to the text. Ask them to notice how the author first describes how his town was in the past and then describes how it is now. Explain that we use a new paragraph when we write about a new idea or topic. Pupils use the sentence prompts in the box to talk about their town or city. Encourage them to use adjectives separated by commas. Write the information on the board.
- Check your work: As a class, go over each bullet point and check that the writing on the board contains all the correct elements.



## Extra activity Critical thinking

- Pupils write a list of words from the text in Lesson 7 that they could use in their writing activity.

## Extra activity Fast finishers

- Pupils find the words connected to comparing a place in the past and now in the lesson and write the words in their notebooks.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

-  Pupils take out their slips from the start of the class. They write down what they did/didn't do to help them learn using the Two stars and a wish technique (see page 15) to evaluate themselves.
-  Pupils write what they achieved in their Learning diary (see page 15): *Today I listened to ... I talked about ... and I wrote a description of ...*

# Skills

## Lesson 8, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Brainstorm words/sentence structures from the unit that pupils could use in their texts. Write the words on the board.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will write a then-and-now text about their town or city.
- Use the Think-pair-share technique (see page 15) to discuss the writing plan for the text from the Class Book in the last lesson.

### Practice

#### Activity Book

Lesson 8, part 2 6

---


**Writing**

**Writing** When you have two adjectives, use a comma between the adjectives: *It's a big, modern city.*


**1 Look at the pictures and write. Choose an adjective from Box A and then choose an adjective from Box B.**

**A** big long beautiful small


**B** orange busy ancient modern

1 


1 a beautiful, modern town

2 

2 a big, orange kite

3 

3 a long, ancient bridge

4 

4 a small, busy market

**2 Write about your town or city in the past.**

**1 Plan**

**Read and answer. Make notes.**

- What's the name of your town or city? \_\_\_\_\_
- What was there 100 years ago? \_\_\_\_\_
- What can you see there now? \_\_\_\_\_

**2 Write**

Use your notes and write.

**My town then and now**

Hi, my name's \_\_\_\_\_ . I live in \_\_\_\_\_ .

100 years ago, there \_\_\_\_\_ .

\_\_\_\_\_ .

Today, there \_\_\_\_\_ .

\_\_\_\_\_ .

**3 Check your work**

Read your text again and tick (✓).

Commas between adjectives?  Correct spelling?  Clear handwriting?

twenty-nine 29

## Writing

- Look at the pictures and write. Choose an adjective from Box A and then choose an adjective from Box B.** (5 minutes)
  - Refer pupils to Activity Book page 29. Read the information in the Tip box. Remind pupils of what they learnt about commas in the last lesson.
  - Pupils complete the activity individually. They then compare answers in pairs.
  - Check answers as a class.
- Write about your town or city in the past.** (20 minutes)
  - Give pupils a few minutes to complete their notes in order to plan their writing. Walk around monitoring pupils as they take notes and offer help and support. Refer pupils to the Writing Tip before completing the activity.
  - Pupils work individually to use their notes to write a then-and-now text. Walk around monitoring, offering help and support where necessary.
  - When they have finished, ask pupils to check their writing by ticking the boxes to show they have done each of these things.
  - Using the Two stars and a wish technique (see page 15), pupils read and check each other's work, taking into account the Writing Tip.
  - Encourage pupils to read out their completed work to their classmates.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils to tell you what they have learnt today, what they think they are good at and in what area they need a little more practice.

#### Extra activity Photocopiable 74

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 74.

# Phonics

## Lesson 9

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn a new spelling for the sound /dʒ/; to read simple words containing the target sounds; to revise previously taught tricky words; to learn the new tricky words: *was, were*; to adopt strategies to recognise and read tricky words in sentences
- **Target language:** -dge, -ge /dʒ/: *bridge, hedge, fridge, badge, stage, large, cage, page*
- **Tricky words:** *was, were*



### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can understand basic factual statements relating to pictures or simple texts (GSE 30).
- **Listening:** Can identify key information from short audio recordings, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 31).
- **Speaking:** Can say simple tongue twisters and other types of playful language (GSE 27).
- **Writing:** Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).

### Materials

- Optional teacher-made flashcards for the sound /dʒ/, with -ge and -dge spellings
- Optional teacher-made flashcards for tricky words: *was, were*


### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Peer learning: pairwork

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Review the sound /dʒ/ from Grade 1 Semester 2. It is covered as an initial sound in words such as *jug, jump* and *jam*. Draw pictures or use flashcards to elicit and revise the vocabulary items. Point to the letter *j* and ask pupils to say the sound.
- Ask pupils if they can remember any other words that contain the /dʒ/ sound. You can invite them up to draw a picture or do a mime to represent the word.
- Then write any words from the previous activity which aren't already on the board, and invite pupils to identify the letter in each word that makes the /dʒ/ sound. They can come up and circle the letter, or tell you which letter to choose.
- You can use flashcards and games to elicit more vocabulary if time allows.


### Presentation (2 minutes)

-  Tell pupils that in this lesson, they will learn a new way to spell the sound /dʒ/ and study some words which use this spelling.


## Practice

### Class Book

**Phonics** Lesson 9


1  Listen and say.

**dge**




bridge      hedge


**ge**




stage      large


2  Listen and say the tongue twister.


The bridge is large and the boat is small.  
There's a hedge on the stage and it's very tall.





3  Listen and point. Write and say.


badge    cage    fridge    page

1      badge    


3      fridge

2      cage    

4      page


4  Look and write. Listen, check and say.

1 **dge**




bridge

**he dge**




hedge

**fridge**




fridge

2 **ge**




pa     ge

**ca ge**



ca     ge

**sta ge**



sta     ge

42 forty-two Activity Book, Unit 6  
Lesson 9


### 1 6.15 Listen and say. (5 minutes)

- Look at Activity 1 on page 42 with the class. Focus on the pictures and talk about what the pupils can see. Explain that they might recognise some of these words from earlier levels or other parts of their English lessons, and check understanding. Ask pupils to focus on the letters in red, and say what is the same and what is different about them. (*They have the same sound but a different spelling – with and without the letter 'd'.*)
- Point to the trigraph *dge* and the digraph *ge* on the page and recap the sound.
- Play the audio. Help pupils to point to the correct object as they hear each word.
- Model the words, emphasising the /dʒ/ sound each time and ensure this is clear. Encourage pupils to repeat the words, then point to each picture in turn and have them say the words independently.
- Display teacher-made flashcards or the whiteboard to show the two spellings of the /dʒ/ sound again. Say the words again in a different sequence and ask pupils to point to the correct spelling each time.
- Write the gapped form of the words on the board: *bri \_ \_ \_*, *he \_ \_ \_*, *sta \_ \_*, *lar \_ \_*. Elicit the missing letters as a class to check understanding.

## Phonics

## 6.15

**dge** bridge, hedge  
**ge** stage, large


2  **6.16 Listen and say the tongue twister.**

(5 minutes)

- Write the trigraphs *dge* and the digraph *ge* on the board. Look at the picture in Activity 2 with the class and see if pupils can identify any of the items in the picture that contain these spellings.
- Explain that pupils will hear a tongue twister that relates to the picture and that they should point to the items in the picture as they listen. Play the audio.
- Play the audio again and ask the pupils to follow the words in the tongue twister as they listen.
- Play the audio a third time and ask pupils to join in with the tongue twister.
- Check understanding by using your flashcards or the whiteboard to show the two different spellings, and asking pupils to say the corresponding word from the tongue twister.
- Repeat the tongue twister as a class until pupils are confident with the language and the pronunciation.

## 6.16

The bridge is large and the boat is small.  
 There's a hedge on the stage and it's very tall.


3  **6.17 Listen and point. Write and say.**

(5 minutes)

- Explain that pupils will now learn some more words with the new *dge* and *ge* spellings for the /dʒ/ sound. Allow time for them to look at the pictures and discuss what they can see. Ask questions to check understanding.
- Focus on the wordpool and ask pupils to look at the letters and predict what sounds they will hear. They can focus on the initial letter. Explain that they will hear the words in the correct order.
- Play the audio. Tell pupils to listen and point to each picture in turn. Repeat if necessary.
- Refer pupils back to the wordpool and ask them to match the words to the pictures, then write the words in the correct place.
- Check understanding of each word using mimes or gestures to demonstrate meaning.
- If necessary, play the audio again before asking pupils to say the new words.
- Point to each picture in a random order and elicit the words again.

## 6.17

1 badge 2 cage 3 fridge 4 page

4  **6.18 Look and write. Listen, check and say.**  
(5 minutes)

- Focus on Activity 4. Point to the letter captions in turn for pupils to say, and ensure they are saying the same sound each time. Look at each of the pictures and show that there is a gapped word under each one. Explain that these are all words covered in the activities above.
- Allow time for pupils to complete the words under each picture, using the caption for support.
- Play the audio for children to listen, check and say each word.
- Check answers by pointing to each picture in random order and eliciting the word.
- Then write *ge* and *dge* on the board. Ask pupils to close their books, then elicit words for each spelling.

## 6.18

1 bridge, hedge, fridge  
 2 page, cage, stage

**Extra activity TPR**

- Write *ge*, *dge* and *j* in large letters on three pieces of paper. Give one each to three pupils and ask them to stand at the front of the class, holding their paper up in front of them.
- Draw or show images of words with each of these spellings, e.g. *stage*, *fridge*, *jug*, one at a time.
- Elicit the word for each image from the rest of the class, without showing the written form. Then ask the class to direct the correct pupil from the three at the front to hold up their paper or stand in front of the image.
- Repeat, bringing different children up to the front after a few turns.




## Activity Book


Lesson 9

**Phonics**

1 Look, listen and repeat. Match.



a



b

1 There **were** bridges.


2 There **was** a stage.

Tricky words

was were

2 Read and circle. Listen, check and say.


- 1 There **were** **was** where a picnic in the park!
- 2 There **was** want were lemonade.
- 3 There is **was** **were** sandwiches.
- 4 There are **was** **were** cupcakes.
- 5 It where **were** **was** fun!



3 Listen, write and say.


was were

cage fridge hedge large



1 What was in the fridge?

There was a large salad. There were some herbs.



2 What was in the cage?

There was a hedge. There were lots of birds!

30 thirty

- Look at Activity 1 and ask pupils to identify the items in the pictures, using the vocabulary from the Class Book lesson. Then ask pupils to read the sentences. If necessary, recap and model the tricky word *there* from earlier grades.
- Play the audio for pupils to listen and follow. Point to the highlighted word each time and model the pronunciation again for pupils to repeat.
- Ask pupils to look at the sentences and say why each highlighted word is used. Confirm that *a stage* is singular, and *bridges* is plural.
- Ask pupils to look and match the sentences to the pictures.
- Play the audio again, then put pupils in pairs to practise each sentence. If time allows, ask one or two pupils to read aloud.

## 6.19

There was a stage.  
There were bridges.

2 **6.20 Read and circle. Listen, check and say.** (5 minutes)

- Focus on Activity 2. Allow time for pupils to look at the picture the girl is holding and discuss what they can see.
- Then focus on the sentences and the multiple-choice options. Explain that pupils should look at the sentences and the picture, then choose the correct word to complete each sentence. They can apply their learning from the grammar lessons here too.
- Allow time for pupils to read and circle. Then play the audio for pupils to check their answers. Remind them to listen carefully for the distinction between *were* and *where*.
- Play the audio again, pausing after each sentence for pupils to repeat.
- Finally, let pupils practise saying the sentences in pairs. They can take turns to speak, and point to the relevant parts of the picture where appropriate.

## 6.20

- 1 There was a picnic in the park!
- 2 There was lemonade.
- 3 There were sandwiches.
- 4 There were cupcakes.
- 5 It was fun!

3 **6.21 Listen, write and say.** (4 minutes)

- Look at Activity 3 with the class. First, look at the pictures. Discuss with pupils what they can see and what they think is happening.
- Then look at the words in the boxes. Explain that they can reuse *was* and *were* in the box on the left where they are needed. The words in the box on the right will each be used only once.

1 **6.19 Look, listen and repeat. Match.** (3 minutes)

- Start by revising the tricky word that pupils covered in Unit 5 (*can't*). You can make a flashcard to elicit the form orally as a class. Then write sentences containing *can't* and invite volunteers to read them out.
- Remind pupils that tricky words, which appear frequently in texts, can't be decoded in the same way as other words because not all the letters within these words follow the rules of phonics. Remind them that they should try to memorise tricky words where possible and use phonetic cues, if appropriate, to help them.
- Look at page 30 with the class and focus on the words at the top of the page. Explain that pupils have met these words in their grammar lessons this unit, and now they will focus on the sound and spelling of these tricky words. Read out *was* and ask pupils if the letter 'a' makes a sound they would expect to hear (no – it has /o/ rather than /a/).
- Then read out *were*. Elicit or write other known words with this ending: *here*, *there*. Ask pupils if they have the same sound as *were* (*No, they don't.*) Remind pupils that they need to memorise the sound and spelling of these words.

# Phonics

- Play the audio all the way through for pupils to listen. Then play it again, pausing as necessary for pupils to complete the sentences.
- Check answers by eliciting the correct sentences from the class, then play the audio all the way through for pupils to listen again and point to the labelled items in the pictures.
- Ask pupils to take turns reading out the complete text for each picture.

## 6.21

**1 Mum:** What was in the fridge?

**Boy:** There was a large salad. There were some herbs.

**2 Dad:** What was in the cage?

**Girl:** There was a hedge. There were lots of birds!

## Finishing the lesson (3 minutes)

- Ask pupils to draw and label a further picture, using the topic and language from the unit with *was* or *were*, e.g. *There were cakes in the café*. Invite pupils to show their pictures and read out their sentences.

# Review

## Lesson 10, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to review unit language
- **Target language:** unit vocabulary

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Speaking:** Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41).
- **Reading:** Can make basic inferences from simple information in a short text (GSE 37).
- **Writing:** Can write about past activities using simple language, given a model (GSE 40).

### Materials

- Unit 6 flashcards (places in a local area and adjectives)
- Unit 6 poster: Our town
- photocopiable 78

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 10, part 1

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask *What makes a town or city good to live in?* Accept all reasonable answers. Have pupils explain the reasons for their answers. Ask *Why is that important?*

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will do revision of the unit vocabulary and then play a game.
- Revise unit vocabulary with the Unit 6 flashcards or poster. Then have pupils mime or act out walking around and reacting to places and things in a city to elicit the adjectives. Write them on the board as you say them: *noisy, busy, cheap, expensive, quiet, safe, ancient, modern.*
- Ask pupils to work in pairs to use as many of the adjectives as possible to talk about their town or city now and in the past.

### Extra activity TPR

- Divide the class into two teams. Hide the Unit 6 flashcards (adjectives) around the room. Call out an adjective and have two pupils, one from each team, search for its opposite. The pupils who finds the card gets a point. The team with the most points wins.

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 10, part 1 Review 6

1 Talk about the picture of the town.

market square bridge hotel bus stop café clothes shop  
mosque train station zoo car park

a market, a hotel, a café, a clothes shop, a mosque, a bus stop  
1 What was there 50 years ago? (50 years ago, there was a ...)

2 What wasn't there?  
a square, a train station, a zoo, a car park, a bridge

2 Write the correct adjective.

1 There are a lot of cars on this street at night. I can't sleep because it's so noisy.

2 This hotel is very expensive. It costs a lot of money to stay here.

3 You must be quiet! The baby's sleeping!

4 Come down! It isn't safe to climb to the top of that tree!

**Challenge**

Challenge your classmates and play the game!

Work in two teams. Look back through the unit to find the answers to these questions.

1 Find some mountains. (1 point) **p.32**

2 What wasn't there in Fatma and Sami's town 150 years ago? (1 point) **a zoo and a shopping mall**

3 What has big, strong walls? (1 point) **Jibreen Castle**

Now think of three more questions to ask the other team.

Activity Book, Unit 6  
Lesson 10, part 2 forty-three 43

### 1 Talk about the picture of the town. (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 43. Ask pupils what the picture represents, now or the past? Elicit ideas. Tell them it is from 50 years ago. Elicit the year.
- Walk around the room monitoring pairs as they ask and answer questions.

### Diversity

#### Support

- Ask pupils to raise their hands and say the things and places they can see in the photos before they complete the activity in pairs.

#### Challenge

- Before pupils complete the activity, tell them to think of the language they have learnt in this unit and to make sure they use it.

# Review

## 2 Write the correct adjective. (10 minutes)

- Pupils work individually and then check answers in pairs.
- Walk around the room monitoring groups.
- Elicit answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### Extra activity Critical thinking

- Pairs make a puzzle with words to describe places in a town or city in their notebooks. They can choose what style of puzzle they want to make, e.g. a wordsearch, a wordsnake or a crossword puzzle. They then swap with another pair and solve each other's puzzles.

## Challenge (10 minutes)

### Challenge your classmates and play the game!

- Divide the class into two teams. For large classes, divide the class into groups of eight and divide each group into two teams of four. Monitor the game.
- Give pupils two minutes to think of three extra questions.

### Extra activity Fast finishers

- Pupils think of more questions for the Challenge game.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Play a game of *Picture dictation* (see page 19) with the Unit 6 flashcards (places in a local area). Use the adjectives from the unit when describing the places for pupils to draw.

## Lesson 10, part 2

### Starting the lesson (2 minutes)

- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to ask pupils where they were at the weekend. Ask them follow-up questions using the adjectives from the unit, e.g. *Was the place ancient or modern?*

## Practice

### Activity Book

#### 1 Look, read and circle the correct word.

(5 minutes)

- Pupils do the activity individually. Tell pupils to read the whole text through first before trying to answer.
- They then compare answers with a partner.

#### 2 Where were you last weekend or last month? Draw and write. (5 minutes)


- Pupils complete the activity individually.

- Pupils can write about last year/summer if they didn't visit anywhere last weekend/month. Pupils should also change the last writing prompt to make it true for them.
- Have pupils ask and answer any questions about their partner's text when they have finished.

Lesson 10, part 2 Review 6

**1 Look, read and circle the correct word.**

@Ali  
My name's Basim. Look at this picture! I (1) was wasn't in a new (2) city café with my family last weekend. It (3) were was a quiet place. There (4) were weren't a lot of noisy roads. There was a (5) modern high market. The food was very cheap. We were at the (6) zoo shopping mall, too. It was very interesting. There were a lot of big, dangerous animals. The (7) food building wasn't exciting: there were only cheese sandwiches, but they were (8) difficult delicious! I love visiting new cities!



**2 Where were you last weekend or last month? Draw and write.**

My name's \_\_\_\_\_  
Look at this picture! I was in \_\_\_\_\_  
It was \_\_\_\_\_  
There were \_\_\_\_\_  
There weren't \_\_\_\_\_  
The food \_\_\_\_\_  
I love visiting new cities!

**Self-assessment**

My work in Unit 6 is  OK  good  excellent.  
My favourite lesson is the one about \_\_\_\_\_  
Now I can \_\_\_\_\_  
I need to work more on \_\_\_\_\_

thirty-one 31

## Self-assessment (2 minutes)

- Pupils do the activity individually. Ask some pupils to share their answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

## Extra practice

### Activity Book

#### 1 Match the words and pictures. (3 minutes)

- Ask pupils to name the places in the pictures.
- Pupils working individually and then check answers in pairs.

#### 2 Complete the missing letters. (2 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity in pairs. Have different pupils read out their answers.

#### 3 Choose the correct answer and write. (3 minutes)

- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to check pupils know what they have to do.
- Check answers as a class.

**4** Imagine a town or city in the past. Write sentences. (5 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually.
- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to choose pupils to read aloud their sentences.

**Extra practice** Lesson 10, part 2

**1 Match the words and pictures.**

1 fruit      a park  
2 clothes      b station  
3 shopping      c market  
4 train      d stop  
5 car      e shop  
6 bus      f mall

**2 Complete the missing letters.**

1 z o o      2 café      3 hotel  
4 mosque      5 bridge      6 square

**3 Choose the correct answer and write.**

1 Muneera and Laila were at the bookshop yesterday.  
2 My parents wasn't weren't at the café last Saturday.  
3 Was Were the car on the bridge?  
4 The children was were at the square.  
5 Were Was you and Sami at the hotel? No, we weren't wasn't.

**4 Imagine a town or city in the past. Write sentences.**

noisy cheap safe modern expensive street restaurant mosque building  
quiet ancient busy café bridge shop

1 There was \_\_\_\_\_  
2 There wasn't \_\_\_\_\_  
3 There were \_\_\_\_\_  
4 There weren't \_\_\_\_\_

32 thirty-two

Lesson 10, part 2 **Vocabulary and Grammar reference** 6

**Vocabulary**

**1 Translate the words into your language. Add more words to the list.**

Places in town	Adjectives
bridge _____	ancient _____
bus stop _____	busy _____
café _____	cheap _____
car park _____	expensive _____
clothes shop _____	modern _____
hotel _____	noisy _____
market _____	quiet _____
shopping mall _____	safe _____
square _____	
mosque _____	
train station _____	
zoo _____	

**Grammar**

**2 Read and complete.**

Was wasn't ago you wasn't There weren't yesterday were Where

Was/Were – Affirmative and negative			
1 He/She/It	was/ <u>wasn't</u>	at the zoo	yesterday.
We/You/They	were/weren't		a week <u>ago</u> last Saturday.
3 <u>There</u>	was/wasn't	an ancient bridge.	
	were/ <u>weren't</u>	a lot of busy markets.	

Was/Were – Interrogative and short answers			
5 <u>Where</u>	was	I he/she/it	6 <u>yesterday</u> ?
	were	we/you/they	
	7 <u>Was</u>	I he/she/it	at the café?
	Were	we/ <u>you</u> /they	
	Yes, I/he/she/it was. / Yes, we/you/they <u>were</u> .		
	No, I/he/she/it <u>wasn't</u> . / No, we/you/they weren't.		

Go to Dictation on page 73. thirty-three 33

**Dictation (5 minutes)**

- Have pupils turn to page 73 in their Activity Book.
- Play the audio for pupils to individually listen and write the sentences.
- Check the answers as a class.

**6.22**

- 1 She was at the zoo a week ago.
- 2 Where were you last night?
- 3 Many years ago, there weren't any noisy roads.

**Vocabulary and Grammar reference**

**Activity Book**

**Vocabulary**

**1 Translate the words into your language. Add more words to the list. (3 minutes)**

- Pupils can work in pairs to complete the activity. Ask for feedback and write pupils' ideas on the board.

**Grammar**

**2 Read and complete. (3 minutes)**

- Go through each section as a class and write the answers on the board for pupils to copy.
- Explain anything pupils might not have understood.

**Finishing the lesson (2 minutes)**

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to write on the board *In Unit 6, I can ... I am good at ... I am not very good at ...* Pupils copy the sentences into their notebooks and complete them with their own evaluation.

**Extra activity Photocopiable 78**

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 78.



# Get ready for ...

## Lesson 11

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to practise for the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Parts 2 and 6, and Listening Part 2
- **Target language:** unit vocabulary and grammar

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can understand basic factual statements relating to pictures or simple texts (GSE 30).
- **Listening:** Can understand the main information in short, simple dialogues about familiar activities, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 35).
- **Writing:** Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Think-pair-share technique (see page 15)
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Play the song from Lesson 4 (track 6.8). Divide pupils into groups. They sing the song in their groups.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will practise for the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Exam in the Class Book and the A1 Movers Listening Exam in the Activity Book.

### Practice

#### Class Book

- 1 **Look, read and write.** (5 minutes)
  - Tell pupils that they will practise the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 6 exam.
  - Have pupils look carefully at the picture. Say false sentences for pupils to correct, e.g. *There's a firefighter in the street. There's a boy riding a horse.*
  - Pupils complete the sentences and answer the questions individually. Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).
  - Pupils work in pairs. They write two or three sentences about the picture in their notebooks. Suggest pupils could write sentences about what the other people in the café are eating, doing, wearing, etc.


- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils if they found the activity difficult and if so, why.

Lesson 11

### Get ready for...

**A1 Movers** Reading and Writing Part 6

1 **Look, read and write.**



**Complete the sentences.**

- 1 There are two people at the bus stop.
- 2 The boy is eating an ice cream.

**Answer the questions.**


- 1 What is the man in the café eating?  
He's eating lunch/a salad.
- 2 What is next to the café?  
a clothes shop

Now write two sentences about the picture.

**A1 Movers** Reading and Writing Part 2

2 **Read the text and choose the best answer.**

**Exam**  
Read all the options carefully before you choose.



- 1 **Rahaf:** Where were you yesterday afternoon?  
**Hamed:**  A I'm going to the café.  
 B I was at the zoo.  
 C I'm at the market.
- 2 **Rahaf:** Were you with your friends?  
**Hamed:**  A Yes, I am.  
 B No, he wasn't.  
 C Yes, I was.
- 3 **Rahaf:** What was it like?  
**Hamed:**  A It was busy.  
 B They were exciting.  
 C I was quiet.
- 4 **Rahaf:** Were there lots of animals?  
**Hamed:**  A Yes, it was.  
 B No, there aren't.  
 C Yes, there were!

44 forty-four
Activity Book Unit 6 Lesson 11

### Diversity

#### Support

- Give pupils some vocabulary before they complete the sentences by writing *stop, ice cream, sandwich, pasta, pizza* and *clothes shop* on the board.

- 2 **Read the text and choose the best answer.** (10 minutes)

- Tell pupils that this is the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 2 exam.
- Have pupils look at the scene. Ask *Where are they? What animals can you see? How many people are there?*
- Pupils read the dialogues and choose the best answer. Refer pupils to the Exam tip and read it aloud. Tell pupils to read all options before choosing an answer.
- Have pupils read the dialogues aloud in pairs to check answers. Discuss any problems and elicit corrections for mistakes pupils might have made.

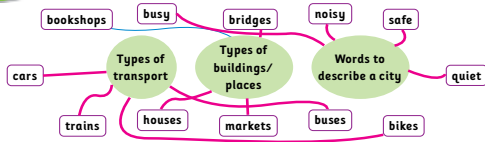
## Activity Book

## Get ready for...

Lesson 11

## A1 Movers Listening Part 2

Think! 1 Match the words with the headings.



Do! 2 Listen and write.



Our city

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1 Homework is about:                      | Our city in the <u>past</u> |
| 2 Number of different types of buildings: | <u>three</u>                |
| 3 The most important building:            | <u>the bridge</u>           |
| 4 Name of café:                           | <u>The Fork</u>             |
| 5 Transport in the city:                  | <u>horses</u>               |
| 6 The streets weren't:                    | <u>safe</u>                 |

34 thirty-four

1 **Think!** Match the words with the headings. (3 minutes)

- Tell pupils that this is the A1 Movers Listening Part 2 exam. Give pupils time to complete the activity individually.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

2 **Do!** 6.23 Listen and write. (10 minutes)

- Play the audio and have pupils complete the activity individually.
- Use the Think-pair-share technique (see page 15). Pupils ask and answer about anything they are unsure about.

## 6.23

- 1 **Woman:** What's your homework today, Younis?  
**Boy:** I'm writing a project about our city.  
**Woman:** That sounds really interesting.  
**Boy:** Yes, it's about our city in the past.  
**Woman:** Wow! That sounds even more exciting.
- 2 **Woman:** OK, so how many different types of buildings were there in our city in the past?  
**Boy:** That's difficult.  
**Woman:** Well, think about it. Were there any cinemas?

**Boy:** Oh, no, Mum, there weren't any cinemas or shopping malls! But there were a lot of houses, small markets... and there was also a bridge.

**Woman:** Right. So that makes three different types, doesn't it?

**Boy:** Houses, markets and a bridge ... Yes, that's right! Three.

3 **Woman:** Right... and what was the most important building of all?

**Boy:** Erm... the bridge, I think.

**Woman:** Really? What about the markets?

**Boy:** No, Mum. There were a lot of markets, but there was only one bridge to get to the markets.

**Woman:** Good point!

4 **Woman:** And, was there a café in the town?

**Boy:** Yes, the Fork.

**Woman:** Sorry?

**Boy:** The Fork: F-O-R-K.

**Woman:** OK.

5 **Woman:** And what about transport. Were there any cars?

**Boy:** Cars? No, Mum, there weren't any cars or buses or trains.

**Woman:** So what was there?

**Boy:** There were a lot of horses.

**Woman:** Horses?

**Boy:** Yes, horses were very important animals then.

**Woman:** How interesting!

6 **Woman:** So, what were the streets like? Were they safe?

**Boy:** Well, I don't think so. They weren't very safe because there were a lot of people and a lot of horses.

**Woman:** Yes, that's not very safe.

**Boy:** I think they were very noisy.

**Woman:** Yes, you're right!

**Finishing the lesson** (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask how successful pupils' learning has been so far.

**Shared reading Unit 6**

- Focus a lesson on shared reading with the class. Follow procedures as set out in the Teacher's Book Introduction (see page 17).

**Unit 6 practice**

- Pupils now complete the Unit 6 practice. Give pupils support where necessary and focus time on areas where pupils commonly needed extra help. Praise pupils for their hard work.

# Optional lesson

## Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to revise unit language with fun tasks
- **Target language:** revision of unit language





## Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can identify specific information related to a familiar topic in a short, simple text (GSE 37). Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can identify main paragraph topics in simple texts on familiar subjects, if supported by prompts or questions (GSE 41).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41). Can talk about familiar places in a basic way (GSE 35). Can ask a range of questions in pair games to find the answer (GSE 36).

## Materials

- Unit 6 flashcards (places in an area and adjectives)
- spinner
- one counter per pupil

## Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Monitoring pupils' learning: Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
-  Peer learning: pairwork; Expert envoy technique (see page 15)
-  Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Play *Team quiz* (see page 22) with the Unit 6 flashcards (places in an area and adjectives) to revise the unit vocabulary.

## Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson, pupils will play a game. Ask pupils to look at the game in the Class Book. Ask pupils what they think they have to do.

## Practice




### Class Book

Fun corner 6

1 Play and say.

Activity Book, Unit 6  
Fun corner forty-five 45

### 1 Play and say. (15 minutes)

-  Explain the aim of the game. Tell pupils that the characters have to get to the place where they said there were the day before, e.g. *Lottie was at a café yesterday morning*. Therefore, she has to get to the café in order to win the game. The same applies to the other two characters.
- Pupils take it in turns to spin the spinner and move their counters. They can choose any route they want, but they must follow the instructions on the squares they land on, e.g. *The square was quiet. Sit down. Miss a turn* or *The train was cheap. Go forward 2 spaces*. The first player to reach their destination wins.
-  Use the Expert envoy technique (see page 15) to have stronger pupils work with weaker pupils to play the game.
-  Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to check pupils know what they have to do.

## Activity Book

**Fun corner** 6

**1 Read and answer the questions. Solve the code.**

Z	Y	X	W	V	U	T	S	R	Q	P	O	N	M	L	K	J	I	H	G	F	E	D	C	B	A
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z

**1** Where were you yesterday morning, Sami?  
I was at the YFH HGLK **bus stop**.

**2** Where were you yesterday morning, Fatma?  
I was at the XOLG5VH HSLK **clothes shop**.

**3** Where were you yesterday morning, Lottie?  
I was at the NZIPVG **market**.

**2 Use the code and answer the questions.**

Lottie Fatma Sami

**1** There were HSRIGH and WIVHHVH. Who is he/she? **Fatma**  
**shirts dresses**

**2** There was some UIFRG. Who is he/she? **Lottie**  
**fruit**

**3** There were NLWVIM buses. Who is he/she? **Sami**  
**modern**

**3 Answer the question. Use the code. Show your partner!**

Where were you yesterday morning?  
I was at the \_\_\_\_\_.

thirty-five 35

**3 Answer the question. Use the code. Show your partner!** (5 minutes)

- Pupils use the code to say where they were in the morning (they can make it up).
- They swap books with a partner and work out where each other were.

**Finishing the lesson** (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask what pupils have learnt today. Ask *Did you enjoy the Fun corner? Which activity did you like the most?*

**1 Read and answer the questions. Solve the code.** (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the code. Ask *What do the letters on the bottom row show? (the alphabet).* Explain that the letters on the top row also show the alphabet but that it's back to front. Tell them that they have to use the letters on the top row to find the actual letters in the coded words.
- Do the first coded words together as a class. Ask them to look at the coded first letter (Y) and find the corresponding letter below (B). Continue with the rest of the coded letters. Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to check pupils know what to do.
- Pupils complete the rest individually. Monitor and help if necessary.
- Ask volunteers to read aloud the answers.

**2 Use the code and answer the questions.** (5 minutes)

- Pupils use the code to work out the items and write the correct name of the person based on the answers from Activity 1.
- Use the Expert envoy technique (see page 15) to help pupils who haven't understood what they have to do.
- They check answers in pairs and then check answers as a class.

# Graded readers 1 and 2

## Lessons 1–2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to review the phonics and language from Unit 6
- **Target language:** *zoo, kitchen, busy, tall, crocodiles, noisy; Can we go and see it? Yes, we can! I can't see the baby camel. Mum, can you see the baby camel? No, I can't.*
- **Phonics:** *dge, ge*
- **Tricky words:** *was, were*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can recognise simple phrases related to familiar topics in slow, clear speech (GSE 33). Can understand most of the concrete details in informal conversations on familiar everyday topics, if the speakers talk slowly and clearly (GSE 37).
- **Speaking:** Can answer simple questions about familiar topics, if delivered slowly and clearly (GSE 29). Can act out a short dialogue or role play, given prompts (GSE 38).
- **Reading:** Can follow simple dialogues in short illustrated stories, if they can follow while listening (GSE 26). Can understand a simple written dialogue on a familiar topic (GSE 32).



### Learning outcomes

- **Listening:** Listen and identify familiar words and set phrases in short, simple texts on familiar topics; Identify core vocabulary.
- **Speaking:** Ask and answer questions on familiar topics; Participate in short, simple interactions on familiar topics; Act out part of a picture story, short dialogue or role play.
- **Reading:** Read frequently encountered words with ease; Answer factual questions about reading material; Read and identify familiar words, set phrases and key information in short, simple factual texts on familiar topics from the headings and illustrations.
- **Cognitive skills:** Ask and answer simple questions; Participate in activities that involve taking on the role of familiar people; Participate in drama-based activities which allow for personal interpretation.

### Materials

- Unit 6 flashcards (places in an area and adjectives)
- Unit 6 poster: Our town
- the Big Book

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)


-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Peer-learning: pairwork; groupwork

## Lesson 1, option A

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Explain that the story is about a visit to a zoo to see a baby camel. Brainstorm baby animals that pupils like. Ask them to give reasons for their answers.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Look at page 46 with the class. Ask pupils what they can see. Read the story title *The Baby Camel* and ask pupils what they think the story will be about.
-  Explain that pupils will now participate in a shared reading activity where you will all enjoy a story together using The Big Book. Explain that some of the words from Unit 6 will feature in the story. Ensure that they are sitting comfortably, and in a position where they can see the text and the pictures easily.

### Before reading (5 minutes)

- Prepare pupils for the tricky words they will encounter in the story by writing them on the board to practise together (*was, were*).
- Write *I was at the zoo yesterday. Where were you yesterday?* Encourage pupils to do some speed reading while you point to each word. Remind them to use phonetic cues and visual memory strategies.



## During reading (15 minutes)

## Class Book

## Graded reader 1

## The Baby Camel

In Sara's town, there's a new zoo. Last Friday, Sara was in the kitchen with her mum. The zoo was on the TV.

Look, Mum. There's a baby camel at the zoo. Can we go and see it?

Yes, we can! Let's go to the zoo tomorrow.



46 forty-six

## Graded reader 1 6

On Saturday, Sara and her mum were at the busy zoo. There was a tall giraffe, but there wasn't a baby camel!

Mum, I can't see the baby camel. Where is it?

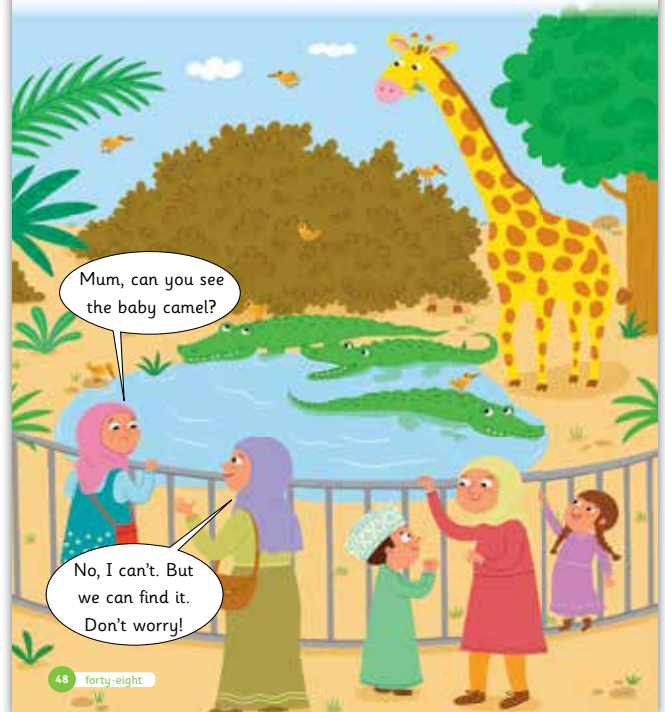
Don't worry, Sara. We can find it.



forty-seven 47

## Graded reader 1

There were three large crocodiles and there were lots of noisy birds at the zoo. But there wasn't a baby camel!



48 forty-eight

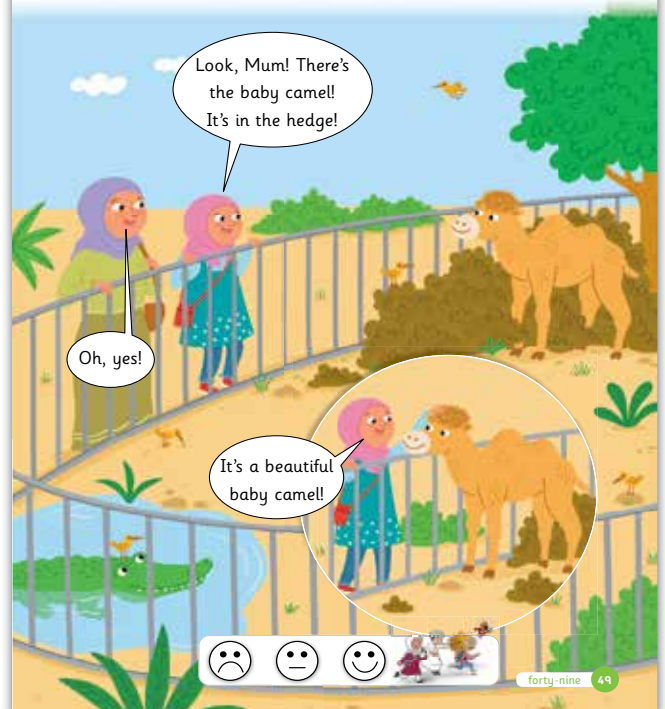
## Graded reader 1 6

Sara was sad. But then there was a small brown nose in the hedge. There were two brown eyes and two brown ears in the hedge, too.

Look, Mum! There's the baby camel! It's in the hedge!

Oh, yes!

It's a beautiful baby camel!



forty-nine 49

## Graded readers 1 and 2

- Begin reading the story to the pupils. Look at the pupils while you read and keep a good pace. Give time for the pupils to enjoy the story, pausing to allow them to predict what might happen next. Read expressively, changing your voice for different characters, and use facial expressions and different volume levels when appropriate. Ensure that pupils look at the pictures to help them understand the story.
- Pause at the end of each page and take time to ask questions to check understanding and then encourage pupils to make predictions about what will happen next. After reading page 46 to the pupils, ask *Is the zoo new or old? (New.); Where was Sara on Friday? (She was in the kitchen.); What was on TV? (The zoo.); When can they go to the zoo? (Tomorrow.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 47: *Was the zoo busy? (Yes.); What was the tall animal? (A giraffe.); Was there a baby camel? (No.); Does Sara's mum think they can find the baby camel? (Yes.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 48: *What animals were there? (Three large crocodiles and lots of noisy birds.); Was there a baby camel? (No.).*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 49: *Was Sara sad? (Yes.) What was in the hedge? (A small brown nose). Do they find the camel? (Yes.); Where was it? (In the hedge.); What does Sara say about the camel? (It's a beautiful baby camel.).*

### Post reading (5 minutes)


- Choose sentences with *was/were* from the story and write them on the board. Ask pupils if they can identify any tricky words in the sentences and circle these words (*was/were*).
- Encourage pupils to read whole sentences with support and reinforce the meaning of any sentences you focus on using picture cues, actions and explanations.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write the phonic spellings on the board: *dge, ge*.
- Ask pupils to find words in the story that contain these spellings (*hedge, large*). Segment each word and write them on the board below each heading and point to them for pupils to read. See if pupils can add other words to each list.

## Lesson 2, option A



### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

-  Ask pupils to work in pairs. They tell each other what they can remember about the story *The Baby Camel*.
- Ask pairs to share what they can remember with the class.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Say sentences from the story, but include some mistakes. If the sentence is correct, pupils do not do anything. If there is a mistake, they clap. Encourage them to correct the mistakes.
- Say sentences from the speech bubbles. Pupils say who said it.

### Act the story (25 minutes)

-  First, ask pupils to work in pairs. They take it in turns to read a sentence from the story. Go around and offer help as they do this.
-  Now divide the class into groups of three (Mum, Sara, narrator) Explain that they are going to act out the story. Ask pupils to choose a part to play, or you can allocate roles. Explain that the narrator will read the story as the others act, and will help the actors with prompts if they forget or do not know what to say.
- Give pupils time to practise their roles.
- When they are ready, groups take turns to perform the story to the class.
- Encourage the class to clap at the end.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils if they liked the story. Give them a few minutes to evaluate it and encourage them to think about what they liked and didn't like, what they thought of the characters, whether they were able to read the words and whether they understood the plot.
- Ask pupils which character or animal was their favourite and encourage them to give reasons for their answers.

## Lesson 1, option B

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Review the phonics from Unit 6. Write *dge* and *ge* on the board. Ask pupils to say any words they can remember with these sounds.
- Use the Unit 6 flashcards or poster to revise the vocabulary for places in town and adjectives. If you're using the poster, choose a pupil to come and tap on the picture of the word you say.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Look at page 50 with the class. Read the story title *The Old Food Market* and ask pupils what they think the story will be about. Ask them if they have ever been to a food market.
- Explain that pupils will now participate in a shared reading activity where you will all enjoy a story together. Explain that some of the words from Unit 6 will feature in the story. Ensure that they are sitting comfortably and in a position where they can see the text and the pictures easily.

### Before reading (5 minutes)

- Prepare pupils for the tricky words they will encounter in the story by writing them on the board to practise together (*was*, *were*). You can also present the words *expensive*, *busy*, *near*, *delicious*, *coconut*.

## During reading (15 minutes)

### Class Book

Graded reader: 2

## The Old Food Market

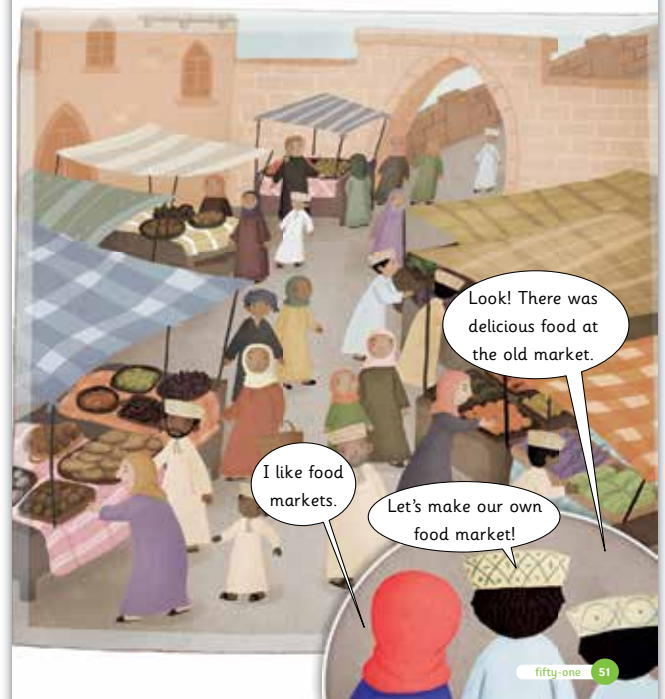
Talal, Hazim and Marwa live in a big city. Today, there are modern hotels, busy shopping malls and expensive clothes shops. But the city was different many years ago.



Graded reader: 2

6

Many years ago, there was a big food market in the city. The market was near a beautiful bridge.





## Graded readers 1 and 2

Graded reader 2

There were lots of sweets and cakes at the old food market. There was bread and fruit there, too.

We've got a large coconut and some eggs. We can make sweets and cakes for our market.

We can make bread, too. And there is some fruit in the fridge.

52 fifty-two

Graded reader 2 6

The children work hard all afternoon. Mum helps them. Then Dad gets home from work.

Welcome to our food market, Dad! How can we help you?

Can I have a burger, please?

Oh, Dad! It's an old food market, not a modern one!

fifty-three 53

- Begin reading the story to the pupils. Look at the pupils while you read and keep a good pace. Give time for the pupils to enjoy the story, pausing to allow them to predict what might happen next. Read expressively, changing your voice for different characters, and use facial expressions and different volume levels when appropriate. Ensure that pupils look at the pictures to help them understand the story.
- Pause at the end of each page and take time to ask questions to check understanding and then encourage pupils to make predictions about what will happen next. After reading page 50 to the pupils, ask *Where do the family live (In a big city.); What is there in the city today? (Modern hotels, shopping malls and expensive clothes shops.) What is the photo of? (It's an old photo of the city.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 51: *Where was the old market? (Near a beautiful bridge.); Was the food good? (Yes, it was delicious.); What does Hazim say? (Let's make our own food market!)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 52: *What kind of food did they have at the old market? (Sweets, cakes, bread, fruit); What food have they got now? (A coconut and some eggs.); What can they make for their market? (Sweets, cakes and bread.); What is there in the fridge? (Fruit.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 53: *Do the children work hard? (Yes.); Who helps them? (Mum.); Who arrives from work? (Dad.). What does Dad ask for? (A burger.); Why don't they give him one? (It's an old food market, not a modern one.)*

## Post reading (5 minutes)

- Choose sentences from the story with *was/were* and write them on the board. Ask pupils if they can identify the tricky words in the sentences and circle them (*was/were*).
- Encourage pupils to read whole sentences with support and reinforce the meaning of any sentences you focus on using picture cues, actions and explanations.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write the phonic spelling on the board: *dge, ge*.
- Ask pupils to find words in the story that contain these spellings (*bridge, fridge, large*). Segment each word and write them on the board below each heading and point to them for pupils to read. See if pupils can add other words to each list.

## Lesson 2, option B

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

---

- 🗨️ Ask pupils to work in pairs. They tell each other what they can remember about the story *The Old Food Market*.
- Ask pairs to share what they can remember with the class.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

---

- Say sentences from the story, but include some mistakes. If the sentence is correct, pupils do not do anything. If there is a mistake, they clap. Encourage them to correct the mistakes.
- Say sentences from the speech bubbles. Pupils say who said it, Talal, Hazim, Marwa or Mum.

### Act the story (25 minutes)

---

- 🗨️ First, ask pupils to work in pairs. They take it in turns to read a sentence from the story. Go around and offer help as they do this.
- 🗨️ Now divide the class into groups of six (Talal, Hazim, Marwa, Mum, Dad, narrator). Explain that they are going to act out the story. Ask pupils to choose a part to play, or you can allocate roles. Explain that the narrator will read the story as the others act, and will help the actors with prompts if they forget or do not know what to say.
- Give pupils time to practise their roles.
- When they are ready, groups take turns to perform the story to the class. Encourage them to do the actions as they speak.
- Encourage the class to clap at the end.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

---

- Ask pupils if they liked the story. Give them a few minutes to evaluate it and encourage them to think about what they liked and didn't like, what they thought of the characters, whether they were able to read the words and whether they had a good understanding of the plot.
- Ask pupils if they often shop at markets and which is their favourite.



# Learning club 3

## CLIL: Social Studies

### Lesson 1, parts 1 and 2

#### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn how to describe people and places using adjectives; to make an adjectives chain
- **Target language:** *beautiful, crowded, famous, interesting, peaceful, popular; The market is crowded. The clothes in the window are popular. The street isn't peaceful. It's crowded.*

#### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can identify everyday objects, people or animals in their immediate surroundings or in pictures from short, basic descriptions (e.g. colour, size), if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 19).
- **Reading:** Can recognise single, familiar everyday words if supported by pictures (GSE 21). Can understand basic factual statements relating to pictures or simple texts (GSE 30). Can identify people in their immediate surroundings or in pictures from a short, simple description of their physical appearance and clothes (GSE 30).
- **Speaking:** Can name everyday objects, animals or people around them or in pictures using single words (GSE 18). Can describe someone's personality in a basic way, if guided by prompts (GSE 39).

#### Materials

- Learning club 3 flashcards (*beautiful, crowded, famous, interesting, peaceful, popular*)
- Learning club 3 poster: Adjectives
- stopwatch
- six strips of paper per pair
- a soft ball
- magazines/images from the internet

#### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Expert envoy technique (see page 15)
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 1, part 1

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Tell pupils they are going to sing the song from page 37 (track 6.8). Divide the class into groups. Play the karaoke version for pupils to sing (track 6.9).

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson, pupils will learn adjectives to describe people and places.

### Practice

#### Class Book

Lesson 1, part 1

**Social Studies**  
**Describing places**

**Think** 1 What adjectives can you say?

**Learn** 2 Listen and say.

1	2	3	4	5	6
beautiful	crowded	famous	popular	peaceful	interesting

**Check** 3 Look at the picture. Read and write *True* or *False*.



1 The market is crowded.	<u>True</u>
2 The street is peaceful.	<u>False</u>
3 The woman is famous.	<u>True</u>
4 The girl's book is interesting.	<u>False</u>
5 The clothes in the window are popular.	<u>True</u>
6 The flowers are beautiful.	<u>True</u>

4 In pairs, describe the picture in Activity 3.



The street isn't peaceful. It's crowded.

54 fifty-four

### 1 Think What adjectives can you say? (3 minutes)

- Set a stopwatch to one minute and have pupils say as many adjectives as possible. Go around the class and count as they say them and write the adjectives on the board.
- Ask pupils which adjective can't be used to describe people (*crowded*).


## 2 Learn LC3.1 Listen and say. (5 minutes)

- Place the Learning club 3 flashcards or poster on the board. Point to each picture and say the word. Pupils repeat after you.
-  Point to an item and use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to have pupils say and spell the word.
- Ask pupils to look at the pictures and describe them.
- Play the audio, pausing after each word for pupils to repeat. Play the audio again and ask pupils to point to the corresponding picture in the Class Book.
- **Extension**  Place pupils in pairs. Give each pair six strips of paper to write the new vocabulary. Together, they look at page 54. One pupil points to a picture (or they can describe it) for the other to place the corresponding strip on it.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.

### LC3.1

1 beautiful 2 crowded 3 famous 4 popular  
5 peaceful 6 interesting

## 3 Check Look at the picture. Read and write *True* or *False*. (10 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the picture in Activity 3. Ask pupils questions about the picture: *How many people can you see? What places/things/animals are there? Are there any trees? etc.*
-  Pupils read the sentences in pairs and write *True* or *False*. Check answers as a class by having pairs read out the sentence and the answer.
- **Extension** Encourage pupils to tell you the correct sentence if the answer is false.

### Diversity


#### Support

- Review the adjectives again before doing Activity 3. Pupils write down the adjectives in their notebooks. They can illustrate them to show the meaning.

#### Challenge

- Pupils choose three adjectives and draw themselves doing something to reflect these adjectives.


## 4 In pairs, describe the picture in Activity 3. (10 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the speech bubble. Have a volunteer read it aloud.
-  In pairs, pupils practise the dialogue, changing the information in the speech bubble.
- **Extension** Write adjectives on the board and have pupils say the opposites, e.g. *interesting* – *boring*, *beautiful* – *ugly*, and so on. Have pupils relate these adjectives to the picture.

### Extra activity TPR

- Have pupils stand in a circle. Tell pupils you are going to say an adjective and throw a soft ball to someone. That pupil has to say a sentence with that adjective. Then they say another adjective and throw the ball to someone else. Continue until all pupils have had a turn.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

-  Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils what they have learnt today.

# Learning club 3

## Lesson 1, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Play *Remembering the order* (see page 19) with the Learning club 3 flashcards.
- Write the adjectives on the board. Ask pupils to say the opposite of each adjective.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson, pupils will make an adjectives chain.
- Put pupils in pairs and have them write sentences about their city or town using the adjectives on the board, e.g. *The market is crowded*, and so on.

### Practice

#### Class Book

Lesson 1, part 2

LC3

Let's practise! 1 Look and say.



There's a famous man.

It's picture A.

Show what you know

Find pictures of things for each adjective.

beautiful crowded famous interesting peaceful popular



Make an adjectives chain.

- 1 Choose four of the pictures of adjectives.
- 2 Cut out four triangles.
- 3 Stick the pictures on the triangles.
- 4 Join the triangles with wool.
- 5 Describe your chain to another group.

It's a crowded beach.

fifty-five 55

### 1 Let's practise! Look and say. (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the two pictures. Ask them if they are the same or different.
- Place pupils in groups and have them find as many differences as they can between the two pictures, e.g. *In Picture A, the boys are surfing, but in Picture B, they're swimming. In Picture A, the man is holding a big fish, but in Picture B, he's holding a small fish. In Picture A, there's a football player on the billboard, but in Picture B, there's a famous woman on the billboard, etc.*
- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to call on individual pupils to tell you the differences.
- Place pupils in pairs. Explain that they are going to take turns to say a sentence about one of the pictures for their partner to say which picture it is. Use the Expert envoy technique (see page 15) when choosing pairs.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.

### Show what you know Find pictures of things for each adjective. (10 minutes)

- Put pupils into small groups and hand out the magazines. Tell them to look for pictures that represent the adjectives and cut them out (alternatively, they can look for pictures on the internet or draw them). Encourage them to find as many as possible for each of the adjectives.

### Make an adjectives chain. (10 minutes)

- In the same groups, pupils choose the four best pictures for four different adjectives and make an adjectives chain.
- Monitor pupils, helping as necessary.
- When pupils have completed describing their chains to other groups or pairs, place their chains on display in the classroom.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils what they think about what they learnt today.
- Have pupils say the best thing about today's lesson. Encourage them to use *The best thing today was ...*

## Language booster 3

### Lesson 2, parts 1 and 2

#### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to consolidate and extend vocabulary and grammar from Units 5–6
- **Target language:** Comparatives and superlatives: long adjectives; *I think camel racing is more beautiful to watch than chess, but dhow racing is the most beautiful.*





#### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can understand the main information in short, simple dialogues about familiar activities, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 35).
- **Speaking:** Can describe basic differences between common objects or animals (e.g. colour, size, position), given a model (GSE 34). Can form the superlative of longer regular adjectives with 'most' (GSE 36). Can use all forms of comparatives and superlatives of adjectives (GSE 40).
- **Reading:** Can understand basic phrases in short, simple texts (GSE 24). Can understand the correct sequence of events in a simple story or dialogue (GSE 37).
- **Writing:** Can make comparisons with 'more' + longer adjectives (GSE 36).

#### Materials

- Learning club 3 flashcards (*beautiful, crowded, famous, interesting, peaceful, popular*)
- Learning club 3 poster: Adjectives

#### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)


-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
-  Peer learning: pairwork; Expert envoy technique (see page 15)
-  Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 2, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

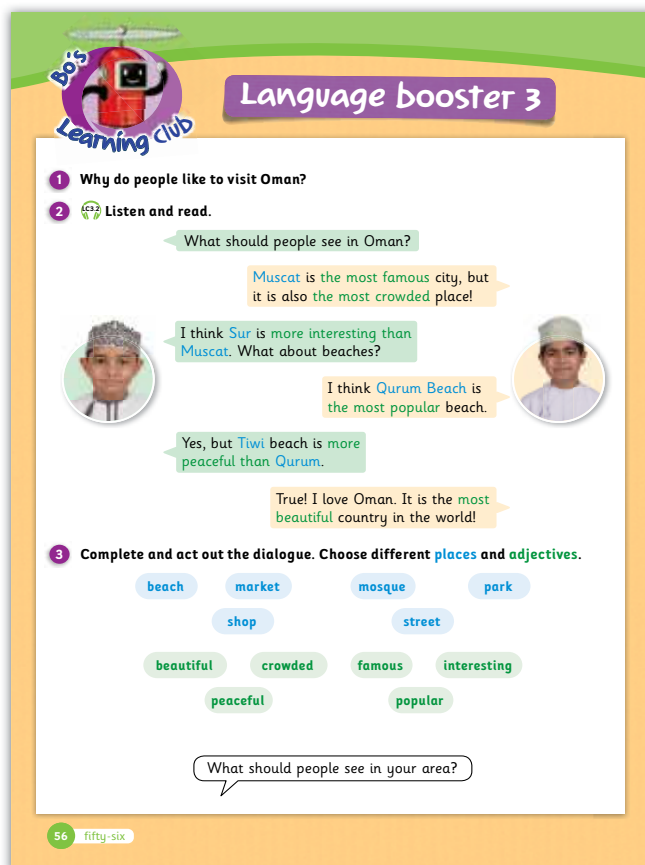
- Review the adjectives from the previous lesson. Show pupils one of the Learning club 3 flashcards or point to the poster and have pupils say and spell the adjective.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

-  Explain that in this lesson, pupils will use long adjectives to compare two or more things.


## Practice

### Class Book



**Language booster 3**

**1** Why do people like to visit Oman?

**2**  Listen and read.

What should people see in Oman?

Muscat is the most famous city, but it is also the most crowded place!

I think Sur is more interesting than Muscat. What about beaches?

I think Qurum Beach is the most popular beach.

Yes, but Tiwi beach is more peaceful than Qurum.

True! I love Oman. It is the most beautiful country in the world!


**3** Complete and act out the dialogue. Choose different places and adjectives.

beach market mosque park  
shop street  
beautiful crowded famous interesting  
peaceful popular


What should people see in your area?

56 fifty-six

### 1 Why do people like to visit Oman? (3 minutes)

- On the board, write *Which are the most popular places to visit in Oman? Why?*
-  Place pupils in pairs and have them discuss the question for a minute or two.
- Have a quick class discussion on why people like to visit Oman.

### 2 LC3.2 Listen and read. (5 minutes)

-  Put pupils in pairs, ask them to look at page 56 of the Class Book and find the adjectives in the dialogue. Ask them to call them out and write them on the board. Ask *Are they short or long adjectives? (Long.)*
- Explain that when we want to make long adjectives into comparatives and superlatives we add *more* and *the most* before them. Ask pupils to underline examples of *more* and *the most* on the page.
- Play the audio all the way through and have pupils follow in their books. Play the audio again and ask them to stand up when they hear a comparative or superlative with a long adjective.
- **Extension** Write two sentences on the board: *A city is crowdeder than a town. A city is more crowded than a town.* Ask pupils to say which of the sentences is correct. Ask them to give reasons ('crowded' is a long adjective).



# Learning club 3

## LC3.2

- Boy 1:** What should people see in Oman?  
**Boy 2:** Muscat is the most famous city, but it is also the most crowded place!  
**Boy 1:** I think Sur is more interesting than Muscat. What about beaches?  
**Boy 2:** I think Qurum Beach is the most popular beach.  
**Boy 1:** Yes, but Tiwi beach is more peaceful than Qurum.  
**Boy 2:** True! I love Oman. It is the most beautiful country in the world!

- 3 Complete and act out the dialogue. Choose different places and adjectives.** (10 minutes)
- Ask pupils to look at the words in blue and green.
  - Explain to pupils that they are going to act out their own dialogues using the places in blue and the comparatives and superlative forms of the long adjectives in green. They should use the dialogue in Activity 2 as a model.
  - Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to make sure pupils have understood the activity.
  - Pupils work in pairs to write their dialogues. Monitor them, helping where necessary.
  - Invite pairs to act out their dialogues in front of the class.

- 4 Think about these sports in Oman. Number them 1 (the most), 2 or 3 (the least). Then ask and answer.** (10 minutes)
- Ask pupils to name the sports in the pictures. Then go through the sports in the table and check that pupils know what each one is.
  - Ask pupils to work individually to number the sports from most to least interesting in each column.
  - Read aloud the speech bubbles.
  - Place pupils in pairs and have them use the examples in the speech bubbles to have a similar conversation about the sports based on their own opinions. Use the Expert envoy technique (see page 15) when pairing pupils.
  - Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to make sure pupils know what they have to do.
  - Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.

### Show what you know (5 minutes)

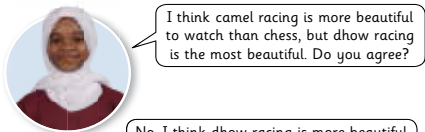
- Pupils work individually to answer the questions.
- Ask them to share their answers in pairs.

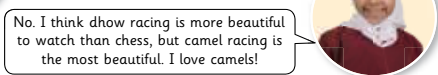
Lesson 2, part 1




LC3

**4 Think about these sports in Oman. Number them 1 (the most), 2 or 3 (the least). Then ask and answer.**

beautiful	exciting	interesting	popular
dhow racing <input type="checkbox"/>	canoeing <input type="checkbox"/>	running <input type="checkbox"/>	tennis <input type="checkbox"/>
camel racing <input type="checkbox"/>	handball <input type="checkbox"/>	basketball <input type="checkbox"/>	football <input type="checkbox"/>
chess <input type="checkbox"/>	fishing <input type="checkbox"/>	swimming <input type="checkbox"/>	windsurfing <input type="checkbox"/>





**Show what you know** Well done!

Can you use long adjectives?

Can you compare two things?

Can you compare more than two things?

Activity Book, Language booster  
Lesson 2, part 2 fifty-seven 57

### Finishing the lesson (2 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils what they think about what they learnt today.

## Lesson 2, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Show pupils the Learning club 3 flashcards, one by one. Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to choose pupils to say the comparative and superlative form of the long adjective on the flashcard.

### Practice

#### Activity Book

- 1 Find and circle the words.** (10 minutes)
- Ask pupils to look at the pictures and describe what's happening in each one.
  - Pupils find and circle the adjectives individually. Check answers as a class.
- 2 Look, read and circle.** (5 minutes)
- Ask pupils to look at the first sentence. Read aloud and ask pupils to say the answer.
  - Ask pupils to complete the activity individually and then check answers in pairs.
  - Ask pupils to read out the correct sentences to check answers.



**Bo's Learning Club**

## Language booster 3

**1 Find and circle the words.**



**2 Look, read and circle.**



1 It's **beautiful** crowded.

2 The market is **crowded** peaceful.

3 The food is peaceful **popular**.

4 The film is **interesting** beautiful.

**3 Complete the sentences with words from Activity 1.**

- I like the mountains. They are **beautiful**.
- The shops are very **crowded** today.
- I know that woman! She is **famous**.
- This book is very **interesting**.
- I go to the park because it is **peaceful**.
- We like this restaurant. It is very **popular**.

36 thirty-six


Lesson 2, part 2

**LC**

**4 Order the words to make sentences.**

- Oman / beautiful / in / country / is / the world! / the most  
**Oman is the most beautiful country in the world!**
- crowded / Muscat / in Oman. / the most / city / is  
**Muscat is the most crowded city in Oman.**
- than Qurum. / more peaceful / Tiwi beach / is  
**Tiwi beach is more peaceful than Qurum.**
- more interesting / Sur / is / than Muscat. / I think  
**I think Sur is more interesting than Muscat.**

**5 Answer the questions.**



- What is the most crowded place you go to?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What is the most interesting place you know?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What is the most peaceful place you know?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What is the most beautiful place you know?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**6 Write and draw.**

In my town, people should  
see \_\_\_\_\_  
It is \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

thirty-seven 37

**3 Complete the sentences with words from Activity 1. (5 minutes)**

- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to make sure pupils know what to do.
- Ask a pupil to read the first sentence aloud and say the answer. Pupils do the rest of the activity individually.
- Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), have pupils read out the completed sentences and check answers as a class.

**4 Order the words to make sentences. (5 minutes)**

- Ask pupils to say how we make comparatives and superlatives with long adjectives.
- Order the first sentence as a class.
- Ask pupils to order the rest of the sentences individually.
- Check answers by having pupils read aloud the sentences.

**5 Answer the questions. (5 minutes)**

- Ask pupils to name the places in the pictures.
- Pupils can answer the questions using the places in the pictures or they can choose a different place.
- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to make sure pupils know what to do.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.

**6 Write and draw. (5 minutes)**

- Explain to pupils what they have to do. Encourage them to use comparatives and superlatives with long adjectives when completing the sentences.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Pupils draw the place they wrote about.
- When pupils have completed the activity, ask them to share their work with the class.

**Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)**

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to have a class discussion on how pupils feel about their overall learning. Are they happy with their learning? What do they think they are very good at? What do they think they can improve?



# The history of Oman

## Unit objectives

To talk about historical finds

## Language

<b>Vocabulary</b>	<b>Historical finds:</b> <i>clay, coins, jar, jewellery, khanjar, necklace, ring, silver, stone, sword, wall, well</i> <b>Verbs:</b> <i>arrive, live, need, start, stop, use, visit, work</i>
<b>Grammar</b>	the Past simple and <i>wh-</i> questions forms with regular verbs
<b>Functions</b>	Giving advice: <i>You should work carefully. You shouldn't run across the road.</i>
<b>Phonics</b>	<b>wr:</b> <i>write, wrist</i> ; <b>mb:</b> <i>thumb, climb</i> <b>Tricky word:</b> <i>little</i>

## Learning outcomes

<b>Listening</b>	Demonstrate an awareness of intonation patterns when listening; Listen and respond to peers and adults; Listen and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics; Listen and identify familiar words, set phrases and specific information in short, simple texts on familiar topics; Listen to join in with songs, chants, jingles, rhymes, tongue twisters and simple dialogues; Respond verbally and non-verbally to short, basic, spoken and aural instructions; Respond to factual and literal questions; Identify core vocabulary; Respond to referential questions based on aural texts; Identify key and specific information in short, simple conversations/dialogues on familiar topics; Demonstrate specific information in short, simple conversations/dialogues
<b>Speaking</b>	Accurately reproduce modelled language; Articulate words and sentences using correct stress, rhythm and intonation; Use basic language structures when speaking; Express ideas using a range of familiar words, set phrases and expressions; Retell simple stories, personal experiences and events using a range of familiar words, set phrases and expressions; Ask and answer questions on familiar topics like daily activities, habits, times and events; Participate in short, simple interactions on familiar topics; Articulate sounds and isolated word forms and connected speech using correct pronunciation; Recite songs, rhymes, chants and tongue twisters individually and chorally; Sing a basic song, rhyme and chant from memory; Act out part of a picture story, short dialogue or role play
<b>Reading</b>	Decode unfamiliar words by using phonemic awareness and blending strategies when reading; Read frequently encountered words with ease; Recognize the effect of punctuation when reading; Read and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics; Read and identify familiar words, set phrases and key information in short, simple factual texts on familiar topics from the headings and illustrations; Answer factual questions about reading material; Extract factual details and specific information in short texts; Make basic inferences from simple information in short texts
<b>Writing</b>	Write about past activities using simple language, given a model; Write short, simple descriptive texts about familiar places, given a model; Arrange scrambled words into sentences; Complete a phrase or sentence by supplying the missing word; Write answers to questions based on reading material; Write simple sentences describing pictures, drawings, or activities, etc., using words from a list; Construct sentences and questions using capitalization, question marks; Write clearly formed letters and words; Use phonological awareness and blending strategies to write new words; Construct sentences and questions using correct spacing, capitalization, question marks, apostrophe/simple contractions and full stops based on a model; Write high frequency words correctly; Write legibly and neatly letters in script; Copy words, phrases and sentences accurately; Maintain appropriate spacing between letters in a word and between words; Spell frequently used words correctly; Write basic, single clause sentences given a model

<b>Cognitive skills</b>	Find uses for created objects or contents (e.g. in a play, story or game); Understand the steps needed to complete the activity; Say if they feel happy with what they have done; Recognize when a task has been completed; Say if a task has been completed well; Try to help solve a problem in the group; Explore different materials and decide what to use (projects); Say whether they like a story, song, or game, and give reasons for their choice/preference; Draw basic pictures to represent vocabulary and familiar concepts; Participate in drama based activities which allow for personal interpretation; Participate in activities that involve taking the role of familiar people; Listen and respond physically to songs, rhymes, chants and jingles; Use own ideas for doing creative activities like colouring, drawing and building to represent vocabulary and familiar concepts; Stay engaged and focused on short tasks, does not get distracted; Match objects, people, letters, pronunciation and words; Guess words from illustrations in storybooks; Recognize the differences between a story and a fact; Understand and carry out basic instructions for class/school; Take personal responsibility for one's own contribution to a group task; Make eye contact with group members; Use gesture and posture inclusively (e.g. sit in a circle, look at other children, wave to other children, point to where they could set); Engage with others to make sense of things around them; Observe rules of games when playing with other children; Take turns in shared activities; Share space and objects; Listen carefully, attend to and take account of what others say
-------------------------	---

## Key competences

- Linguistic competence:** use language as an instrument for communication (L. 1–11)  
**Mathematical, science and technological competences:** order words and pictures to complete a task (L. 2, 4 and 5)  
**Social and civic competences:** learn to be creative (L. 1, L. 2 and 5)  
**Digital competence:** use Class Book and Activity Book eBook (L. 1–11)  
**Cultural awareness and expression:** discuss the importance of historical sites and museums (L. 5)  
**Learning to learn:** reflect on what has been learnt and self-evaluate progress (L. 1–11); use previous knowledge (L. 1); follow instructions (L. 1–11); personalisation of language learnt (L. 3 and 5)  
**Initiative and entrepreneurship:** choose topic for the project (L. 5)

## Future skills

<b>Criticalthinking</b>	Predicting (L.2); Problem solving (L. 2); Logical thinking (L. 1, 2 and 5); Defining and describing (L. 1, 2, 4 and 5); Finding information (L. 1–3, 6, 7 and 8); Planning (L. 8); Reflecting on learning (L. 1–11); Suggesting reasons for the popularity of museums (L. 8)
<b>Creativity</b>	Design a khanjar, a necklace or a sword (L. 1); Design a coin (L. 2); Make a leaflet of historic places (L. 5)
<b>Communication</b>	Describing pictures (L. 3, 4 and 10); Asking and answering questions about the past (L. 4); Talking about a visit to a museum (L. 5 and 6); Functional dialogue (L. 6); Challenge game (L. 10)
<b>Collaboration</b>	Project groupwork (L. 5); Acting out (L. 2)

## Evaluation

- Assessment for Learning: throughout the unit (see detailed notes in the lesson plans)
- Self-assessment: Class Book p. 69; Activity Book p. 47
- Unit 7 Extra practice: Activity Book p. 48
- Unit 7 Photocopiable Resources (optional): Vocabulary 1 and 2, Grammar 1 and 2, Communication game, Song, Reading differentiation, Listening differentiation, Culture video, English in Action, CLIL, Self-assessment
- Unit 7 Practice

## External tests

<b>Class Book</b> A1 Movers Speaking Part 3 and Part 4	<b>Activity Book</b> A1 Movers Listening Part 3
---	--

# Vocabulary

## Lesson 1, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn and use words about historical finds
- **Target language:** *clay, coins, jar, jewellery, khanjar, necklace, ring, silver, stone, sword, wall, well*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Speaking:** Can ask a range of questions in guessing games to find the answer (GSE 36).
- **Writing:** Can write about past activities using simple language, given a model (GSE 40).

### Materials

- Unit 7 flashcards (*clay, coins, jar, jewellery, khanjar, necklace, ring, silver, stone, sword, wall, well*)
- Unit 7 poster: Historical finds
- two fly swats
- stopwatch
- coloured pencils
- photocopiable 43

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique (see page 14)
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Learning diary (see page 15); Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 1, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Write *The history of Oman* on the board. Use the Key question technique (see page 14) to ask *What do you know about Omani history? What would you like to know?* Write these on the board and tell pupils that during this unit they can find out answers. Make a note of the questions for subsequent lessons.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to talk about Oman in the past.

## Practice

### Class Book

**7 The history of Oman**

1 What do you know about Oman in the past?

How many school subjects can you find? **Social Science (girl at the entrance), Art (bag on the bench)**

What can you buy in the market at the museum? **halwa, dates, baskets, traditional clothes**

What doesn't belong in the picture? **The banana that the girl is using to dig.**

58 fifty-eight

### 1 What do you know about Oman in the past? (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 58. Tell pupils to look at the picture and find the words they know. In pairs, pupils tell each other the words they know.
- Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), elicit responses.
- Place pupils in the same pairs. With the stopwatch, explain that they have one minute to answer the questions together.
- Check answers as a class.
- **Extension** Have pupils look at page 58. Have them describe the picture in pairs, telling each other where the people are and what they are doing, and naming any objects and clothes they know.



Lesson 1, part 1 **Vocabulary** 7

2 Listen, point and repeat.

1 wall 2 khanjar 3 sword 4 jewellery 5 ring 6 necklace

7 coins 8 jar 9 well 10 stone 11 silver 12 clay

3 Look for the words from Activity 2 in the picture on page 58. Write the missing word. well

4 Sort and write the words from Activity 2. What other words can you think of? Add them to the table.

Things you wear	Materials	Things you've got at home
khanjar	stone	wall
sword	silver	jar
ring	clay	coins
necklace		well
jewellery		

5 In pairs, play a guessing game.

It's made of ... You wear it on ... You put ... It's ...

It's made of stone. It's high.

A wall?

Yes!

Activity Book, Unit 7  
Lesson 1, part 2 fifty-nine 59

2 **7.1 Listen, point and repeat.** (10 minutes)

- Place the Unit 7 flashcards or poster on the board. Point to each picture and say the word. Pupils repeat after you.
- Refer pupils to page 59. Ask pupils which of the objects they already know.
- Play the audio for the pupils to listen. Then play it again, pausing after each word for pupils to point and repeat.
- Pupils look at the pictures and practise the new words. Ask questions and have pupils raise their hands to respond, e.g. *Where can we get water from? (A well.); What is the wall made from? (Stone.); What items of jewellery are there? (Ring and necklace.); What can we keep things in or put water in? (Jars.); Which two things come from the ground? (Clay and silver.); Which items are dangerous? (Khanjars and swords.); What can you buy things with? (Coins.); What do we make jars with? (Clay.).*
- Have pupils say a word to their partner and their partner points to the correct picture. Then they swap.

**7.1**

1 wall 2 khanjar 3 sword 4 jewellery 5 ring  
6 necklace 7 coins 8 jar 9 well 10 stone  
11 silver 12 clay

3 **Look for the words from Activity 2 in the picture on page 58. Write the missing word.** (5 minutes)

- Give pupils one minute to work in pairs to find on page 58 the words about the historical finds. Elicit feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

4 **Sort and write the words from Activity 2. What other words can you think of? Add them to the table.** (5 minutes)

- Check understanding. Elicit an example for each column. Pupils categorise the words, writing them in the correct columns.
- Have three pupils come to the board. Assign each a column. Seated pupils spell out the words for the pupils at the board to write.

**Diversity**

**Support**

- Write the columns on the board and guide pupils by eliciting an example or two for each column. Assign pairs or small groups for the pupils to complete the task.

**Challenge**

- Have pupils work alone first, then check in pairs, adding any more words they can think of to the columns.

**Extra activity Creativity**

- In pairs, pupils choose and design a khanjar, a necklace, a sword or coins in their notebooks. They can design ancient or modern ones. They label their pictures.

5 **In pairs, play a guessing game.** (5 minutes)

- Assign pairs. Have two pupils demonstrate the activity by reading the speech bubbles.
- Draw pupils' attention to the word box and ask for possible endings for each. Write these on the board as further examples.

**Extra activity TPR**

- Assign a historical find to a pair or group of three pupils. All pupils stand up and mime finding, using or putting on the items for other pupils to guess.

**Extra activity Fast finishers**

- Pupils write their sentences in their Learning diaries (see page 15).

**Finishing the lesson** (5 minutes)

- In pairs and with books closed, pupils write down the historical find words in one minute.
- Ask *How many words did you remember? Did you spell them correctly?*



# Vocabulary

## Lesson 1, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Play *Word swat* (see page 21) with the Unit 7 flashcards (historical finds).

### Practice

#### Activity Book

Lesson 1, part 2

## 7 The history of Oman

### Vocabulary

1 Look at the Class Book page 58 and answer.

- 1 What have the two men next to the door got in their hands?  
They've got khanjars.
- 2 What's in the jar in the Discovery Zone? coins
- 3 What are Fatma and Lottie doing? They're looking/pointing at the men next to the door.

2 Complete the crossword. What's the secret word?

clay coins khanjar ring silver stone sword

1	k	h	a	n	j	a	r
2	s	i	l	v	e	r	
3	s	w	o	r	d		
4	s	t	o	n	e		
5	c	o	i	n	s		
6	r	i	n	g			
7	c	l	a	y			

3 Read and write a sentence with the words and your own ideas.

- 1 necklace silver This necklace is made of silver. It's beautiful.
- 2 wall stone The wall is made of stone.
- 3 well stone The well is made of stone.
- 4 coins silver The coins are made of silver.
- 5 jars clay The jars are made of clay.

**I'm learning**

It's good to learn new words by making sentences.

38 thirty-eight

### 3 Read and write a sentence with the words and your own ideas. (10 minutes)

- Pupils work individually, then compare and check spelling and word order in pairs.
- Check pupils sentences using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).
- Read the *I'm learning* box. Put pupils into small groups. Have them write more sentences with the unit vocabulary to help them learn the words and practise spelling.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *How many historical find words do you remember?*

#### Extra activity Photocopiable 43

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 43.

### 1 Look at the Class Book page 58 and answer. (10 minutes)

- Give pupils two minutes to complete the activity individually.
- Ask pupils to check their answers in pairs and then check answers as a class.

### 2 Complete the crossword. What's the secret word? (10 minutes)

- Ask pupils to name the objects in the pictures.
- Pupils work individually to complete the crossword. Ask them what the secret word is.
- Pupils practise spelling the objects in pairs.

# Story

## Lesson 2, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to listen to/watch, read and act out a story about a historical find
- **Target language:** revision of historic finds vocabulary; *hills, ground, irrigation, careful*





### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can follow simple dialogues in short illustrated stories, if they can listen while reading (GSE 26). Can infer unstated information in simple stories or descriptive texts, if guided by questions and prompts (GSE 53). Can identify specific information in a simple story if guided by questions (GSE 35).
- **Speaking:** Can act out parts of a picture story using simple actions and words (GSE 30).

### Materials


- Unit 7 flashcards (historical finds)
- Unit 7 poster: Historical finds
- photocopiable 51

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)


-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
-  Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
-  Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 2, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

-  Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), ask pupils to say one historical find word each from the last lesson. Use the Unit 7 flashcards or poster to help if necessary.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

-  Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to watch a story.

## Practice

### Class Book

**Story**

**1** Before you read Can you find two materials in the story? *stone and clay*

**2** Watch or listen and read.

**The discovery**

**1** I liked the Discovery Zone! Just imagine, people lived and worked here many years ago. There were stone houses then. People used stone from the hills to build their houses.

And they used clay from the ground to make jars!

Wow! We learned a lot today, didn't we?

**2** I'm hungry.

Me, too. Let's eat.

**3** Lottie, what are you and Bo doing?

Bo can fly and look at things. I can see what he sees!

Wow!

**4** Look, there's a falaj for irrigation, a well ... and that's a stone wall ...

**5** I think they're the walls of a building!

Hey, what's that?


Let's go and see!

60 sixty

### 1 Before you read Can you find two materials in the story? (2 minutes)

- Refer pupils to pages 60 and 61.
- Ask them to look carefully and find the two materials. Ask which pictures they found them in.

### 2 Watch or listen and read. (5 minutes)

- Give pupils a minute to look at the pictures. Play the audio or the animation.
- Check comprehension. Ask *Did the kids like the Discovery Zone? (Yes, they did.); Where did people get the stone to build the houses? (From the hills.); What did they use clay for? (To make jars.); What are Lottie and Bo doing? (Discovering places around the museum.); How? (With Bo's video camera and Lottie's mobile/tablet.); What is a 'falaj' for? (Irrigation.); What does Lottie discover? (A piece of silver.); Why do the kids go to the museum?; (To tell Mr Hazim about the discovery.); What are the coins made from? (Silver.); Are they old? (Yes, they are.).*
-  Pupils work in groups to find out more about Omani life in the past. They can investigate the questions they had at the beginning of Lesson 1. They can make a poster about what they discover.

# Story

## 7.2

### The discovery

- 1 Sami:** I liked the Discovery Zone! Just imagine, people lived and worked here many years ago. There were stone houses then. People used stone from the hills to build their houses.
- Lottie:** And they used clay from the ground to make jars!
- Fatma:** Wow! We learned a lot today, didn't we?
- 2 Sami:** I'm hungry.
- Fatma:** Me, too. Let's eat.
- 3 Sami:** Lottie, what are you and Bo doing?
- Lottie:** Bo can fly and look at things. I can see what he sees!
- Fatma:** Wow!
- 4 Fatma:** Look, there's a falaj for irrigation, a well ... and that's a stone wall ...
- Lottie:** Hey, what's that?
- 5 Lottie:** I think they're the walls of a building!
- Sami:** Let's go and see!
- 6 Narrator:** *A few minutes later ...*
- Sami:** People lived here a long time ago. Maybe it's an ancient building!
- 7 Lottie:** Look! People used silver to make jewellery. This is a piece of silver! Is it a ring?
- Sami:** No, it isn't! It comes from a jar.
- 8 Sami:** Look! It's a jar of coins! Stop, Bo! We must be careful!
- Fatma:** We must tell Mr Hazim at the museum!
- 9 Mr Hazim:** Are there coins? What are they like?
- Fatma:** They're silver. They have writing on them.
- 10 Mr Hazim:** I think these silver coins are very old!
- Bo:** Wow!

### Diversity

#### Support

- Pre-teach words that pupils might have problems with, e.g. *hills, ground, irrigation, careful, must, etc.*

#### Challenge

- Before pupils open their books, tell them the title of the story. Pupils predict what might happen, using the information they have from the picture in Lesson 1.

Lesson 2, part 1

7

**3** Which coin is it? Go to page 106 to find out. **ancient silver coin (top left)** CLIL

**4** After you read Read the sentences and circle **True** or **False**. Then say why.

1 The children are at school.	True	False
2 Fatma is hungry. Sami is hungry.	True	False
3 They think they see the walls of a building.	True	False
4 Lottie finds a piece of stone.	True	False
5 Bo finds a sword.	True	False
6 Sami talks to Mr Hazim.	True	False

*They think they see the walls of a building, they are walls, but they don't know for sure.*

*It's a piece of silver.*

*Bo finds a part of a jar.*

*Fatma talks to Mr Hazim.*

**5** Act out the story.

**6** Design your own coin. What writing and picture does it have on it?

Activity Book, Unit 7  
Lesson 2, part 2 **61** sixty-one

Number 1. False. They aren't at school, they're at the ... museum.

- 3** Which coin is it? Go to page 106 to find out. (5 minutes)
- Explain to pupils that they have to look for clues in the story to know the answer. Pupils work individually to complete the activity.
  - Pupils discuss in pairs. If they find it difficult to know the answer, draw their attention to the coins in frame 10 which should match one of the coins on page 106.
  - Using the Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14), ask *Did you find the answer?*
- 4** After you read Read the sentences and circle **True** or **False**. Then say why. (5 minutes)
- Assign pairs. Ask pupils to compare answers. Tell pupils they must agree by looking back carefully over the story so they can say which story frame and text has the evidence.
  - Ask for answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).
- 5** Act out the story. (10 minutes)
- Divide pupils into groups of five. Allocate a role to each pupil (Sami, Lottie, Fatma, Bo, Mr Hazim).
  - Pupils act out the story in groups.
  - Extension** Internet search key words: *Oman in the past kids*

### 6 ✨ Design your own coin. What writing and picture does it have on it? (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to work individually to complete the task in their notebooks.
- Then place pupils in small groups. Have pupils present their designs to each other. They should describe and answer questions about the design decisions.

#### Extra activity Collaborative work

- Pupils make a poster with drawings like traffic signs to indicate things it is important to be always/sometimes careful with, and think of other activities where it is good to be freer, and not so careful, e.g. with art, drawing and painting.

#### Extra activity Fast finishers

- Pupils write *True* and *False* sentences about the story in their notebooks. Ask pupils to read them out for the class. Pupils use the Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14) to indicate if the sentences are true or false. Elicit corrections for the false ones.

### Finishing the lesson (3 minutes)

- Ask pupils to say what their favourite scene from the story was. Encourage them to give reasons.
- Ask pupils what they would do if they made an important discovery.

## Lesson 2, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Place pupils in pairs and have them say what the story in this unit was about (historical finds and why it's important to be careful with them).
- Ask them why it's important to be careful with historical finds.

### Practice

#### Activity Book

#### 1 After you read Look, read and order. (5 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually and then check answers in pairs.

#### 2 Answers the questions. (10 minutes)

- Pupils work individually to complete the activity.
- Have them swap books with a partner. They check each other's work. Encourage them to look for spelling and punctuation errors.
- Check answers as a class by having pupils read aloud their completed answers.

#### Extra activity Fast finishers

- Pupils who finish first can write their answers on the board. Use these to confirm answers. Allow any other possible answers.

### 3 What do the coins look like? Tick (✓). (5 minutes)

- Check pupils know what to do using the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14).
- Check answers as a class.

Lesson 2, part 2 Story 7

1 After you read Look, read and order.

Bo can fly and look at things. I can see what he sees.

I think these silver coins are very old.

We must tell Mr Hazim at the museum!

Look, there's a falaj for irrigation, a well ... and that's a stone wall ...

2 Answer the questions.

- Where are the children? They're outside the museum.
- What can Lottie see on her tablet? She can see what Bo sees.
- What building do they find? a wall
- What's the object they find made of? It's made of silver.
- What do they finally find? They find a jar of coins.

3 What do the coins look like? Tick (✓).

1 They are modern.	<input type="checkbox"/>	2 They're red and black.	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 They have got writing on them.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	4 They are silver.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
5 They are very old.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	6 They are not interesting.	<input type="checkbox"/>

4 Values Read and tick (✓). When are you careful?

1 doing homework	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2 crossing the road	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
3 speaking	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	4 playing computer games	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 cooking	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	6 sewing	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

thirty-nine 39

### 4 Values Read and tick (✓). When are you careful? (10 minutes)

- Pupils choose their answers and then compare with a partner.
- Ask pupils to compare their reasons why they are/aren't (usually) careful doing these things. Ask them what they could do to be more careful.
- Ask for some answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to discuss any challenges and successes in pupils' learning so far.

#### Extra activity Photocopiable 51

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 51.

#### CLIL Link

In Unit 7, the story is based around the concept of historical finds and heritage from Social Studies. The Discovery Team have been learning a lot about the history of their town. Thanks to a new device that Lottie has inserted in Bo, which allows them to see what Bo sees while he is flying, the team discover a hidden jar of silver coins.



# Grammar

## Lesson 3, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn and use the Past simple
- **Target language:** *They used clay to make jars. They didn't use stone. I played football yesterday. I didn't play tennis.*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can follow short, simple dialogues or stories about past events if spoken slowly and clearly and guided by questions or prompts (GSE 39).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41).
- **Writing:** Can write about past activities using simple language, given a model (GSE 40).

### Materials

- Unit 7 flashcards (historical finds)
- Unit 7 poster: Historical finds
- photocopyable 47

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 3, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Write *The discovery* on the board. Ask *What did the kids find? How did Bo help? What was on the coins?* Elicit answers.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to use the Past simple.

## Practice

### Class Book

**Grammar** Lesson 3, part 1

1 **Look back! Tick (✓) the sentence in this picture.**

1 We learned a lot today.

2 We didn't learn today.

3 We used clay to make jars.

2 **Listen and repeat.**

They **used** clay to make jars. They **didn't** use stone.  
I **played** football yesterday. I **didn't** play tennis.

3 **Listen and number. What did they do yesterday?**

a b c d

4 **Look at the pictures. Say affirmative and negative sentences.**

1 2 3 4 5

1	Adam	walked	didn't walk	to the hotel	two days ago.
2	Rawan and Samira	climbed	didn't climb	the wall	on Tuesday.
3	Noora	played	didn't play	tennis	yesterday.
4	Malik and Yousuf	played	didn't play	board games	yesterday.
5	Sheikha and Aseel	cooked	didn't cook	lunch	last week.

5 **Write one true and one false sentence about yourself. Your partner guesses which one is true.**

I cooked lunch yesterday.

False!

62 sixty-two Activity Book Unit 7  
Lesson 3, part 2

### 1 **Look back! Tick (✓) the sentence in this picture (5 minutes).**

- Refer pupils to pages 60 and 61. Pupils complete the activity individually.
- Check answers as a class.

### 2 **7.3 Listen and repeat. (10 minutes)**

- Play the audio.
- Explain that we use the Past simple to talk about an event in the past. We usually specify when that event happened, e.g. *yesterday, two weeks ago, last year*, etc. Write the sentences from the grammar box on the board and say *Are we talking about the past, present or future? (Past.); Which word tells you when? (Yesterday.); Which letters or words tell you we are talking about the past? (-ed and didn't.). Underline the -ed endings and did + not = n't. Say This is how we can talk about the past when something is over.*
- Ask pupils to say other verbs they know. Write them on the board. Ask them to change the verbs so that they are in the Past simple. Explain that some verbs are irregular, e.g. *go (went), have (had)*, etc.

### 7.3

They **used** clay to make jars. They **didn't** use stone.  
I **played** football yesterday. I **didn't** play tennis.



## Diversity

## Support

- Write the rules for the form of the Past simple on the board and have pupils copy them into their notebooks.

## Challenge

- Ask pupils to look at the form of the Past simple and work out the rules themselves. Ask pairs to write a different example about the past and themselves.

### 3 7.4 Listen and number. What did they do yesterday? (5 minutes)

- Pupils look at the pictures and describe what's happening.
- Play the audio. Pupils number the pictures in the order they hear them.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

## 7.4

**Girl 1:** Yesterday I didn't play football with my sister. We played tennis. It was great!

**Boy 1:** Yesterday I listened to music in my bedroom. I didn't watch TV.

**Girl 2:** Yesterday I didn't play with my friends. I cooked with my mum.

**Boy 2:** I didn't listen to music yesterday, because I climbed a mountain instead!

### 4 Look at the pictures. Say affirmative and negative sentences. (5 minutes)

- Pupils do the task individually first. Check understanding.
- Pupils work in pairs. Pupils should say all sentences in affirmative first.
- Pupils say the negative sentence.

### 5 Write one true and one false sentence about yourself. Your partner guesses which one is true. (5 minutes)

- Pupils work in pairs.
- Check pupils understand the task using the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14). Tell pupils one true and one false sentence about yourself. Pupils guess which is true.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Call out regular verbs. Pupils say the Past simple form of the verbs. Write them on the board. Ask pupils what all the verbs have in common (they all end in *-ed*.)

## Lesson 3, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Review the vocabulary using the Unit 7 flashcards or poster.
- Spell words for pupils to say what the historical find is. Then place pupils in pairs and have them continue.

## Practice

## Activity Book

Lesson 3, part 2

### Grammar

1 Listen and circle.

1 Hazim didn't watch TV on Monday. He tidied up his bedroom.

2 Shahad didn't watch a film at the cinema. She watched it at home.

3 Hamzah and Ibrahim didn't play tennis. They played a picture (for their dad).

4 Badriya and Manar didn't climb. They skateboarded.

5 Huda and Mohammed didn't play. They played board games.

3 Guess what your partner did yesterday. Tick (✓) or cross (X). Then say and check.

walk to school	<input type="checkbox"/>	watch TV	<input type="checkbox"/>	tidy up your room	<input type="checkbox"/>
play football	<input type="checkbox"/>	listen to music	<input type="checkbox"/>	play board games	<input type="checkbox"/>

You walked to school. No, I didn't walk to school. I took the bus.

40 forty

### 1 7.5 Listen and circle. (10 minutes)

- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to check pupils know what to do.
- Play the audio.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).


# Grammar

## 7.5

- 1 Boy 1:** I'm Hazim. On Monday, I tidied up my bedroom after school. I didn't watch TV because it was very late, but at least my bedroom looks so clean and nice now!
- 2 Girl 1:** I'm Shahad and I watched a beautiful film last Saturday. I didn't watch it at the cinema because it was an old film. I watched it at home with my brother and sister.
- 3 Boy 2:** I'm Hamzah. My brother Ibrahim and I love playing tennis a lot, but we also like painting. Yesterday it was our dad's birthday so we painted a beautiful picture for him. He loved it.
- 4 Girl 2:** I'm Badriya. My friend Manar and I were at the park two days ago. There was a climbing wall in the park, but we didn't climb it because it was very busy. So we skateboarded.
- 5 Boy 3:** I'm Mohammed. At weekends, Huda and I love playing tennis. But last weekend it rained a lot, so we played board games.

### 2 Look at Activity 1 and complete the sentences.


(10 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually.
-  Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).


### 3 Guess what your partner did yesterday.

Tick (✓) or cross (X). Then say and check.

(10 minutes)

-  Ask two pupils to read the example. They then work with a partner and take it in turns to guess.
- Ask volunteer pairs to demonstrate their conversation for the rest of the class.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask *When do we use the Past simple?* and elicit answers.
-  Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to have pupils reflect on what they found easy and difficult today.

#### Extra activity Photocopiable 47

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 47.

# Vocabulary and Grammar

## Lesson 4, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn and use the Past simple and *wh*- questions forms with regular verbs; to learn and sing a song
- **Target language:** *arrive, live, need, start, stop, use, visit, work*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can recognise familiar words and phrases in short, simple songs or chants (GSE 18).
- **Speaking:** Can sing a basic song from memory (GSE 22). Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41).

### Materials

- Unit 7 flashcards (*arrive, live, need, start, stop, use, visit, work*)
- True/False response cards
- photocopiables 43, 47, 55 and 59

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: True/False response cards technique (see page 14); Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 4, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Say *Last lesson, we ... but we didn't ...* Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), have pupils say something else they remember doing/not doing in the last lesson.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn and use some regular verbs to talk about the past. They will learn to ask questions with *When?* and to answer them with short answers. They will also sing a song.

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 4, part 1 **Vocabulary and Grammar** 7

1 Listen, point and repeat.

1 live 2 work 3 visit 4 arrive  
5 start 6 stop 7 need 8 use

2 Listen and sing.

Where did people live, many years ago?  
Please tell me, I want to know!  
Did they live in houses?  
Yes, they did!  
Did they need warm clothes?  
Yes, they did!

Did they use umbrellas?  
No, they didn't!  
Did they have coins?  
I don't know!  
Where did people live, many years ago?  
Please tell me, I want to know!

3 Listen and repeat.

When did you visit the museum?  
We visited the museum on Monday.  
Did people in the past have coins?  
Yes, they did./No, they didn't.

4 Make questions and ask your partners.

live in a castle    play board games  
use a pencil to write    start school  
listen to music    dress up  
work in an office    like vegetables

In the past, did you live in a castle?    No, I didn't.

5 Pupil A: Activity Book, page 69. Pupil B: Activity Book, page 71.

Activity Book, Unit 7  
Lesson 4, part 2    sixty-three    63

### 1 7.6 Listen, point and repeat. (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 63. Have pupils look at the pictures and raise their hands to describe what they can see.
- Play the audio.
- Practise the vocabulary using the True/False response cards technique (see page 14): *We use a pencil to eat with. We live in England. Do you need to go to the toilet? I work on a farm. The opposite of 'start' is 'stop'. We visit the cinema. We visit museums, and friends. 'Begin' means the same as 'start'. We arrive at school after 10 o'clock.*

### 7.6

1 live 2 work 3 visit 4 arrive 5 start 6 stop  
7 need 8 use

### Extra activity Collaborative work

- Have pupils say a word to their partner and their partner points to the correct picture. Then they swap.

# Vocabulary and Grammar

## 2 🎧 7.7 & 7.8 Listen and sing. (5 minutes)

- Pupils look at the pictures and say what they can see (*a modern house, and a girl talking to a woman*).
- Play the song and tell pupils to listen only this time.
- Read out the song one line at a time and have pupils repeat.
- Play the song again and encourage pupils to join in.
- Play the karaoke version of the song (track 7.8) and encourage pupils to sing.

### 7.7

Where did the people live,  
many years ago?  
Please tell me, I want to know!

Did they live in houses?  
Yes, they did!  
Did they need warm clothes?  
Yes, they did!

Did they use umbrellas?  
No, they didn't!  
Did they have coins?  
I don't know!

Where did the people live,  
many years ago?  
Please tell me, I want to know!

### Extra activity Communication

- 🗣️ Pupils work in small groups to change the questions and answers in the song, and then sing it to the class.

## 3 🎧 7.9 Listen and repeat. (5 minutes)

- Play the audio.
- 🗣️ Divide the class into four groups. Assign the long answer to group 2, *Wh*-question to group 1, *yes* and *no* short answers to group 3 and Past simple question to group 4. Play the audio again, pausing after each sentence, and have pupils repeat in their groups. Then swap groups around and repeat. Monitor intonation.

### 7.9

When did you **visit** the museum?  
We **visited** the museum on Monday.  
**Did** people in the past **have** coins?  
Yes, they **did**. / No, they **didn't**.

## 4 🗣️ Make questions and ask your partners. (5 minutes)

- Explain that pupils are practising questions with *When* about things that happened before now, when pupils were younger. Ask two pupils to read out the example in the speech bubbles. Elicit a question and write it on the board.

- 🗣️ Place pupils in pairs for this activity.

### Diversity

#### Support

- Read out the phrases in the box before pupils complete the activity. Have pupils call out the correct question forms and write them on the board.

#### Challenge

- Have pupils choose four of the verbs in the box and add four of their own ideas.

## 5 ➤ Pupil A: Activity Book, page 69.

### ➤ Pupil B: Activity Book, page 71. (10 minutes)

- 🗣️ Place pupils in pairs and have them choose who is going to be Pupil A and who is going to be Pupil B.
- Have them turn to the correct page in their Activity Books. They both have a table giving information about what Basim did last week but both tables are incomplete. They need to ask their partner questions using the phrases in the box to find out what Basim did in order to complete their tables.
- Ask pupils to read the example in the speech bubbles. Explain that they will need to use the Past simple.
- Ask pupils to write the questions before they begin, using the example as a model.
- 🗣️ Pairs ask their questions and complete the information in their tables.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Check answers as a class.

### Extra activity TPR

- 🗣️ Display the Unit 7 flashcards (verbs) around the room. Divide the class into groups of five. Tell pupils to walk around and stand near a card when you signal. Pupils should then make a question with the verb to ask and answer. Set a time limit of 30 seconds. Pupils move around to the next card on your signal.

### Extra activity Fast finishers

- Pupils write two or three more questions to ask the class. Have pupils write these on the board for the class to check first.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- 🗣️ Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *Do you like the song? Can you remember it without looking at the book?*
- Play the karaoke version of the song again (track 7.8) and encourage pupils to sing

## Lesson 4, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Explain to pupils that you will say a verb (or you can show them the Unit 7 flashcards with verbs) and that they have to say a sentence or a question with that verb in the Past simple. Continue with other verbs.

### Practice

#### Activity Book

Lesson 4, part 2 Vocabulary and Grammar 7

**1 Complete the sentences.**  
live work visit arrive start stop need use


- I always use a pen to write at school.
- You start a sentence with a capital letter.
- I live in a flat in the city centre.
- I visit my grandparents every weekend.
- My parents work in a shop.
- Trains often arrive on time at the train station.
- I can't see. I need my glasses.
- Shh! Quiet, please, stop talking.

**2 Order the words to make questions.**

- Jasim place What visit did on Saturday ?  
What place did Jasim visit on Saturday?
- arrive time did What Jasim ?  
What time did Jasim arrive?
- to buy Jasim What did need ?  
What did Jasim need to buy?
- the woman What use to take photos did ?  
What did the woman use to take photos?
- touch Did the jars the girls ?  
Did the girls touch the jars?

**3 Look and answer the questions in Activity 2.**

- He visited a museum on Saturday.
- He arrived at 11 o'clock.
- He needed to buy a ticket.
- She used a mobile phone.
- No, they didn't.



forty-one 41

### 3 Look and answer the questions in Activity 2. (10 minutes)

- Ask questions about the picture, e.g. *What historical finds can you see?*
- Explain to pupils that they are going to use the picture to answer the questions from Activity 2. Ask them to look at the example answer in Activity 3.
- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to make sure pupils know what they have to do.
- Pupils complete the activity individually and then check answers in pairs.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to have pupils read aloud their answers.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *Can you use the Past simple? Is it easy or difficult? When do you use the Past simple?*

#### Extra activity Photocopiables 43, 47, 55 and 59

- Ask pupils to do photocopiables 43, 47, 55 and 59.

### 1 Complete the sentences. (10 minutes)

- Pupils work individually to complete the activity.
- Ask individual pupils to read aloud the completed sentences to check answers.

### 2 Order the words to make questions. (10 minutes)

- Pupils work in pairs to put the questions in order.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) and write them on the board.



# Culture and Project

## Lesson 5, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn about discoveries in Oman
- **Target language:** revision of vocabulary and grammar

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41). Can talk about a familiar place in a basic way (GSE 35).
- **Writing:** Can write short, simple descriptive texts about familiar places using basic connectors, given a model (GSE 41).

### Materials

- sheets of paper, enough for each group
- coloured pencils
- a map of Oman
- photocopiable 63

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

### Culture Sources (online)

- [whc.unesco.org](http://whc.unesco.org)
- [www.oman.de](http://www.oman.de)
- [www.omanobserver.om](http://www.omanobserver.om)
- [www.timesofoman.com](http://www.timesofoman.com)
- [www.nm.gov.om](http://www.nm.gov.om)

## Lesson 5, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Write *discoveries* on the board. Ask pupils to give examples of the type of things that people discover (*cities, coins, tombs, books, cave drawings, etc.*). Ask pupils what archaeological discoveries can tell us (e.g. *where, when and how people lived*).

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will talk about important discoveries in Oman.
- **Extension** Ask pupils to find Sinaw, Musandam and Ibri on a map of Oman.

### Culture notes

- Bait al Qufl houses only exist in Musandam and some are over 200 years old. Bait al Qufl means 'house of the lock'.
- The stone towers at Bat don't have entrances, therefore some archaeologists think they may have been used to store grain.

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 5, part 1  
CULTURE

#### INTERESTING DISCOVERIES IN OMAN

There are many ancient sites in Oman and every year, people make amazing new discoveries about the past. Let's learn about three of them.

#### SINAW HOARD

In 1979, people found an old blue jar made of clay in Sinaw. Inside the jar were 962 silver coins! The coins were about 1,400 years old and they weren't all from Oman. Some were from Egypt, Spain and other countries. It's the most important discovery of coins in Oman!

#### BAIT AL-QUFL

In the mountains of Musandam, the people used stone and clay to make special houses. In the summer, the people travelled to the sea, and used special keys to lock the houses. In this way, their food was safe for when they returned. You can see the Bait al Qufl houses today. Wow!

#### BAT TOWER

In Bat, near Ibri, you can find some round stone towers. We don't know what people used the towers for, because some of them are more than 5,000 years old! This makes them some of the most important towers in the world.

Did you know that Bahla Fort and Al Balid are UNESCO World Heritage Sites?

**Project - Lesson 5, part 2**

**1 Before you read** Do you know any ancient sites in your country or another country?

**2** Listen and read.

**3 After you read**  
Activity Book, page 42.

**4** How many ancient sites do you know in your country? Brainstorm with your partner.

There's a castle at Jibreen.

Yes! And there is an ancient wall at Bahla.

**Find out more! Watch the video.**

64 sixty-four

**Make a leaflet of historic places.**

- In groups, choose a historic place in your country.
- Write about the place. Answer these questions:
  - What's the name of the place?
  - Where is it?
  - What was it for?
  - What's it like now?
- Make a group presentation to the class. First, agree who says what!
- Make a leaflet of your work to show the class.

This is Bahla Fort. It's in Bahla near Nizwa and it was an important building for the Banu Nabhan people. Today, many tourists visit it.

### 1 Before you read Do you know any ancient sites in your country or another country? (3 minutes)

- Pupils discuss in pairs. Ask for class feedback.
- Tell pupils to look at the photos. Ask *What can you see?* and elicit answers.
- **Extension** Internet search key words: *important historical discoveries Oman*

## 2 7.10 Listen and read. (5 minutes)

- Play the audio all the way through.
- Check comprehension with questions: *What did they find at Sinaw? (A jar of silver coins.); How many were there? (962.); Where were the coins from? (Oman, Egypt, Spain and other countries.); What did the people use to make the houses in Musandam? (Stone and clay.); What did they use to lock the houses? (Special keys.); Why did they lock them? (To keep their food safe while they were away.); What did people use the stone towers at Bat for? (We don't know.); How old are some of the towers? (5,000 years old.).*
- Pupils can search online for more information about the places.

### 7.10

#### Interesting discoveries in Oman

There are many ancient sites in Oman and every year, people make amazing new discoveries about the past. Let's learn about three of them.

#### Sinaw Hoard

In 1979, people found an old blue jar made of clay in Sinaw. Inside the jar were 962 silver coins! The coins were about 1,400 years old and they weren't all from Oman. Some were from Egypt, Spain and other countries. It's the most important discovery of coins in Oman!

#### Bait Al-Qufi

In the mountains of Musandam, the people used stone and clay to make special houses. In the summer, the people travelled to the sea, and used special keys to lock the houses. In this way, their food was safe for when they returned. You can see the Bait Al-Qufi houses today. Wow!


#### Bat Tower

In Bat, near Ibri, you can find some round stone towers. We don't know what people used the towers for, because some of them are more than 5,000 years old! This makes them some of the most important towers in the world.

## 3 After you read Activity Book, page 42.

- Pupils turn to page 42 in their Activity Books before they complete the Class Book activities for this lesson.

## 4 How many ancient sites do you know in your country? Brainstorm with your partner. (5 minutes)


-  Place pupils in pairs for this activity.
- Ask different pairs to say what they know. Promote class discussion with questions: *Do you know anywhere else? Who has been there? What is it like?*

## Diversity

### Support

- Write key words from the text on the board. Have pupils copy the words into their vocabulary lists. Explain meanings if necessary.

### Challenge

-  Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), pupils say a key word from the text that is connected to the theme of important historical discoveries. Pupils write the words in their vocabulary lists.


## Find out more! Watch the video. (5 minutes)

- Tell pupils they are going to watch a video and to watch carefully.
- Ask what they learnt from the video.


## Practice

### Activity Book

Lesson 5, part 1




**CULTURE**


1  After you read Complete the table.

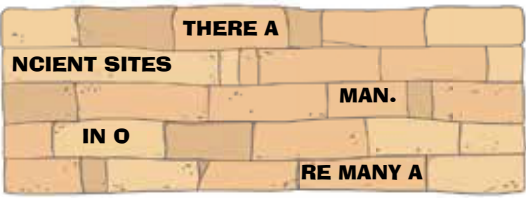
stone and clay houses	an old blue jar	5,000 years old
round stone towers	coins from many countries	special keys

SINAW HOARD	BAIT AL-QUFL	BAT TOWER
an old blue jar	stone and clay houses	5,000 years old
coins from many countries	special keys	round stone towers

2  Answer the questions.


- How many coins were inside the jar at Sinaw? There were 962 coins.
- Where were some of the coins from?  
Some were from Egypt, Spain and other countries.
- Where did the people at Bait Al-Qufi travel to in the summer?  
The people travelled to the sea.
- Why did they use special keys to lock their houses?  
So their food was safe for when they returned.
- What did the people use the towers for at Bat?  
We don't know what people used the towers for.

3  Order the pieces to make a sentence.




THERE A  
NCIENT SITES  
MAN.  
IN O  
RE MANY A

There are many ancient sites in Oman.


4  Look at Activity 3. Write a sentence in pieces for your partner.

42 forty-two

## 1 After you read Complete the table. (3 minutes)

-  Pupils work individually and check in pairs.

## 2 Answer the questions. (3 minutes)

-  Pupils work individually to answer the questions.
- Ask pupils to read aloud the answers.

# Culture and Project

## 3 Order the pieces to make a sentence. (3 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually.

## 4 Look at Activity 3. Write a sentence in pieces for your partner. (5 minutes)

- Pupils work in pairs.
- Each pupil writes their own sentence. Using the sentence in Activity 3 as an example, ask them to separate their sentence into five or six parts. They then swap sentences with their partner and piece each other's sentences back together.
- Pupils check each other's answers.

## Finishing the lesson (3 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *Which of the three discoveries was the most interesting?* Ask pupils to give reasons for their answers.

## Lesson 5, part 2

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Say true/false sentences about the text in the first part of the lesson, e.g. *They discovered the coins in Sinaw three weeks ago. (False.); There were 92 coins in the jar. (False.); The coins were over 1,000 years old. (True.); All the coins were from Oman. (False.); People used wood to make the houses in Musandam. (False.); The houses were difficult to get into. (True.); The houses aren't there anymore. (False.); People don't know what the stone towers were used for. (True.); Some of the towers are more than 5,000 years old. (True.).* Pupils say if the sentences are true or false.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson, pupils will make a leaflet about historic places.

## Practice – Project

### Class Book

### Make a leaflet of historic places. (30 minutes)

- Divide pupils into groups of four.
- Groups can choose one of the historic places from the text, or they can choose their own.
- Pupils work together to answer the questions. When they have finished, have them prepare their presentation. Encourage them to use visuals (photos, drawings, etc.).
- Ask pupils to decide what information they are going to present first and who is going to present it. Make sure each pupil from each group presents.

- When all groups have given their presentations, explain that they are now going to make a leaflet about their historic place. Have pupils look at the example leaflet and tell them they can use it as a model for their own leaflets.
- Hand out the materials for the leaflets. Explain that pupils should all contribute ideas.
- Display the leaflets. Ask pupils to walk around and ask and answer questions about the information in the leaflets.



Lesson 5, part 1  
CULTURE

**INTERESTING DISCOVERIES IN OMAN**

There are many ancient sites in Oman and every year, people make amazing new discoveries about the past. Let's learn about three of them.

**SINAW HOARD**

In 1979, people found an old blue jar made of clay in Sinaw. Inside the jar were 962 silver coins! The coins were about 1,400 years old and they weren't all from Oman. Some were from Egypt, Spain and other countries. It's the most important discovery of coins in Oman!



**BAIT AL-QUFL**

In the mountains of Musandam, the people used stone and clay to make special houses. In the summer, the people travelled to the sea, and used special keys to lock the houses. In this way, their food was safe for when they returned. You can see the Bait al Qufl houses today. Wow!



**BAT TOWER**

In Bat, near Ibbri, you can find some round stone towers. We don't know what people used the towers for, because some of them are more than 5,000 years old! This makes them some of the most important towers in the world.



**Fun fact**

Did you know that Bahla Fort and Al Balid are UNESCO World Heritage Sites?

**Project - Lesson 5, part 2**

**Make a leaflet of historic places.**

- In groups, choose a historic place in your country.
- Write about the place. Answer these questions:
  - What's the name of the place?
  - Where is it?
  - What was it for?
  - What's it like now?
- Make a group presentation to the class. First, agree who says what!
- Make a leaflet of your work to show the class.

**Bahla Fort**

This is Bahla Fort. It's in Bahla near Nizwa and it was an important building for the Oman Arabians people. Today, many tourists visit it.



**Find out more! Watch the video.**

64 sixty-four

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils *what they have learnt today.* Ask pupils how this culture lesson has helped them understand more about the history of Oman.

### Extra activity Photocopiable 63

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 63.

# English in action

## Lesson 6

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn to give advice
- **Target language:** *You should wear a helmet. You shouldn't ...*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can understand some details in short, simple dialogues on familiar everyday topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 30).
- **Listening:** Can understand basic information about common jobs, if spoken slowly and clearly and supported by pictures (GSE 31).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about a familiar place in a basic way (GSE 33). Can give informal advice on everyday matters, using a range of fixed expressions (GSE 48).

### Materials

- photocopiable 67

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique (see page 14)
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Tell pupils that you are visiting Oman for the first time and that you need advice about the clothes to bring. On the board write, *You should ... and You shouldn't ...*
- Put pupils in pairs and ask them to discuss the clothes items that you should and shouldn't bring with you.
- Ask pupils for their advice. Encourage them to use *You should ... and You shouldn't ...*

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to give advice.
- Use the Key question technique (see page 14) to ask *When do you need advice?* and elicit ideas, e.g. *when you aren't sure what to do, when you need help with something, when you have a problem.*

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 6 **English in action** Giving advice **7**

1 Tick (✓) the things you can see at a museum about history.

a clay jar  jewellery  coins   
 a birthday cake  a sword  a costume

2 Watch or listen and write. Where does Leila work? **at the museum**

3 Watch or listen again, read and check.

Hello, my name's Leila and I work at a history museum. Today we're learning about finding old things in the ground.

Hi, Leila! What should I do?

OK. You should wear old clothes.  
You should use a small brush.

Should I work quickly?

Good question! No, you shouldn't! You should work very slowly and carefully.

4 In pairs, say what you should/shouldn't do.

- on a bike  
wear a helmet    ride very quickly down a hill  
ride carefully    stop at traffic lights
- at a road  
stop before you cross    run across the road  
look both ways

You should wear a helmet.

You shouldn't ...

Activity Book, Unit 7 Lesson 6 sixty-five 65

### 1 Tick (✓) the things you can see at a museum about history. (2 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 65. Pupils complete the activity individually, then check in pairs.

### 2 7.11 Watch or listen and write. Where does Leila work? (5 minutes)

- Play the audio or video. Pupils raise their hands to offer answers. Do not confirm answers yet.
- Pupils write down the answer they believe is correct.

### 7.11 & 7.12

**Woman:** Hello, my name's Leila and I work at a history museum. Today we're learning about finding old things in the ground.

**Girl:** Hi, Leila. What should I do?

**Woman:** OK. You should wear old clothes.  
You should use a small brush.

**Girl:** Should I work quickly?

**Woman:** Good question! No, you shouldn't!  
You should work very slowly and carefully.



# English in action

## 3 7.12 Watch or listen again, read and check. (5 minutes)

- Play the audio or video again for pupils to watch or listen and read. Confirm the answer to Activity 2.
- Draw pupils' attention to the *Say it!* box. Read out the sentences and have pupils repeat as a class. Explain meanings if necessary.

## 4 In pairs, say what you should/shouldn't do. (5 minutes)

- Check pupils know the meaning of the phrases in the boxes. Ask pupils to mime and act out the actions as you read them aloud.
- Place pupils in pairs and have them complete the activity.

### Diversity

#### Support

- Revise the things you should/shouldn't do. Draw or mime and elicit or prompt the class. Write the words on the board. Do the activity as a class. Ask pupils why each is/isn't a good idea.

#### Challenge

- After completing the activity, ask pupils to add ideas of their own. Have different pupils write the advice on the board.

### Extra activity Collaborative work

- In pairs, pupils design, label and draw a poster for other situations. They present their advice to the class.

### Activity Book

## 1 7.13 Write *should* or *shouldn't*. Then listen and number. (5 minutes)

- Pupils complete the sentences and number them order individually.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

**Man:** Listen carefully children. These are the school rules to remember:

- 1 You should arrive on time.
- 2 You should listen to your teacher.
- 3 You shouldn't drop litter.
- 4 You should clean your table.
- 5 You shouldn't run in the classroom.
- 6 You shouldn't shout in class.

English in action 7

Lesson 6

**1 Write *should* or *shouldn't*. Then listen and number.**

a b c

d e f

a You should listen to your teacher. 2

b You shouldn't run in the classroom. 5

c You shouldn't drop litter. 3

d You shouldn't shout in class. 6

e You should clean your table. 4

f You should arrive on time. 1

**2 Complete the dialogue.**

.how-to-work Should I should I do You should No

Hello, my name's Mr Ahmed and I'm a new teacher at the school. Today we're learning about how to work and study here with the new students.

Hi, Mr Ahmed. What should I do?

You should read and talk very quietly.  
You should take care of the books.

Should I put the books back on this table?

Good question! No, you shouldn't.  
You should put them back on the shelves.

**3 Read and circle.**

- 1 When you are at school, you should ~~shouldn't~~ listen to the teacher.
- 2 When you find old things in the ground, you should ~~shouldn't~~ work quickly.
- 3 When you ride a bike, you should ~~shouldn't~~ wear a helmet.
- 4 When you cross the road, you should ~~shouldn't~~ run.

**4 Choose and complete for you. Then compare in groups.**

When you go to the zoo café shopping mall, you should \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_ You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_.

forty-three 43

## 2 Complete the dialogue. (3 minutes)

- Pupils work individually and check in pairs.
- **Extension** Pupils read the dialogue in pairs.

## 3 Read and circle (3 minutes)

- Pupils work individually. Check answers by asking pupils to read aloud the completed sentences.

## 4 Choose and complete for you. Then compare in groups. (3 minutes)

- Pupils complete the sentences individually.
- Put pupils into groups and have them compare answers and decide on the best advice.
- Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

## Finishing the lesson (4 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask for good learning advice for the next lesson. Ask *What should/shouldn't we do?* Elicit answers.

### Extra activity Photocopiable 67

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 67.



## Skills

## Lesson 7, parts 1 and 2

## Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to read and understand a reading text
- **Target language:** revision of unit vocabulary and grammar





## Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can predict what a short, simple text is about from the title, a picture, etc., if guided by questions or prompts (GSE 39). Can understand a simple text about a past event (GSE 38). Can extract specific information in short texts on familiar topics (GSE 39). Can understand likes and preferences in short, simple personal texts (e.g. diary entries or emails) (GSE 37).

## Materials

- True/False response cards
- slips of paper
- photocopyable 71

## Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)


-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); True/False response cards technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
-  Peer learning: pairwork
-  Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 7, part 1

## Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write *Diary of an Omani boy* on the board. Ask *Do you think it was exciting/dangerous to be a child 500 years ago? Why?* Have pupils raise their hands and offer ideas. Accept all reasonable suggestions.

## Presentation (5 minutes)

-  Explain that in this lesson pupils will read part of an Omani boy's diary.
- Say *I can't wait for ...* (e.g. *the weekend, because ...*) Ask *Do we say 'can't wait for' because you want to do something, or you don't want to? (You want to.); How much? A lot or a little? (A lot.)*

## Practice

## Class Book

Lesson 7, part 1

**Reading**

- 1 Before you read** Look at the picture. What do you think the story is about?
- 2 Listen and read.** Were you right?

**DIARY OF AN OMANI BOY**

**Thursday 8 May 1952**

*My name is Talal and this is my first diary. I'm 11 years old. I've got three sisters and two brothers, but I'm the oldest child. I live on a farm with my mother and father in the countryside.*

**Friday 9 May 1952**

*Today was a very exciting day because I visited Muscat for the first time. Muscat is the busiest and most famous city in my country. My father says that boats come here from around the world. When we arrived, there was a big boat there. I listened to all the people talking and shouting. It was so noisy!*

*There was also a big market. We watched people buy things from the boat. Some of the things were from China! They looked very beautiful. It was great! I can't wait to go back again.*



- 3 After you read** Read the story again. Complete the sentences with one or two words.

- Talal started his diary on Thursday.
- On Friday, Talal visited Muscat for the first time.
- Muscat is the busiest and most famous city in the country.
- Talal listened to all the people talking and shouting.
- Some of the things in the market were from China.



**Exam**

Read each sentence carefully and think. Do you need one word or two?

66 sixty-six

Activity Book, Unit 7  
Lesson 7, part 2

**1 Before you read** Look at the picture. What do you think the story is about? (5 minutes)

-  Refer pupils to page 66. Pupils discuss in pairs first.
- Ask pupils what they think the people are doing on the ship. Elicit ideas.
-  Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), ask pupils for answers.

**2 Listen and read.** Were you right? (10 minutes)

- Before pupils do the activity, remind them not to worry if they do not understand every word, as long as they get the gist the first time they listen.
- Play the audio once for them to check their answers.
- Play the audio again.
- Check comprehension with questions, e.g. *How old is Talal? (He's 11.); Who does he live with? (His mother, father, three sisters and two brothers.); Do they live in Muscat? (No, they don't. They live in the countryside.); What did they see when they arrived? (A big boat.); Was it quiet? (No, it wasn't. It was noisy.); Did people buy things from the boat? (Yes, they did.); Did he enjoy his visit? (Yes, he did.) How do you know? (He says he 'can't wait to go back'.)*

## 7.14

**Diary of an Omani boy****Thursday 8 May 1952**

My name is Talal and this is my first diary. I'm 11 years old. I've got three sisters and two brothers, but I'm the oldest child. I live on a farm with my mother and father in the countryside.


**Friday 9 May 1952**

Today was a very exciting day because I visited Muscat for the first time. Muscat is the busiest and most famous city in my country. My father says that boats come here from around the world. When we arrived, there was a big boat there. I listened to all the people talking and shouting. It was so noisy! There was also a big market. We watched people buy things from the boat. Some of the things were from China! They looked very beautiful. It was great! I can't wait to go back again.


**Diversity****Support**

- Pre-teach words from the diary that pupils might have a problem with, e.g. *countryside, boat, jewel, shout*, etc.

**Challenge**

-  Have pupils read the text aloud in pairs, taking it in turns to read sentence by sentence.

- 3  **After you read Read the story again.**  
**Complete the sentences with one or two words.**  
 (10 minutes)

- Check pupils understand the task. Draw pupils' attention to the example answer. Read the Exam tip.
-  Pupils complete the activity individually. They then compare answers with a partner.
- Ask for class feedback. Have pupils raise their hands to read a sentence.

**Diversity****Support**

- Guide and prompt pupils to work on the sentences together as a class. Ask pupils some questions, e.g. *What kind of word comes next? Why? How do you know? Look at the diary, which words do we use 'the' before? (superlatives).*


**Challenge**

- Hand pupils a slip of paper. Ask pupils to write a sentence on one side. Pupils then remove one or two words. They write the sentence with gaps on the other side of the paper for their partner to complete.

**Extra activity 21<sup>st</sup> Century Skills**

- Discuss with pupils the idea that in the 21<sup>st</sup> century, now, instead of diaries many people keep blogs to share with other people online. Find a child-friendly blog and ask pupils if they want to start writing a blog or online journal in English, or read other children's blogs. Have a discussion about how blogging can help reading as well as writing.

**Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)**

-  Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *Do you write a diary? Do you think it is a good idea? Why?*

## Lesson 7, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Using the True/False response cards technique (see page 14), say different statements about the story from the last lesson, e.g. *Talal is writing a blog. (False). Talal and his family live in Muscat. (False.) Talal lives on a farm. (True.)* Pupils correct the incorrect statements.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will practise what they remember about the diary.
- Ask pupils to tell you what words they remember from the last lesson. Write them on the board. Put pupils in pairs and ask them to write sentences using the words on the board. Pupils share their sentences with the class.

### Activity Book

Lesson 7, part 2


**Skills**

**Reading**

**1 After you read Read and write.**

countryside diary farm China noisy shout

- A very big country.  
China
- Not quiet.  
noisy
- A place where you grow fruit and vegetables.  
farm
- You write about your everyday routine in a ...  
diary
- Talk very loudly.  
shout
- Not in a town or city.  
countryside



**2 Read and write True or False.**

- Talal is twelve years old. False
- Talal is the youngest child. False
- There was a big boat in Muscat. True
- Talal listened to all the people talking quietly. False
- People bought things at a big shop. False
- All of the things were from China. False

**3 Correct the false sentences in Activity 2.**

- Talal is eleven years old.
- Talal is the oldest child.
- Talal listened to all the people talking loudly.
- People bought things from a boat at a big market.
- Some of the things were from China.

44 forty-four

### 1 After you read Read and write. (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils what they can see in the picture.
- Read the words in the box aloud. Elicit the meanings if necessary.
- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to check pupils know what to do.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### 2 Read and write True or False. (10 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually. They compare answers with a partner.
- Pupils can look at page 66 of the Class Book to find the answers. Less able pupils can work with more able pupils to help them find the information if necessary.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### 3 Correct the false sentences in Activity 2. (10 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually. They compare answers with a partner.
- Have pupils raise their hands to offer answers.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils what they have learnt today.

### Extra activity Photocopiable 71

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 71.

# Skills

## Lesson 8, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to understand a listening task; to talk about a visit to a museum or ancient site; to read a diary; to write a diary entry about a visit to a new place
- **Target language:** revision of vocabulary and grammar

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can understand a simple text about a past event (GSE 38).
- **Listening:** Can extract factual information from short, simple dialogues or stories about past events if spoken slowly and clearly and guided by questions or prompts (GSE 39).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41).
- **Writing:** Can write about past activities using simple language, given a model (GSE 40).

### Materials

- Unit 7 flashcards (historical finds and verbs)
- sheets of paper, enough for each group
- coloured pencils
- poster paper, enough for each group
- photocopyable 75

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14); Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; Two stars and a wish technique (see page 15); groupwork
- Independent learning: Learning diary (see page 15)

## Lesson 8, part 1

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Divide the class into two teams and play *Board race* (see page 21) with the Unit 7 flashcards.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to two children talk about places they visited, talk about a museum or ancient site they visited, read a diary entry and then write one of their own.

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 8, part 1 7

#### Listening

**1** Listen and choose.

1 What did Maryam see?

A

B

C

2 What did Hamzah visit?

A

B

C

#### Speaking

**2** Talk about a visit to a museum or an ancient site. What was it like?

visited watched listened  
played exciting interesting  
ancient busy expensive

Tell me about your visit.

I visited the history museum. I watched a film about Muscat in the past. It was very interesting.

#### Writing

**3** Read the diary. Which city did Maryam visit with her family? **London**

*My diary*

*Munday*  
My name is Maryam. I'm 9 years old.  
I live in Al Buraimi, Oman. Tomorrow is my family's trip to London!

*Tuesday*  
Today we arrived in London!  
In the morning we visited the Tower of London. It's the oldest castle in London! Then we visited the Tate Modern. It's the most famous modern art museum in London. I loved it!

**Writing**  
Use adjectives to show how you feel and to make your writing more interesting! How many adjectives can you find in Maryam's diary?

**4** Write a diary about a visit to a new place.

**1 Plan**

- What day is it?
- What's your name, how old are you and where do you live?
- When did you arrive?
- What did you visit?
- What was it like?

**2 Write**

My name is ... I'm ... I live in ...  
Today we ...  
In the morning we visited ...  
Then we ...  
It was ...

**3 Check your work**

- Used at least three adjectives?

Activity Book, Unit 7  
Lesson 8, part 2 sixty-seven 67

## Listening

### 1 7.15 Listen and choose. (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 67 and tell them to read the sentences carefully before they listen so they know what to listen for.
- Play the audio.
- Ask a pupil to tell you the answers.

### 7.15

**Girl:** I'm Maryam. I was in Bahla for my holidays. I visited the famous fort. And I watched people make jars from clay! I loved my holiday there.

**Boy:** I'm Hamzah. I was in the Musandam Peninsular. I visited the town of Khasab. I watched the boats on the beautiful blue sea, then I watched the sun go down.

### Diversity

#### Support


- On the board, write comprehension questions for pupils to answer: *Where did Maryam go? What were they using to make the jars? Did she enjoy her holiday? Where did Hamzah go? Which town did he visit? What did he do there?*

#### Challenge


- Ask the questions above for pupils to answer.

### Speaking

#### 2 Talk about a visit to a museum or an ancient site. What was it like? (10 minutes)

-  Pupils work in pairs.
- If pupils can't remember a visit, they can describe the place that the Discovery Team visited.
- Ask different pupils to tell the class about their visit.

#### Extra activity TPR


-  Using the Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14), check understanding. Pupils respond to your questions *Did you think of a place? Do you know what you are going to say? Do you say what it was like? Do you know what the words in the box mean?*

### Writing


#### 3 Read the diary. Which city did Maryam visit with her family? (5 minutes)

- Give pupils a minute to read the diary and find the answer.
- Check comprehension with questions. Ask *When did Maryam get to London? (Tuesday.); Did she see any animals? (No, she didn't.); Did she visit an ancient castle? (Yes, she did.); What did she do after that? (She went to a museum.).*
- Read the Writing tip. Ask pupils to find the adjectives in the text (*oldest, most famous*). Explain that adjectives are often used in diaries because we write about our feelings in them. Tell them that, in the diary entries they will write in Activity 4, they should try to use at least three adjectives or more. Ask them how many diary entries there are (*two – one for Monday and one for Tuesday*).

#### 4 Write a diary about a visit to a new place. (10 minutes)

- Plan: Go through the bullet points as a class. Pupils then work individually to write the answers to the questions. Monitor pupils, helping where necessary. Elicit answers and write them on the board.
-  Write: Draw pupils' attention to sentence prompts. Ask them to write notes for their diary entries. Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to choose a pupil, elicit the information orally and write it on the board.
- Check your work: Ask the class to count the adjectives on the board.


#### Extra activity Collaborative work

-  Pupils work in groups and read each other's work. They then ask and answer extra questions about the visit.


#### Extra activity Fast finishers

- Pupils draw a picture to go with the text they have written.

#### Extra activity Creativity

-  Pupils work in groups to design, draw and label a museum. Hand out paper and coloured pencils to each group. They can choose any type of museum. They present their work to the class.

#### Extra activity Critical thinking

-  Have pupils work together in small groups to design a quick way to find out the most/least popular museums visited, e.g. a hand count or survey. Pupils create a bar chart, a pie chart or any other graphic representation of the results. Pupils draw and colour these on poster paper. Ask groups to present their posters to the class, describing the most/least popular, with ideas to explain their results.

### Finishing the lesson (3 minutes)

- Tell pupils that they will write their own diary entries about a visit to a new place in the next lesson. Ask them to start thinking about what they could write about (where they went, how they felt, and so on).



## Skills

## Lesson 8, part 2

## Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Elicit long adjectives and write them on the board. Ask the class how we make these into comparatives (we add *more*) and superlatives (we add *the most*).
- Ask pupils to work in pairs, think about a place where they live and write two sentences about it; one using a comparative and one using a superlative. Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Write some of the answers on the board.

## Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will write a diary entry about a visit to a new place.

## Practice

## Activity Book

Lesson 8, part 2

**7**

**Writing**

Use adjectives to show how you feel and to make your writing more interesting!

**1 Read and complete.**

exciting expensive interesting ancient

- I visited a castle last Thursday. It was a ncient.
- I was in Muscat last week. It was so exciting!
- I liked the Maths lesson last week. It was interesting.
- We saw a film at the cinema. The tickets were expensive.

**2 Write a diary about a visit to a new place.**

**Plan**

Read and answer. Make notes.

- What day is it? \_\_\_\_\_
- What's your name, how old are you and where do you live? \_\_\_\_\_
- When did you arrive? \_\_\_\_\_
- What did you visit? \_\_\_\_\_
- What was it like? \_\_\_\_\_

**Write**

Use your notes and write.

**My diary**

My name is _____	In the morning we _____
I'm _____	Then we _____
I live in _____	It was _____
Today we _____	

**3 Check your work**

Read your form again and tick (✓).

Use at least three adjectives?  Correct spelling?  Clear handwriting?

forty-five 45

**2 Write a diary about a visit to a new place.** (25 minutes)

- Remind pupils of what they learnt about writing a diary entry from the last lesson.
- Plan: Give pupils a few minutes to complete their notes in order to plan their writing. Walk around monitoring pupils as they take notes and offer help and support. Refer pupils to the Writing tip before completing the activity.
- Write: Pupils work individually to expand upon their notes to write a diary entry. Walk around monitoring, offering help and support.
- Check your work: When they have finished, ask pupils to check their writing by ticking the boxes to show they have done each of these things.
- Using the Two stars and a wish technique (see page 15), pupils read and check each other's work.
- Encourage pupils to read out their completed work to their classmates.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Pupils write down what they achieved in their Learning diary (see page 15): *Today, I wrote a ... and I wrote about ...*

## Extra activity Photocopiable 75

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 75.

## Writing

**1 Read and complete.** (3 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually. Check answers as a class.

# Phonics

## Lesson 9

### Objectives

- **Lesson aims:** to learn two new irregular spellings of the sounds /r/ and /m/; to read simple words containing the target sounds; to revise previously taught tricky words; to learn the new tricky word: *little*; to adopt strategies to recognise and read tricky words in sentences.
- **Target words:** **wr** /r/: *write, wrist, wrap, wrong*; **mb** /m/: *thumb, climb, lamb, comb*
- **Tricky word:** *little*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can understand basic factual statements relating to pictures or simple texts (GSE 30).
- **Listening:** Can identify key information from short audio recordings, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 31).
- **Speaking:** Can say simple tongue twisters and other types of playful language (GSE 27).
- **Writing:** Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).

### Materials

- Optional teacher-made flashcards for the sounds /r/ and /m/ with *wr* and *mb* spellings
- Optional teacher-made flashcards for tricky word: *little*

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Review the sounds /r/ and /m/ from Grade 1 using pictures or flashcards. Elicit a variety of known words using the letter *r* as an initial sound, e.g. *run, rain, rabbit*, and *m* as a final sound, e.g. *jam, pram, swim*.
- You could write a further selection of similar words on the board for the class to read out.
- Encourage pupils to point to the letters which make the /r/ or /m/ sound each time, or come up to the front and circle them.
- Challenge pupils to think of more words with the initial *r* or final *m* spellings for the sounds /r/ and /m/. You can invite them up to draw a picture or do a mime to represent the word.
- You may wish to use flashcards and games such as jumbled letters to revise this further.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Tell pupils that in this lesson, they will learn new ways to spell the sounds /r/ and /m/ and study some words which use these spellings.

### Practice

#### Class Book

Lesson 9

**Phonics**

1 Listen and say.

**wr**

write wrist

**mb**

thumb climb

2 Listen and say the tongue twister.

My **wr**ist hurts when I **wr**ite.  
My **th**umb hurts when I **cl**imb.

3 Listen and write **wr** or **mb**.

1 <b>wr</b> _ap	2  la_ <b>mb</b>
3 <b>wr</b> _ong	4  co_ <b>mb</b>

4 Look, write and say. Circle the odd one out.

1 <b>lamb</b>	<b>write</b>	<b>thumb</b>
2 <b>climb</b>	<b>wrist</b>	<b>wrong</b>

68 sixty-eight Activity Book, Unit 7 Lesson 9

### 1 7.16 Listen and say. (5 minutes)

- Look at Activity 1 on page 68 with the class. Focus on the pictures and talk about what the pupils can see.
- Point to the digraphs on the page and model the sounds /r/ and /m/.
- Play the audio. Pupils listen and point to the correct object as they hear each word.
- Model the words, emphasising the /r/ and /m/ sounds each time, and ensuring these are clear. Encourage pupils to repeat the words, then point to each picture in turn and have them say the words independently.
- Display teacher-made flashcards or use the whiteboard to show the two new spellings of these sounds. Say the words again in a different sequence and ask pupils to point to the correct spelling each time.
- You may like to point out that the *wr* spelling is used at the start of a word, and the *mb* spelling is used at the end of a word.

## Phonics

- Then ask pupils what they notice about these new spellings. Ask *Can you hear all the letters?* (No). Explain or elicit that the letter *w* is silent in the *wr-* words, and the letter *b* is silent in the *mb* words. Elicit other words which have silent letters, e.g. *night, light, bright*.
- Write the gapped form of the words on the board: \_\_ ite, \_\_ ist, thu \_\_, cli \_\_. Elicit the missing letters as a class to check understanding.

## 7.16

**wr** write, wrist  
**mb** thumb, climb

2  7.17 Listen and say the tongue twister.

(5 minutes)

- Write the digraphs *wr* and *mb* on the board. Look at the picture in Activity 2 with the class and see if pupils can identify any of the items in the picture that contain these spellings.
- Explain that pupils will hear a tongue twister that relates to the picture and that they should point to the items in the picture as they listen. Play the audio.
- Play the audio again and ask the pupils to follow the words in the tongue twister as they listen.
- Play the audio a third time and ask pupils to join in with the tongue twister.
- Check understanding by using your flashcards or the whiteboard to show the two new spellings of the /r/ and /m/ sounds, and asking pupils to say the corresponding words from the tongue twister.
- Repeat the tongue twister as a class until pupils are confident with the language and the pronunciation.

## 7.17

My wrist hurts when I write.  
My thumb hurts when I climb.

3  7.18 Listen and write *wr* or *mb*. (5 minutes)

- Focus on the pictures in Activity 3. Talk about what pupils can see and check understanding of each image.
- Check pupils understand that they need to complete the gapped words with the correct letters. In a stronger class, you can ask them to predict the answers based on what they learned about the initial and final sounds above.
- Play the audio all the way through for pupils to listen and complete each word.
- Play the audio again for pupils to listen and repeat each word, then write each digraph (*wr*, *mb*) on the board and ask pupils to say the words for each one. You can extend this by bringing in the words from Activity 1 as well.

## 7.18

- 1 wrap
- 2 lamb
- 3 wrong
- 4 comb

## 4 Look, write and say. Circle the odd one out.

(5 minutes)

- Focus on Activity 4. Look at each of the pictures and show that there is a writing line below each one. Point out that all these words are covered in the preceding activities.
- Allow time for pupils to write the correct word for each picture, using the words presented in the activities above for support.
- When pupils have finished, work through the row of images in item 1. Encourage the class to say the words in unison, then identify which one is different to the others and circle it.
- Repeat with item 2, or let pupils say the words and circle the odd one out individually, then check their answers.

## Extra activity Collaborative work

- Use the flashcards or the whiteboard to display *r*, *wr*, *m* and *mb*.
- Say a word with one of the spellings, e.g. *run*. Pupils point to the correct letters. When they answer correctly, ask them to say another word with this spelling. Check they are correct, then repeat with more words to practise all of the spellings.
- Focus on the two new spellings, *wr* and *mb*. You could ask pupils to draw and label words for each of these target spellings.

## Activity Book

## Phonics

Lesson 9

- 1 Listen, circle and repeat.



Look at the big little comb!



Can I unwrap the little big box?

Tricky word  
little

- 2 Listen and write. Look and number.

1 Look at the little lamb!

2 She writes little letters.

3 It has little thumbs.

4 He's little. He can't climb!



3



1



4



2

- 3 Look and write. Listen, check and say.

The dolls lived in a little house.  
They used little jars and they  
needed little combs.



46 forty-six

- 1 7.19 Listen, circle and repeat. (3 minutes)

- Start by revising the tricky words that pupils have covered in Units 5 and 6 (*can't, was, were*). You can make flashcards of each word to elicit them orally as a class. Then write sentences containing each word and invite volunteers to read them out.
- Remind pupils that tricky words, which appear frequently in texts, can't be decoded in the same way as other words because not all the letters within these words follow the rules of phonics. Remind them that they should try to memorise tricky words where possible and use phonetic cues, if appropriate, to help them.
- Look at page 46 with the class. Focus on the word at the top of the page and explain that pupils will learn a new tricky word. They may be familiar with this word from other lessons, but they will focus on the sound and spelling here.
- Read out *little* and ask pupils to identify any phonemes that match the spelling (*l, i, t can be decoded*. Pupils have learned double consonants making one sound in Grade 1. The final /əll/ sound for the spelling *le* needs to be learned).
- Look at Activity 1 and ask pupils to look at the pictures and read the options in the sentences below.

- Play the audio for pupils to listen and follow. Ask pupils to circle the correct word in each sentence, then repeat the correct sentences.
- Play the audio again, then put pupils in pairs to practise saying the sentences. Remind them to swap roles so they both have a turn at saying each of the sentences.
- If time allows, ask one or two pairs to say their sentences aloud for the class.

## 7.19

- Look at the little comb!
- Can I unwrap the little box?

- 2 7.20 Listen and write. Look and number. (5 minutes)

- Focus on Activity 2. Ask pupils to quickly look at each of the pictures in turn and think about what they can see. Encourage them to name vocabulary items from the Class Book lesson.
- Then focus on the gapped sentences. Play the audio for the first item and ask pupils to listen and complete.
- Then ask pupils to look at the pictures again and choose which one matches the sentence (b).
- Play the rest of the audio, pausing for pupils to complete the sentences then look and number the pictures.
- Check answers by dividing the class in half. For each item, ask one half to read out the sentence, and the other half to say the correct letter for the picture.

## 7.20

- Look at the little lamb!
- She writes little letters.
- It has little thumbs.
- He's little. He can't climb!

- 3 7.21 Look and write. Listen, check and say. (4 minutes)

- Look at Activity 3 with the class. Explain that in this section, pupils will practise writing the tricky word again in a longer text.
- First, look at the picture. Ask pupils to talk about what they can see and check understanding of the scene. Ask *Is it a big house or a little house?* Confirm that it is little, and allow time for pupils to write the word in the space.
- Let pupils complete the rest of the text individually, then play the audio to confirm the answers.
- Ask pupils to practise the sentences in pairs, then repeat as a class.

**7.21**

The dolls lived in a little house.  
They used little jars and they needed little combs.

**Finishing the lesson** (3 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the picture in Activity 3 again and think of another sentence they could write about it using the word *little*. They could use other revised tricky words, e.g. *The dolls were little*, or revise words from the phonics lesson, e.g. *The dolls had little thumbs*.



# Review

## Lesson 10, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to review unit language
- **Target language:** unit vocabulary

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Speaking:** Can read aloud a short, simple story in a way that can be understood (GSE 35).
- **Reading:** Can understand a simple text about a past event (GSE 38).
- **Writing:** Can write about past activities using simple language, given a model (GSE 40)

### Materials

- Unit 7 flashcards (historical finds and verbs)
- Unit 7 poster: Historical finds
- notebooks
- photocopiable 79

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique (see page 14)
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

## Lesson 10, part 1

### Starting the lesson (2 minutes)

- Use the Key question technique (see page 14) to ask pupils about historical sites: *Why is it important to keep museums and historical sites?* Accept all reasonable answers.

### Presentation (8 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will do revision of the unit vocabulary and then play a game.
- Revise the historical finds words using the Unit 7 flashcards (historical finds) or poster. Ask pupils to spell the words.
- Hide the Unit 7 flashcards (verbs) around the room and have eight pupils find one card and then ask a question in the Past simple with *When*. The pupils who found the card chooses one or two volunteers to answer.

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 10, part 1 Review **7**

**1 Complete the sentences. Use the past simple.**

- 1 My dad **worked** (work) at the supermarket three years ago.
- 2 I **started** (start) playing tennis when I was five.
- 3 Muna **stopped** (stop) playing basketball because of her broken leg.
- 4 I **needed** (need) to buy butter and sugar for my sister's birthday cake. **didn't need** (not/need) to buy eggs.
- 5 What **did Ammar** (Ammar/use) to look for coins in the ground?  
**use**

My dad worked at the supermarket three years ago.

**2 Complete the story with the correct form of the verbs. Then use the pictures to tell the story.**

Rasha was very excited! Today was her first day helping at the museum. She (1) **arrived** (arrive) at 8 o'clock and (2) **started** (start) her work outside. She (3) **used** (use) a small brush to look for things in the ground. There was a big brush, too, but she (4) **didn't need** (not/need) it. In one part of the ground there was a (5) , and a (6) . In another part there were some (7) and some (8) . **5 wall 6 sword 7 coins 8 jewellery**

Rasha (9) **started** (start) talking to another girl. Her name was Rawan. 'When (10) **did you start** (you/start) working here?' asked Rawan. 'Today! And I love it!' answered Rasha.

**Challenge**

Challenge your classmates and play the game!

**Work in two teams. Look back through the unit to find the answers to these questions.**

- 1 Find a boy with a sword. (1 point) **p.58**
- 2 What was the name of the man at the museum? (1 point) **Mr Hazim**
- 3 How old were the coins in Sinaw? (1 point) **1,400 years old**

**Now think of three more questions to ask the other team.**

Activity Book, Unit 7  
Lesson 10, part 2 sixty-nine 69

### 1 Complete the sentences. Use the Past simple. (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 69. Place pupils in pairs to complete the activity. Explain that they have to use the Past simple form of the verbs in brackets.
- Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### Diversity

#### Challenge and Support

- You can place stronger pupils with pupils that need support for this activity. The new language has been revised several times so stronger pupils can help increase the confidence of pupils who need support.

### 2 Complete the story with the correct form of the verbs. Then use the pictures to tell the story. (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to tell you the first two answers and write them on the board. Point out that the words they need to use are in the pictures or (brackets).
- Pupils work individually and check in pairs.
- Ask different pairs to tell the class their answers by spelling them as you write them on the board.

# Review

## Extra activity Fast finishers

- Ask pupils to write the answers on the board as the others finish. Have pupils check each other's work.

## Extra activity Critical thinking

- Pairs make a picture and verb puzzle like the one in Activity 2 with the words from the unit in their notebooks. They then swap work with another pair and solve each other's puzzles.

## Challenge (15 minutes)

### Challenge your classmates and play the game!

- Choose team A and team B. Decide on a time limit.
- Each team finds the answers to questions 1–3.
- Pupils work in pairs within their team. They write three interesting questions for the other team.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Put pupils in pairs. Have them look back through the unit and write two more questions. Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Ask them to swap questions with another pair and answer each other's questions.

## Lesson 10, part 2

### Starting the lesson (2 minutes)

- Place the Unit 7 poster on the board. Point to an historical object and, using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), choose a pupil to say and spell the word.

## Practice

### Activity Book

- Look, read and complete the text.** (3 minutes)
  - Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to check pupils know what to do. Pupils do the activity individually. Tell pupils to read the whole text through before trying to answer.
  - They then compare answers with a partner.
- Write about a costume workshop. Use the words in the box.** (5 minutes)
  - Pupils complete the activity individually.
  - Have pupils use the text in Activity 1 as a template. Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
  - Put pupils in pairs. Ask them to check each other's work.
  - Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to choose pupils to read aloud their texts.

## Extra activity Collaborative work


- Pairs design and draw a costume in their notebooks and present it to another pair.

Lesson 10, part 2 Review 7

**1 Look, read and complete the text.**

**Jewellery workshop**

We arrived (arrive) at 10 o'clock in the morning and started (start) our workshop. First we used (use) (1) clay to make some (2) jewellery. We didn't use (not use) (3) stone because it was more difficult. We worked (work) for two hours and then we stopped (stop) for thirty minutes. We didn't play (not play) football, but we skipped (skip) in the playground. Then we painted (paint) our (2) jewellery and tidied up (tidy up) the room. We finished (finish) at 2 o'clock. My (4) ring and my (5) necklace were really beautiful!



**2 Write about a costume workshop. Use the words in the box.**

silver sword stone khanjar dress wood

**COSTUME WORKSHOP**

We arrived at \_\_\_\_\_

First we used \_\_\_\_\_

We worked for \_\_\_\_\_

Then we \_\_\_\_\_

We finished at \_\_\_\_\_. My \_\_\_\_\_ was/were really \_\_\_\_\_

**Self-assessment**

My work in Unit 7 is OK good excellent.

My favourite lesson is the one about \_\_\_\_\_

Now I can \_\_\_\_\_

I need to work more on \_\_\_\_\_

forty-seven 47

## Self-assessment (2 minutes)

- Pupils do the activity individually.

## Extra practice

### Activity Book

- Read and write.** (3 minutes)
  - Pupils work individually and check in pairs.
  - Write pupils' answers on the board in categories.
- Can you think of more words for each category in Activity 1?** (3 minutes)
  - Pupils complete the activity in pairs.
- Find and circle eight verbs and write them in the Past simple.** (2 minutes)
  - Pupils complete the activity individually. Check answers as a class.
- Complete the sentences. Use the Past simple.** (3 minutes)
  - Pupils complete the activity in pairs.

- 5 Answer the questions. (2 minutes)
- Pupils take turns to ask and answer in pairs.

**Extra practice** Lesson 10, part 2

1 Read and write.

silver jewellery jar coins ring stone  
khanjar clay necklace sword well walls

- I can wear it: jewellery, ring, sword, khanjar, necklace
- I can use it to make things: silver, clay, stone
- I can pay with it: coins
- I can put water in it: jar
- Around my house there are: walls
- I can find water in it: well

2 Can you think of more words for each category in Activity 1?

- T-shirt
- wood
- banknotes
- glass
- windows
- lake

3 Find and circle eight verbs and write them in the Past simple.

work stop open use a head pick live arrive visit dress start

- worked
- stopped
- used
- needed
- lived
- arrived
- visited
- started

4 Complete the sentences. Use the Past simple.

- We watched (watch) a very interesting film yesterday.
- My brother walked (walk) to the beach last weekend.
- I didn't wash (not wash) my mum's car last week.
- Hamed tidied up (tidy up) his room two days ago, but he didn't clean (not clean) the floor.
- You didn't visit (not visit) the museum on Monday.

5 Answer the questions.

- Did you arrive late at school last week? \_\_\_\_\_
- Did you use your pencil to do Activity 1? \_\_\_\_\_
- What time did you start school on Monday? \_\_\_\_\_
- Did you work hard last semester? \_\_\_\_\_

48 forty-eight

Lesson 10, part 2 **Vocabulary and Grammar reference** 7

**Vocabulary**

1 Translate the words into your language. Add more words to the list.

<b>The history of Oman</b>		<b>Materials</b>	
coins	_____	clay	_____
jewellery	_____	silver	_____
jar	_____	stone	_____
khanjar	_____		_____
necklace	_____		_____
ring	_____	<b>Verbs</b>	
sword	_____	arrive	_____
wall	_____	live	_____
	_____	need	_____
	_____	start	_____
	_____	stop	_____
	_____	use	_____
	_____	visit	_____
	_____	work	_____

**Grammar**

2 Read and complete.

did wash like didn't washed

Past simple – Affirmative and negative		
I	<sup>1</sup> <u>washed</u> the car	yesterday.
He/She/It	didn't <sup>2</sup> <u>wash</u> the car	two days ago.
We/You/They		last week.

Past simple – Interrogative and short answers		
Did	I	<sup>3</sup> <u>like</u> those cupcakes?
Yes,	did.	
No,	he/she/it	<sup>4</sup> <u>didn't</u> .
When	we/you/they	play baseball?
	<sup>5</sup> <u>did</u>	

Go to Dictation on page 73. forty-nine 49

**Vocabulary and Grammar reference**

**Activity Book**

**Vocabulary**

- 1 Translate the words into your language. Add more words to the list. (5 minutes)
- Pupils can work in pairs to complete the activity. Ask for feedback and write pupils' ideas on the board.

**Grammar**

- 2 Read and complete. (2 minutes)
- Do the activity as a class and write answers on the board for pupils to check against.

**Dictation (5 minutes)**

- Have pupils turn to page 73 in their Activity Book.
- Play the audio for pupils to individually listen and write the sentences.
- Check the answers as a class.

**7.22**

- 1 We played football yesterday.
- 2 When did you visit the museum?
- 3 You should work very slowly and carefully.

**Finishing the lesson (3 minutes)**

- Write on the board, *In Unit 7, I can ... , I am good at ... , I am not very good at ...* . Pupils copy the sentences into their notebooks and complete them with their own evaluations.

**Extra activity Photocopiable 79**

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 79.

# Get ready for ...

## Lesson 11

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to practise for the A1 Movers Speaking Parts 3 and 4, and Listening Part 3
- **Target language:** unit vocabulary and grammar

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can understand the main information in short, simple dialogues about familiar activities, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 35).
- **Speaking:** Can describe basic differences between two pictures showing familiar activities, using simple language (GSE 39). Can give simple reasons to explain preferences, given a model (GSE 35).

### Materials

- Face response cards

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Happy/sad face technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Play the song from Lesson 4, page 63 (track 7.8). Divide pupils into groups. They sing the song in their groups.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will practise for the A1 Movers Speaking Exam in the Class Book and the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Exam in the Activity Book.

### Practice

#### Class Book

- 1 **Which picture is different? Why? Tick (✓) and say.** (10 minutes)
  - Tell pupils that this is the A1 Movers Speaking Part 3 exam.
  - Read the Exam tip to pupils before they complete the activity.
  - Look at Activity 1 together. Ask pupils to say what they see in each picture. Elicit pupils' ideas about why A, B and D are the same and C is different.

- Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14). Listen to each pupil individually.
- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils if they found the activity difficult and if so, why.





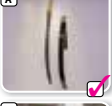






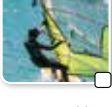



Lesson 11

### Get ready for...

#### A1 Movers Speaking Part 3

**Exam** Make sure you explain how one picture is different. Those are foods, but that's an animal. In those pictures the children are playing sports, but in that picture they are singing.

**1** **Which picture is different? Why? Tick (✓) and say.**

1				
2				
3				
4				

#### A1 Movers Speaking Part 4

**2** **Let's talk about museums! Answer the questions.**

- 1 What do you do in a museum? In a museum, you ... My favourite museum is ...
- 2 What's your favourite museum? I like it because ...
- 3 Why do you like it?

70 seventy Activity Book, Unit 7 Lesson 11

### 2 **Let's talk about museums! Answer the questions.** (10 minutes)

- Tell pupils that this is the A1 Movers Speaking Part 4 exam. Give pupils a minute to think about what they want to say.
- Put pupils in pairs and have them ask and answer the questions.

#### Extra activity TPR

- Using the Happy/sad face technique (see page 14), pupils react to your questions, e.g. *How much did you like Activity 1? Was it easy, OK or difficult? How much did you like Activity 2? Was it easy, OK or difficult?*

#### Activity Book

### 1 **Think!** Look at the pictures in Activity 2 and match. Use the letters A–H. (5 minutes)

- Tell pupils that this is the A1 Movers Listening Part 3 exam.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

## Get ready for...


Lesson 11

## A1 Movers Listening Part 3

**Think!** 1 Look at the pictures in Activity 2 and match. Use the letters A–H.


go windsurfing (E)      go climbing (C)      play chess (A)  
 learn arts and crafts (G)      play computer games (B)      go canoeing (H)  
 travel by train (F)      visit a museum (D)

**Do!** 2 Listen and write a letter in each box.

1 Abdullah (me)	A		B	
2 my grandma	D		D	
3 my aunt	H		F	
4 my uncle	C		H	
5 my cousins	G			
6 my brother	F			

50 fifty

**2 Do!**  **7.23 Listen and write a letter in each box.** (5 minutes)

- Tell pupils to look carefully at the pictures first.
-  Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

## 7.23

**Woman:** Abdullah is telling Rasha about the people in his family. What did each person do last summer holiday?

**Boy:** Hello, Rasha.

**Girl:** Hello, Abdullah. How was your weekend?

**Boy:** It was fun! I was with my family at my grandma's house in the mountains. We talked about our summer holidays. My grandma visited a museum in Muscat and she loved it.

**Girl:** Wow! How interesting!

**Boy:** My family loves travelling.

**Girl:** Cool!

**Boy:** My uncle Ahmed loves sports.

**Girl:** What's his favourite sport?

**Boy:** Well, he loves playing tennis, but he didn't play tennis this summer. He visited Jebel Misht and climbed the highest mountain.

**Girl:** Really? It must be dangerous.

**Boy:** My aunt was there too.

**Girl:** Did she climb the mountain too?

**Boy:** Well she loves mountains, but she's scared of climbing.

**Girl:** So what did she do?

**Boy:** She loves water sports, so she went canoeing in the sea. She enjoyed it a lot.

**Girl:** What about your cousins?

**Boy:** My cousins were at a summer holiday camp.

**Girl:** Really? I love summer camps.

**Boy:** Yes, they were very busy.

**Girl:** What did they do? Did they play any exciting sports?

**Boy:** No, they didn't. They learned a lot of arts and crafts. They loved it. I've also got an older brother, Yasir.

**Girl:** Yes, I know him. What did he do?

**Boy:** He travelled around Europe with his best friend. They went by train.

**Girl:** Really? How exciting!

**Boy:** They were in Paris, Amsterdam, Berlin ... They slept in a tent and carried everything in their backpacks. What an adventure!

**Girl:** And what about you?

**Boy:** Me? Hmm, well, I can't say my holiday was exciting!

**Girl:** Why not?


**Boy:** I was in bed most of the summer with a broken leg!

**Girl:** Really? And what did you do?

Did you play a lot of computer games?

**Boy:** No, I didn't. I played a lot of chess. My parents play chess very well, so we played every day.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask How did you get on in Unit 7? *What did you like best? Which words were the most difficult to remember? Do you understand the grammar? What would you like to learn more about?*
-  Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask how successful pupils' learning is so far and, on a scale of 1–5, have them rate how much they enjoyed this unit.

### Shared reading Unit 7

- Focus a lesson on shared reading with the class. Follow procedures as set out in the Teacher's Book Introduction (see page 17).

### Unit 7 practice

- Pupils now complete the Unit 7 practice. Give pupils support where necessary and focus time on areas where pupils commonly needed extra help. Praise pupils for their hard work.



# Optional lesson

## Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to revise unit language with fun tasks
- **Target language:** revision of unit language





## Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can recognise single, familiar everyday words if supported by pictures (GSE 21). Can understand basic factual statements relating to pictures or simple texts (GSE 30).
- **Speaking:** Can name everyday objects, animals or people around them or in pictures using single words (GSE 18). Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41). Can talk about a familiar place in a basic way (GSE 35).

## Materials

- Unit 7 flashcards
- Unit 7 poster: Historical finds
- spinner
- pencil


## Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Monitoring pupils' learning: Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
-  Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Expert envoy technique (see page 15)
-  Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Brainstorm all the verbs and themes of the unit with the class. Use the Unit 7 flashcards or poster as prompts to remind pupils of the verbs. Ask them to say the past tense of each verb.

## Presentation (2 minutes)

-  Explain that in this lesson pupils will use a calendar to compare two people and then complete sentences based on pictures. Ask them to look at the page and see if they can work out what to do.

## Practice

### Class Book

Fun corner

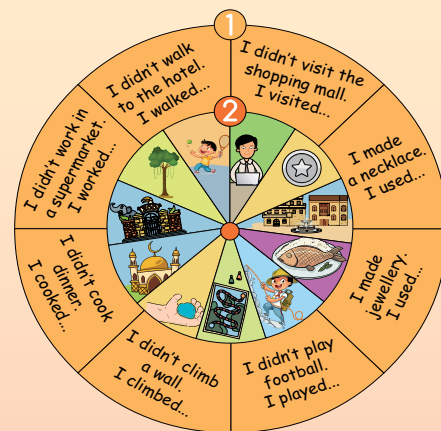
7

#### 1 Copy the calendar.

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
Morning	Morning	Morning	Morning	Morning	Morning	Morning
Evening	Evening	Evening	Evening	Evening	Evening	Evening

Last week, I didn't visit the museum. I visited the zoo.

#### 2 Play and say.



Activity Book, Unit 7

Fun corner


seventy-one

71

#### 1 Copy the calendar. (5 minutes)

- Tell pupils to copy the calendar into their notebooks before they begin.

#### 2 Play and say. (10 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the pictures and identify the places and activities. Ask them which of the activities they enjoy doing.
- Explain the rules to pupils. Pupils take turns to spin a pencil and complete a sentence based on a picture they choose from the inside circle of the spinner. Explain that pupils read the incomplete sentences from the outer circle on the spinner, and then complete them with an activity from the inner circle of the spinner to make correct sentences. For each correct sentence, pupils put a tick in one section of their calendar. The first player to tick each section of their calendar (14 ticks) wins.
-  Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to check pupils know what they have to do.

## Activity Book

**Fun corner** 7

**1 Play and say.**

1 On Friday morning

2 On Friday afternoon

3 On Friday evening

4 On Saturday morning

5 On Saturday afternoon

6 On Saturday evening

7 On Monday morning

On Friday morning, I played tennis.

**2 Write about you. Then act the sentence. Can your partner guess?**

On Saturday afternoon, I \_\_\_\_\_

played basketball?

Yes!

fifty-one 51

**Finishing the lesson** (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask what pupils have learnt today. Ask *Did you enjoy the Fun corner? Which activity did you like the most?*

**1 Play and say.** (10 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the pictures and to identify the activities.
- Place pupils in pairs. Ask them to look at the example. Explain that they take turns to follow the jumbled lines and say a sentence using the Past simple.
- Use the Expert envoy technique (see page 15) to help pupils who haven't understood what they have to do.
- Monitor pupils, helping when necessary.
- Check the answers as a class.

**2 Write about you. Then act the sentence. Can your partner guess?** (5 minutes)

- Place pupils in pairs. One pupil acts out what they did for the other to guess. Once they guess correctly, they swap roles. Make different pairs and have them play again.

# Graded readers 1 and 2

## Lessons 1–2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to review the phonics and language from Unit 7
- **Target language:** *ancient, castle, well (n.), eraser, comb, drop, deep, khanjar, quickly, carefully; They learned a lot about the past. What should we do? This sword is more important than my comb. We should show it to our teacher.*
- **Phonics:** *wr, mb*
- **Tricky word:** *little*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can extract factual information from short, simple dialogues or stories about past events if spoken slowly and clearly and guided by questions or prompts (GSE 39).
- **Speaking:** Can read aloud a short, simple story in a way that can be understood (GSE 35).
- **Reading:** Can follow simple dialogues in short illustrated stories, if they can listen while reading (GSE 26). Can identify specific information in a simple story, if guided by questions (GSE 35).



### Learning outcomes

- **Listening:** Demonstrate an awareness of intonation patterns when listening; Listen and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics; Listen and identify familiar words, set phrases and specific information in short, simple texts on familiar topics; Identify core vocabulary.
- **Speaking:** Retell simple stories, personal experiences and events using a range of familiar words, set phrases and expressions; Act out part of a picture story, short dialogue or role play.
- **Reading:** Decode unfamiliar words by using phonemic awareness and blending strategies when reading; Read and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics; Read frequently encountered words with ease; Recognize the effect of punctuation when reading; Make basic inferences from simple information in short texts.

### Materials

- Unit 7 flashcards
- the Big Book

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)


-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

## Lesson 1, option A

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Explain that the next story is about a visit to a castle where pupils learn about the past. Ask pupils if they would like to live in a castle. Ask *What would be different?*

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Look at page 72 with the class. Ask pupils what they can see. Read the story title *The Deep Well* and ask pupils what they think the story will be about.
-  Explain that pupils will now participate in a shared reading activity where you will all enjoy a story together using The Big Book. Explain that some of the words from Unit 7 will feature in the story. Ensure that they are sitting comfortably, and in a position where they can see the text and the pictures easily.

### Before reading (5 minutes)

- Prepare pupils for the tricky word they will encounter in the story by writing it on the board to practise together (*little*).
- Write *Look at the little lamb* on the board. Encourage pupils to do some speed reading while you point to each word. Remind them to use phonetic cues and visual memory strategies.

**During reading** (15 minutes)

**Class Book**

**Graded reader 1**

# The Deep Well

On Tuesday, the class visited an ancient castle. They learned a lot about the castle in the past. They started to write about it.



**Graded reader 1** 7

Rahaf needed her eraser. It was in her bag. There was also a little comb in her bag. When Rahaf opened her bag, she dropped the comb in the deep well.



**Graded reader 1**

Rahaf and Rashid looked in the well. It was very deep. What was at the bottom of the well?



Rahaf and Rashid worked quickly and carefully.

74 seventy-four

**Graded reader 1** 7

It was an ancient khanjar! A man dropped it in the well many years ago.



## Graded readers 1 and 2

- Begin reading the story to the pupils. Look at the pupils while you read and keep a good pace. Give time for the pupils to enjoy the story, pausing to allow them to predict what might happen next. Read expressively, changing your voice for different characters, and use facial expressions and different volume levels when appropriate. Ensure that pupils look at the pictures to help them understand the story.
- Pause at the end of each page and take time to ask questions to check understanding and then encourage pupils to make predictions about what will happen next. After reading page 72 to the pupils, ask *Where are the class? (At a castle.); Did they learn a lot? (Yes.); What did people use to make the castle? (Stone and clay.). Is there a well? (Yes.).*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- After reading page 73 to the pupils, ask *What did Rahaf need and where was it? (An eraser; it was in her bag.); What else was also in her bag? (A little comb.); What happened to the comb? (She dropped it into the well.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 74: *Was the well deep? (Yes.); What do you think was at the bottom of the well? (Pupils' own answers.); Can Rashid see the comb? (Yes.); What else can he see? (A khanjar.); Did Rahaf and Rashidi work quickly and carefully? (Yes.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 75: *What did they find? (An ancient khanjar.); Who dropped it in the well? (A man.); Which is more important – the comb or the sword?; (Pupils' own answers.); Who do they think they should show it to? (The teacher.): Where do they think the sword should go? ( A museum.)*

### Post reading (5 minutes)


- Write *There was a little comb in her bag* on the board. Ask pupils if they can identify a tricky word in the sentence and circle it (*little*).
- Encourage pupils to read whole sentence with support.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write the phonic spellings on the board: *wr, mb*.
- Ask pupils to find words in the story that contain these spellings (*write, comb*). Segment each word and write them on the board below each heading and point to them for pupils to read. See if pupils can add other words to each list.

## Lesson 2, option A



### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

-  Ask pupils to work in pairs. They tell each other what they can remember about the story *The Deep Well*.
- Ask pairs to share what they can remember with the class.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Say sentences from the story, but include some mistakes. If the sentence is correct, pupils do not do anything. If there is a mistake, they clap. Encourage them to correct the mistakes.
- Say sentences from the speech bubbles. Pupils say who said it.

### Act the story (25 minutes)

-  First, ask pupils to work in pairs. They take it in turns to read a sentence from the story. Go around and offer help as they do this.
-  Now divide the class into groups of three (Rashid, Rahaf, narrator). Explain that they are going to act out the story. Ask pupils to choose a part to play, or you can allocate roles. Explain that the narrator will read the story as the others act, and will help the actors with prompts if they forget or do not know what to say.
- Give pupils time to practise their roles.
- When they are ready, groups take turns to perform the story to the class.
- Encourage the class to clap at the end.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils if they liked the story. Give them a few minutes to evaluate it and encourage them to think about what they liked and didn't like, what they thought of the characters, whether they were able to read the words and whether they understood of the plot.
- Ask pupils which character was their favourite and encourage them to give reasons for their answers.



## Lesson 1, option B

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Review the phonics from Unit 7. Write *wr*, *mb* on the board. Ask pupils to say any words they can remember with these sounds.
- Use the Unit 7 flashcards and poster to revise the vocabulary for historical finds. If you're using the poster, choose a pupil to come and tap on the picture of the word you say.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Look at page 76 with the class. Read the story title *A Special Jar*. Ask pupils what they think the story will be about. Ask them if they have ever made a jar or anything else from clay.
- Explain that pupils will now participate in a shared reading activity where you will all enjoy a story together. Explain that some of the words from Unit 7 will feature in the story. Ensure that they are sitting comfortably and in a position where they can see the text and the pictures easily.

### Before reading (5 minutes)

- Prepare pupils for the tricky word they will encounter in the story by writing it on the board to practise together (*little*). You can also present the words *traditional*, *ancient*, *fingers*, *thumbs*, *soft*, *wet*.

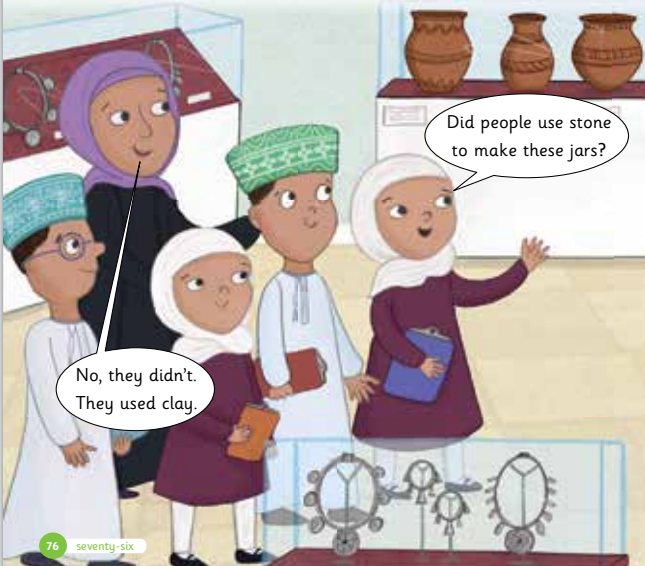
## During reading (15 minutes)

### Class Book

Graded reader 2

## A Special Jar


On Wednesday, the class visited the museum. They arrived at ten o'clock. First, they looked at some traditional jewellery. Then they looked at some ancient jars.



76 seventy-six

Graded reader 2 7

At school on Thursday, the children did a fun activity. They used clay to make their own little jars.



77 seventy-seven

## Graded readers 1 and 2

**Graded reader 2**

Nassra and Saif finished their jars first. They didn't need all the clay. There was lots of clay on the table.

Wow, we worked quickly today. What should we do now?

We shouldn't stop now. Look at this clay. I've got an idea!

78 seventy-eight

**Graded reader 2** 7

Nassra and Saif worked together to make a special jar for their teacher. They wanted to thank her for the visit to the museum. The teacher was very happy.

Thank you. You are very kind! I can put my favourite rings in this jar.

seventy-nine 79

- Begin reading the story to the pupils. Look at the pupils while you read and keep a good pace. Give time for the pupils to enjoy the story, pausing to allow them to predict what might happen next. Read expressively, changing your voice for different characters, and use facial expressions and different volume levels when appropriate. Ensure that pupils look at the pictures to help them understand the story.
- Pause at the end of each page and take time to ask questions to check understanding and then encourage pupils to make predictions about what will happen next. After reading page 76 to the pupils, ask *Where did the class visit? (A museum.); What time did they arrive? (Ten o'clock.); What did they look at first? (Traditional jewellery.); What did they look at next? (Some ancient jars.); Did they use stone to make the jars? (No, they used clay.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 77: *What did the class do on Thursday? (A fun activity.); What did they do? (They used clay to make little jars.); Can they push the clay with their fingers and thumbs? (Yes.); What is clay like? (It's soft and wet.); What has Nassra got on her wrist? (Some clay.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 78: *Who finished their jars first? (Nassra and Saif.); Did they use all the clay? (No.); Where was there lots of clay? (On the table.); Did they work quickly? (Yes.); Should they stop now? (No.) Does Saif have an idea? (Yes.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what Saif's idea is.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 79: *What did Nassra and Saif make? (A special jar for their teacher.); Why did they make it? (They wanted to thank her for the visit to the museum.); Was the teacher happy? (Yes.); What can she use the jar for? (To put her favourite rings in.)*

**Post reading (5 minutes)**

- Write the sentence with *little* from the story on the board. Ask pupils if they can identify the tricky word in the sentence and circle it.
- Encourage pupils to read the whole sentences with support and reinforce the meaning of any sentences you focus on using picture cues, actions and explanations.


**Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)**

- Write the phonic spellings on the board: *wr, mb*.
- Ask pupils to find words in the story that contain these spellings (*wrist, thumbs*). Segment each word and write them on the board below each heading and point to them for pupils to read. See if pupils can add other words to each list.

## Lesson 2, option B

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

---

-  Ask pupils to work in pairs. They tell each other what they can remember about the story *A Special Jar*.
- Ask pairs to share what they can remember with the class.



### Presentation (5 minutes)

---

- Say a sentence from the story, but include some mistakes. If the sentence is correct, pupils do not do anything. If there is a mistake, they clap. Encourage them to correct the mistake.
- Say one of the speech bubbles. Pupils say who said it, the teacher, Saif or Nassra.

### Act the story (25 minutes)

---

-  First, ask pupils to work in pairs. They take it in turns to read a sentence from the story. Go around and offer help as they do this.
-  Now divide the class into groups of three (Saif, Nassra, a narrator). Explain that they are going to act out the story. Ask pupils to choose a part to play, or you can allocate roles. Explain that the narrator will read the story as the others act, and will help the actors with prompts if they forget or do not know what to say.
- Give pupils time to practise their roles.
- When they are ready, groups take turns to perform the story to the class. Encourage them to do the actions as they speak.
- Encourage the class to clap at the end.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

---

- Ask pupils if they liked the story. Give them a few minutes to evaluate it and encourage them to think about what they liked and didn't like, what they thought of the characters, whether they were able to read the words and whether they understood the plot.
- Ask pupils if they think it is important to give gifts to people who do nice things for them.



# Let's celebrate!

## Unit objectives

To talk about celebrations

### Language

<b>Vocabulary</b>	<b>Celebrations:</b> <i>big wheel, buffet, costume, funfair, go-kart, invitation, party, party games, party hat, present, rollercoaster, wedding</i> <b>Ordinal numbers:</b> (for dates) <i>1<sup>st</sup>-31<sup>st</sup> (first-thirty-first)</i>
<b>Grammar</b>	Past simple irregular verbs Affirmative and negative short answers
<b>Functions</b>	Explaining that you lost something: <i>What's the matter? I can't find my bag. When did you last see it? I had it when ...</i>
<b>Phonics</b>	Revision of sounds Revision of tricky words

### Learning outcomes

<b>Listening</b>	Identify ordinal numbers; Recognise basic dates in short, simple texts; Demonstrate an awareness of intonation patterns when listening; Listen and respond to peers and adults; Listen and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics; Listen and identify familiar words, set phrases and specific information in short, simple texts on familiar topics; Listen to join in with songs, chants, jingles, rhymes, tongue twisters and simple dialogues; Respond verbally and non-verbally to short, basic, spoken and aural instructions; Respond to factual and literal questions; Identify core vocabulary; Respond to referential questions based on aural texts; Identify key and specific information in short, simple conversations/dialogues on familiar topics; Demonstrate specific information in short, simple conversations/dialogues
<b>Speaking</b>	State dates using standard formats; Respond verbally to direct questions, offers and visual input; Recite ordinal numbers; Accurately reproduce modelled language; Articulate words and sentences using correct stress, rhythm and intonation; Use basic language structures when speaking; Express ideas using a range of familiar words, set phrases and expressions; Retell simple stories, personal experiences and events using a range of familiar words, set phrases and expressions; Ask and answer questions on familiar topics like daily activities, habits, times and events; Participate in short, simple interactions on familiar topics; Articulate sounds and isolated word forms and connected speech using correct pronunciation; Recite songs, rhymes, chants and tongue twisters individually and chorally; Sing a basic song, rhyme and chant from memory; Act out part of a picture story, short dialogue or role play
<b>Reading</b>	Decode unfamiliar words by using phonemic awareness and blending strategies when reading; Read frequently encountered words with ease; Recognise the effect of punctuation when reading; Read and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics; Read and identify familiar words, set phrases and key information in short, simple factual texts on familiar topics from the headings and illustrations; Answer factual questions about reading material; Extract factual details and specific information in short texts; Make basic inferences from simple information in short texts
<b>Writing</b>	Write a simple invitation, given a model; Arrange scrambled words into sentences; Complete a phrase or sentence by supplying the missing word; Write answers to questions based on reading material; Write simple sentences describing pictures, drawings, or activities, etc., using words from a list; Write clearly formed letters and words; Use phonological awareness and blending strategies to write new words; Construct sentences and questions using correct spacing, capitalization, question marks, apostrophe/simple contractions and full stops based on a model; Write high frequency words correctly; Write legibly and neatly letters in script; Copy words, phrases and sentences accurately;



	Maintain appropriate spacing between letters in a word and between words; Spell frequently used words correctly; Write basic, single clause sentences given a model
<b>Cognitive skills</b>	Use <i>Let's</i> for suggestions; Find uses for created objects or contents (e.g. in a play, story or game); Understand the steps needed to complete the activity; Say if they feel happy with what they have done; Recognise when a task has been completed; Say if a task has been completed well; Try to help solve a problem in the group; Explore different materials and decide what to use (projects); Say whether they like a story, song, or game, and give reasons for their choice/preference; Draw basic pictures to represent vocabulary and familiar concepts; Participate in drama based activities which allow for personal interpretation; Participate in activities that involve taking the role of familiar people; Listen and respond physically to songs, rhymes, chants and jingles; Use own ideas for doing creative activities like colouring, drawing and building to represent vocabulary and familiar concepts; Stay engaged and focused on short tasks, does not get distracted; Match objects, people, letters, pronunciation and words; Guess words from illustrations in storybooks; Recognise the differences between a story and a fact; Understand and carry out basic instructions for class/school; Take personal responsibility for one's own contribution to a group task; Make eye contact with group members; Use gesture and posture inclusively (e.g. sit in a circle, look at other children, wave to other children, point to where they could set); Engage with others to make sense of things around them; Observe rules of games when playing with other children; Take turns in shared activities; Share space and objects; Listen carefully, attend to, and take account of what others say

## Key competences

**Linguistic competence:** use language as an instrument for communication (L. 1–11); find out how other languages figure in English (L. 8)

**Mathematical, science and technological competences:** order sentences or events (L. 2, 6, 8 and 9)

**Digital competence:** use Class Book and Activity Book eBook (L. 1–11); use a child-friendly search engine (L. 2)

**Social and civic competences:** learn to be creative (L. 2, 5, 6, 8 and 10); discuss the value of talking to older family and other community members (L. 2)

**Cultural awareness and expression:** raise awareness of cultural similarities and differences (L. 5)

**Learning to learn:** reflect on what has been learnt and self-evaluate progress (L. 1–11); use previous knowledge (L. 1); follow instructions (L. 1–11); personalisation of language learnt (L. 3, 5 and 8)

**Initiative and entrepreneurship:** choose topic for the project (L. 5)

## Future skills

<b>Critical thinking</b>	Sorting words (L. 1); Predicting (L. 7); Problem solving (L. 2); Logical thinking (L. 1, 2 and 5); Defining and describing (L. 1, 2, 4 and 5); Finding information (L. 1, 2, 3, 6, 7 and 8); Planning (L. 8); Reflecting on learning (L. 1–11)
<b>Creativity</b>	Make a leaflet about special days in Oman (L. 5); Create an invitation to a party (L. 8)
<b>Communication</b>	Describing celebrations (L. 1); Talking about what you have done (L. 3); Describing a crazy day (L. 3); Talking about regional celebrations (L. 5); Talking about birthdays (L. 4); Explaining that you lost something (L. 6); Functional dialogue (L. 6); Challenge game (L. 10)
<b>Collaboration</b>	Project groupwork (L. 5); Act out a story (L. 2 and 10); Create language tasks for other pupils (L. 3); Create a new story or dialogue (L. 2, 6 and 10)

## Evaluation

- Assessment for Learning: throughout the unit (see detailed notes in the lesson plans)
- Self-assessment: Class Book p. 91; Activity Book p. 61
- Unit 8 Extra practice: Activity Book p. 62
- Unit 8 Photocopiable Resources (optional): Vocabulary 1 and 2, Grammar 1 and 2, Communication game, Song, Reading differentiation, Listening differentiation, Culture video, English in Action, CLIL, Self-assessment
- Unit 8 Practice
- Unit 8 End of semester

## External tests

**Class Book**  
A1 Movers Speaking Part 2 and Part 4

**Activity Book**  
A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 1



# Vocabulary

## Lesson 1, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn and use celebration words
- **Target language:** *big wheel, buffet, costume, funfair, go-kart, invitation, party, party games, party hat, present, rollercoaster, wedding*





### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Speaking:** Can give simple reasons to explain preferences, given a model (GSE 35).
- **Writing:** Can label simple pictures related to familiar topics by copying single words (GSE 16). Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32). Can write short, basic descriptions of everyday activities, given prompts or a model (GSE 35).

### Materials

- Unit 8 flashcards (*big wheel, buffet, costume, funfair, go-kart, invitation, party, party games, party hat, present, rollercoaster, wedding*)
- Unit 8 poster: Celebrations
- stopwatch
- 12 slips of paper per group
- photocopyable 44

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)


-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
-  Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
-  Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 1, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Write *Let's celebrate!* on the board. Explain the meaning if necessary. Ask *What do you celebrate?*

### Presentation (2 minutes)

-  Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to talk about parties and funfairs.

## Practice

### Class Book






## 8 Let's celebrate!

1  How many celebration words do you know?

What is Lottie drinking? **lemonade**  
 What watersport can you see? **sailing**  
 What doesn't belong in the picture?  
**the green snake**

1  How many celebration words do you know? (5 minutes)

-  Refer pupils to page 80. Have them describe the picture in pairs, telling each other where the people in the picture are and what they are doing, and naming any objects, clothes and food that they know.
-   Place pupils in the same pairs. With the stopwatch, explain that they have one minute to answer the questions together.
- Check answers as a class.

Lesson 1, part 1 **Vocabulary** 8

2 Listen, point and repeat.

1 funfair	2 big wheel	3 rollercoaster	4 present
5 wedding	6 buffet	7 go-kart	8 invitation
9 party	10 party games	11 costume	12 party hat

3 Look for the words from Activity 2 in the picture on page 80. Write the missing word. wedding

4 Ask and answer. Sort the words: party or funfair?

Wedding.

Party.

party: 4, 5, 6, 8–12;  
funfair: 1–3, 7

5 In pairs, ask and answer.

- What's your favourite funfair ride?
- What's your favourite thing to do at a party?
- Were you at a party last year?

My favourite funfair ride is the ...

Activity Book, Unit 8  
Lesson 1, part 2 eighty-one 81

- 3 Look for the words from Activity 2 in the picture on page 80. Write the missing word. (5 minutes)
- Give pupils one minute to find the celebration words and then write what's missing. Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).
- 4 Ask and answer. Sort the words: party or funfair? (5 minutes)
- Place pupils in pairs to test each other.

### Diversity

#### Support

- Reuse the words on the slips in the Critical thinking activity. Pupils can use these slips again to help them before speaking.

#### Challenge

- In pairs, pupils draw and label a picture that contains all the words. Explain that this can help them learn new words. Pupils can describe their pictures to the class.

- 5 In pairs, ask and answer. (5 minutes)
- In pairs, pupils ask and answer the questions. Then ask pupils to tell the class one thing about their partner.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Pupils close their books and work in pairs. Give them one minute to write down the celebration words.
- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *How many words did you remember? How are you going to remember them?*

## 2 8.1 Listen, point and repeat. (10 minutes)

- Place the Unit 8 flashcards (celebrations) or poster on the board. Point to each picture and say the word. Pupils repeat after you.
- Play the audio.
- Tell pupils to look at the pictures and ask *Where can you find presents, at a party or at a funfair? (Party.); What games/activities are the children doing? What party games do you play/know? What celebrations or events do you and your family get invitations for? What was your favourite costume when you were younger? And now? When do you and your family go to a party? Do you wear party hats? Where can you go on a big wheel or a rollercoaster? (A funfair.); How do they make you feel?*
- Have pupils say a celebration word to their partners and their partner points to the correct picture. Then they swap.

### 8.1

1 funfair 2 big wheel 3 rollercoaster 4 present  
5 wedding 6 buffet 7 go-kart 8 invitation  
9 party 10 party games 11 costume 12 party hat

### Extra activity Critical thinking

- In groups, pupils write each word from Activity 2 on slips of paper and sort the words into categories.

# Vocabulary

## Lesson 1, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Show pupils a Unit 8 flashcard or point to an item on the poster and say the word. If it is incorrect, they have to correct you. Play for a few rounds.

### Practice

#### Activity Book

Lesson 1, part 2

## 8 Let's celebrate!

### Vocabulary

**1** Look at the Class Book page 80 and write sentences about the picture.

cupcakes elephant costume lake rollercoaster

- There are cupcakes on the table at the party.
- There's a girl wearing an elephant costume at the party.
- There's a lake near/behind the big wheel.
- There's a rollercoaster at the funfair.

**2** Find, circle and write the words.

1 birthday      2 funfair      3 party

**3** Listen and complete.

- Muna's got an invitation.
- It's for Maha's birthday party.
- Muna can wear a costume.
- They can play party games.
- They can go to the funfair in town.

**I'm learning**

Your family photos can help you remember new words. Find photos from different celebrations and check how many people or things you can name in English. You can also find new words in a dictionary.

52 fifty-two

### 8.2

- 1 Girl:** Hi, Dad! Look!  
**Man:** What have you got there, Muna?  
**Girl:** It's an invitation.
- 2 Man:** Oh, it looks very nice. What is it for?  
**Girl:** It's Maha's birthday party. She's one of my best friends at school.  
**Man:** And how old is she?  
**Girl:** She's ten next Sunday.
- 3 Dad:** What kind of party is it?  
**Girl:** It's a fancy-dress party. We can wear a costume!  
**Man:** And what are you wearing?  
**Girl:** I'm wearing my new elephant dress!  
**Man:** Wow!
- 4 Girl:** The invitation says we can play a lot of party games.  
**Man:** Wonderful! You like party games.  
**Girl:** Yes, I'm so excited.
- 5 Girl:** But do you know the best of all, Dad?  
**Man:** Tell me...  
**Girl:** That we can go to the funfair in town!  
**Man:** Lucky you!

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Pupils close their books and work in pairs. Give them one minute to write down the celebration words.
- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions (see page 15) to ask *How many words did you remember? How are you going to remember them?*

#### Extra activity Photocopiable 44

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 44.

### 1 Look at the Class Book page 80 and write sentences about the picture. (10 minutes)

- Pupils have one minute to complete the activity. Then they check their answers with their partners.

### 2 Find, circle and write the words. (10 minutes)

- Pupils work individually and check in pairs.
- Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### 3 8.2 Listen and complete. (10 minutes)

- Play the audio and ask pupils to complete the sentences. Play the audio again if necessary.
- Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).
- Pupils work in groups on the *I'm learning* box in their Activity Books with images found from the internet.

# Story

## Lesson 2, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to listen to/watch a story
- **Target language:** revision of celebrations vocabulary; ordinal numbers





### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can follow simple dialogues in short illustrated stories, if they can listen while reading (GSE 26). Can identify specific information in a simple story, if guided by questions (GSE 35). Can make basic inferences from simple information in a short text (GSE 40).
- **Speaking:** Can act out parts of a picture story using simple actions and words (GSE 30).

### Materials


- coloured pencils
- photocopiable 52

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)


-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14)
-  Peer learning: groupwork; pairwork
-  Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 2, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

-  Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), ask pupils to say one celebration word each from Lesson 1.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

-  Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to or watch a story.

## Practice

### Class Book

**Story**

**1** Before you read How many funfair words can you find? **big wheel**

**2** Watch or listen and read.

Look, there's a birthday party! They're taking photos. It's the boy's tenth birthday.

**The lost camera**

Were there funfairs when you were young, Grandma? Yes, there were! I love funfairs!

Me, too!

We didn't take photos with our phones in the past. We took them with a camera.

Bo, what are you doing? I'm finding metal things with my metal detector!

Grandma, have you still got photos from when you were young?

That's great, but can you find things quietly?

Yes, I have! Do you want to come and see them?

At Grandma and Grandad's house ...

Wow! You have lots of photos!

These are photos of a family party. It was my twenty-first birthday. I wore a new dress. We drank juice and ate delicious food. The next day we went to the beach.

82 eighty-two

### 1 Before you read How many funfair words can you find? (2 minutes)

- Refer pupils to pages 82 and 83.
- Ask them to look through the story quickly and see how many funfair words they can find.

### 2 Watch or listen and read. (10 minutes)

- Play the audio or the video.
- Check comprehension with questions, e.g. *What does Bo's metal detector do? (Finds things made of metal, e.g. iron, silver or gold); What did they use to take photos in the past? (A camera.); Has Grandma got photos from when she was young? (Yes, she has.); How old was Grandma at the family party? (21); What did Grandma wear at the party? (A new dress.); What did Grandma and Grandad do at the party? (They drank juice and ate delicious food.); Where did Grandma and Grandad go the next day? (To the beach.); What happened to the camera? (They lost it.); Did the camera have the internet? (No, it didn't.); Where was the camera? (In the wardrobe in frame 9).*



# Story

## 8.3

### The lost camera

- 1 Fatma:** Were there funfairs when you were young, Grandma?
- Grandma:** Yes, there were! I love funfairs!
- Fatma:** Me, too!
- 2 Lottie:** Look, there's a birthday party! They're taking photos. It's the boy's tenth birthday.
- Grandad:** We didn't take photos with our phones in the past. We took them with a camera.
- 3 Sami:** Bo, what are you doing?
- Bo:** I'm finding metal things with my metal detector!
- Sami:** That's great, but can you find things quietly?
- 4 Fatma:** Grandma, have you still got photos from when you were young?
- Grandma:** Yes, I have! Do you want to come and see them?
- 5 Narrator:** *At Grandma and Grandad's house...*
- Fatma:** Wow! You have lots of photos!
- 6 Grandma:** These are photos of a family party. It was my twenty-first birthday. I wore a new dress. We drank juice and ate delicious food. The next day we went to the beach.
- 7 Grandad:** But we lost the camera a few years later.
- Sami:** Oh, no!
- 8 Fatma:** What was your camera like, Grandma? Did it have the internet?
- Grandma:** No, it didn't. We didn't have the internet then at all ... What's that noise?
- 9 Sami:** What's this?
- 10 Grandma:** That's my camera! Wow! After all those years! Well done, Discovery Team!

### Diversity

#### Support

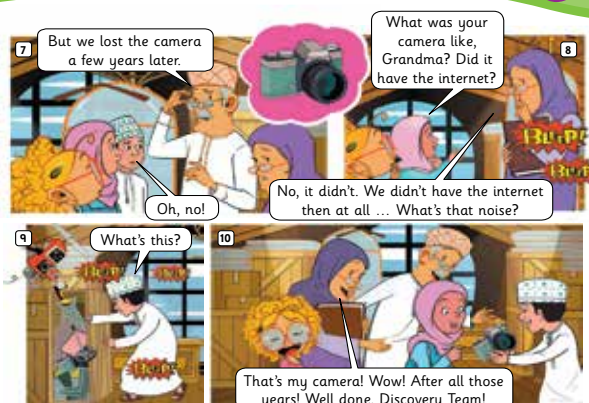
- Pre-teach words that pupils might have problems with, e.g. *past, metal, quietly, dress, noise, etc.*

#### Challenge

- Before pupils open their books, tell them the title of the story. Pupils predict what might happen using the information they have from the picture in Lesson 1.

### Lesson 2, part 1

8



- 3** Which is Grandma's photo? Go to page 106 to find out.
- 4** After you read Circle the correct word. Then order the sentences to retell the story.
- a Bo finds Grandma's photos **camera** house. 6
- b Bo is looking for stone **metal** clay things. 2
- c The children are in the park at a wedding **funfair** party. 1
- d Grandad tells the children about the lost **camera** photos clothes. 5
- e **Grandma** Grandad Lottie went to a family party and to the beach. 4
- f Grandma shows the children her shoes **camera** photos. 3
- 5** Act out the story.
- 6** In pairs or small groups, design a new phone camera. Then have a class vote and choose:
- the most beautiful
  - the most original
  - the funniest design

Activity Book, Unit 8  
Lesson 2, part 2 eighty-three 83

- 3** Which is Grandma's photo? Go to page 106 to find out. (5 minutes)
- Pupils discuss in pairs.
  - Using the Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14), ask *Did you find the answer?*
- 4** After you read Circle the correct word. Then order the sentences to retell the story. (5 minutes)
- Pupils work individually to complete the activity. Ask for answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### Extra activity Critical thinking

- Pupils work in pairs and draw and write one more picture frame to add anywhere in the story that makes sense.

### Extra activity Digital literacy

- Pupils work in small groups to research what a metal detector can/can't do, how much they cost, where they can be used and where they can't. Pupils use a child-friendly search engine and compare their findings with other groups. Ask groups to write one or two facts on the board. Pupils can say why they would like to try some metal detecting, where they would choose to go, and what they would like to find.



### 5 Act out the story. (5 minutes)

- Divide pupils into groups of six. Allocate a role to each pupil (Grandma, Grandad, Fatma, Lottie, Sami and Bo).
- Pupils act out the story in groups.

#### Extra activity Collaborative work

- Pupils work in the same groups, taking the same roles as before. They should write out the parts of the dialogue they will say. Working together, ask pupils to change two or three facts in the story, and change the dialogue and actions. Ask pupils to act out the new story. Ask the class to notice and say what is different at the end. Have a class vote on categories pupils decide, e.g. the most changed, the craziest, the most interesting, etc.

### 6 In pairs or small groups, design a new phone camera. Then have a class vote and choose. (5 minutes)

- Divide pupils into pairs or small groups.
- Ask pupils to discuss and design the phone camera in their notebooks with coloured pencils.
- Ask pupils to look at the categories for the class vote. Pupils present their ideas.
- Have a class vote. Encourage pupils to give reasons for their choices.

#### Extra activity Communication

- Pupils write some questions they can ask older family members and friends of the family.

### Finishing the lesson (3 minutes)

- Ask pupils what they remember from the story.

## Lesson 2, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Divide the class into two teams and play *Backs to the board* (see page 22) with the Unit 8 flashcards.

### Practice

#### Activity Book

#### 1 After you read Look, read and match. Then circle. Who says what? (10 minutes)

- Give pupils one minute to complete the activity. Pupils compare answers with a partner.

#### 2 Tick (✓) the things that they had in the past. (5 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually then check in pairs.

Lesson 2, part 2 Story 8

1 After you read Look, read and match. Then circle. Who says what?

1

2

3

4

a That's my camera!      2 Lottie Fatma Sami Grandad **Grandma**

b Have you still got photos from when you were young?      3 Lottie **Fatma** Sami Grandad Grandma

c They're taking photos.      1 Lottie Fatma Sami Grandad Grandma

d We lost the camera a few years later.      4 Lottie Fatma Sami **Grandad** Grandma

2 Tick (✓) the things that they had in the past.

cameras	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	delicious food	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	photographs	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
phones with cameras	<input type="checkbox"/>	the internet	<input type="checkbox"/>	new dresses	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

3 Correct the mistakes.

1 The children are at a wedding with Sami and Fatma's grandparents.      funfair

2 Sami and Fatma's grandparents took photos with their phones when they were young.      cameras

3 Grandma wore a traditional dress in the photo.      new

4 Sami and Fatma's grandparents lost the camera at the family party.      a few years later

5 Bo helps them find the photos of when they were young.      camera

4 Values What do you think? Read and choose.

In the story, Sami and Fatma learn how to take photos from their grandparents how to be safe at a funfair.

fifty-three 53

#### 3 Correct the mistakes. (10 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually.

#### 4 Values What do you think? Read and choose. (5 minutes)

- Pupils circle the correct answer and then compare it with their partner's.
- Have a class discussion on the topic encouraging pupils to give their answers.

#### Extra activity Communication

- Pupils write some questions they can ask older family members and friends of the family

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils what they think happens next in the story. Ask them what new words they learned.

#### Extra activity Photocopiable 52

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 52.

#### CLIL Link

In Unit 8, the story is based around the characteristics of metal from the Science curriculum. The Discovery Team are with Fatma and Sami's grandparents, who tell them about a lost camera. But Bo finds the camera by using a metal detector.

# Grammar

## Lesson 3, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn and use the Past simple + irregular verbs
- **Target language:** *I wore a new dress. We didn't take photos with our phones.*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Speaking:** Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41).

### Materials

- photocopiable 48

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15); Three facts and a fib technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 3, part 1

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write *party, camera, Grandma, Grandad, metal detector* on the board. Ask pupils to work in pairs and say what they remember about these things from the story.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to use the Past simple with irregular verbs.

## Practice

### Class Book


**Grammar**
Lesson 3, part 1

**1** **Look back! Tick (✓) the sentence in this picture.**

1 We took photos with a camera.

2 The next day we went to the beach.

3 We lost the camera a few years later.



**2** **Listen and repeat.**


I wore a new dress.

We didn't take photos with our phones.

have → had    do → did    eat → ate  
 drink → drank    go → went    get → got  
 make → made    wear → wore    see → saw


▶ More verbs on page 107.

**3** **Circle the correct word.**




I went made to a party at the weekend.  
 It was my friend Amna's birthday party. My other friend Reema didn't go didn't find because she was on holiday. We wore ate some cake and we drank ate lemonade. Amna got lost a lot of presents. We went had so much fun!


**4** **Write the correct sentences.**




1 My sister ran to the shops this morning.  
My sister ran to school this morning.



2 I saw a wedding in the town.  
I saw a funfair in the town.



3 Dad wore a dishdasha.  
Dad wore a coat.



4 My sister ate a banana.  
My sister ate an apple.

**5** **Tell your partner about a crazy day. Choose five activities.**

I went to an island in the middle of the sea! I went fishing with a firefighter and I saw three dolphins. I ate blue noodles and drank purple lemonade!

84 eighty-four
Activity Book Unit 8 Lesson 3, part 2

### 1 Look back! Tick (✓) the sentence in this picture. (3 minutes)

- Refer pupils to pages 82 and 83.

### 2 8.4 Listen and repeat. (5 minutes)

- Write the two sentences from the grammar box on the board. Ask *Who do you think said this?* about each one (*Grandma* or *Grandad*).
- Play the audio. Ask pupils to look at the grammar box.
- Tell pupils that the verbs in this unit are irregular. Remind them that regular verbs use *-ed* for the Past simple. Ask *How do we make the negative?* (*did + not = didn't*).
- Focus pupils' attention on the irregular verbs box and say them for pupils to repeat.

### 8.4

I wore a new dress.

We didn't take photos with our phones.

## Diversity

## Support

- In pairs or small groups, pupils write out the verbs in the box on one side and the Past simple irregular form on the other. Pupils point to a verb while their partner(s) say(s) the Past simple form.

## Challenge

- Pupils write two positive and two negative Past simple sentences about yesterday using the Past simple irregular verbs. Ask pupils to use the Three facts and a fib technique (see page 15) to read aloud to the class.

## 3 Circle the correct word. (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to describe what they can see in the picture.
- Pupils read through the text and circle the correct words.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

## 4 Write the correct sentences. (5 minutes)

- Pupils discuss the sentences in pairs, then work individually to write correct sentences.

## Extra activity Collaborative work

- Pupils write sentences like the ones in Activity 4 with incorrect information and draw quick sketches in their notebooks. Place two pairs together. Pupils show each other their notebooks and correct the sentences.

## 5 Tell your partner about a crazy day.

## Choose five activities. (10 minutes)

- Ask two pupils to volunteer to come to the board as sketch artists. Close books.
- Read the example in the speech bubble slowly, pausing at the end of each sentence.
- Have the pupils draw what they understand as you speak. The class corrects misunderstandings.
- Ask pupils to open their books and read the example in Activity 5 to check.
- Have pupils work in pairs taking turns to tell each other their crazy day.
- **Extension** Pupils can draw their partner's day as they listen. Their partner corrects any mistakes using the target language, e.g. *I didn't eat fruit pizza! I ate four pizzas!*

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask *What was easy/difficult about this lesson? What helped/didn't help you to learn today?*

## Lesson 3, part 2

## Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Say an irregular verb in the present tense. Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to choose a pupil to say its past tense irregular form. Encourage them to say a sentence using that verb if possible. Ask the class to help out if the pupil is having trouble.



## Practice



## Activity Book



Lesson 3, part 2



**Grammar**

1 Listen and tick (✓).

1 a  b 

2 a  b 

3 a  b 

4 a  b 

2 Look at Activity 1 and complete the sentences. Use the Past simple.

go eat drink wear

1 Amjed didn't drink lemonade. He drank water.  
 2 Ali didn't wear a vet costume. He wore a firefighter's costume.  
 3 My family and I went to a funfair. We didn't go to a birthday party.  
 4 Rawan and Marwa didn't eat ice cream. They ate crisps.

3 Write two things you did and two things you didn't do yesterday. Compare in pairs.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

I drank milk. I didn't eat chocolate.

54 fifty-four

## 1 8.5 Listen and tick (✓). (10 minutes)

- Play the audio.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

# Grammar


## 8.5

- 1 Yesterday it was very sunny and hot, so we went to the park. We played a lot of different games and we ran a lot! We were very thirsty! We drank a lot of water. We didn't drink lemonade because we get thirstier!
- 2 Yesterday it was Jobs Day at school and we dressed up. At first, I wanted to wear a vet costume, but Hamzah wanted to be a vet, too. So, I wore a pair of black and yellow trousers, a helmet and black boots. A perfect firefighter's costume!
- 3 Last month, my family and I went to an exciting party. The cake was delicious! We had fun!
- 4 We went to the funfair last Saturday. There were many people. There was a big wheel and a rollercoaster. We ate crisps and drank lemonade. We didn't eat any ice cream because it wasn't hot!


### 2 Look at Activity 1 and complete the sentences. Use the Past simple. (10 minutes)

- Pupils complete the activity individually.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Check answers as a class.

### 3 Write two things you did and two things you didn't do yesterday. Compare in pairs. (10 minutes)

- Pupils write their sentences individually.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
-  Pupils compare their work in pairs to see if they did (or didn't) do the same things. Encourage pupils to check each other's work for mistakes.
- Call on volunteers to read aloud their sentences.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

-  Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *Do you understand when we use Past simple irregular verbs? Can you use the negative forms?*
- Ask the pupils to give examples.

#### Extra activity Photocopiable 48

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 48.

# Vocabulary and Grammar

## Lesson 4, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn and use ordinal numbers for dates; to learn and use irregular Past simple questions and short answers; to learn and sing a song
- **Target language:** 1<sup>st</sup>–31<sup>st</sup>, *What did you eat at your birthday party? I ate cake. Did she wear a party hat? Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can recognise ordinal numbers, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 25). Can recognise familiar words and phrases in short, simple songs or chants (GSE 18).
- **Speaking:** Can use ordinal numbers (GSE 27). Can say when their birthday is (day, month) (GSE 23). Can sing a basic song from memory (GSE 22).
- **Reading:** Can recognise ordinal numbers written as words (GSE 29).

### Materials

- Unit 8 flashcards (ordinals)
- Unit 8 poster
- a calendar
- True/False response cards
- photocopiables 44, 48, 56 and 60
- fly swats

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: True/False response cards technique (see page 14); Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 4, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), have pupils say something they remember that helped/didn't help them to learn in the last lesson.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn how to make questions and short answers with Past simple irregular verbs. They will also learn to talk about dates in English.

## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 4, part 1 **Vocabulary and Grammar** 8

1 Listen, point and repeat.

May						
1 <sup>st</sup> first	2 <sup>nd</sup> second	3 <sup>rd</sup> third	4 <sup>th</sup> fourth	5 <sup>th</sup> fifth	6 <sup>th</sup> sixth	7 <sup>th</sup> seventh
8 <sup>th</sup> eighth	9 <sup>th</sup> ninth	10 <sup>th</sup> tenth	11 <sup>th</sup> eleventh	12 <sup>th</sup> twelfth	13 <sup>th</sup> thirteenth	14 <sup>th</sup> fourteenth
15 <sup>th</sup> fifteenth	16 <sup>th</sup> sixteenth	17 <sup>th</sup> seventeenth	18 <sup>th</sup> eighteenth	19 <sup>th</sup> nineteenth	20 <sup>th</sup> twentieth	21 <sup>st</sup> twenty-first
22 <sup>nd</sup> twenty-second	23 <sup>rd</sup> twenty-third	24 <sup>th</sup> twenty-fourth	25 <sup>th</sup> twenty-fifth	26 <sup>th</sup> twenty-sixth	27 <sup>th</sup> twenty-seventh	28 <sup>th</sup> twenty-eighth
29 <sup>th</sup> twenty-ninth	30 <sup>th</sup> thirtieth	31 <sup>st</sup> thirty-first				

4<sup>th</sup> May = the 4<sup>th</sup> of May

2 Listen and write down the numbers you hear.  
seventeenth eighth twenty-fifth third thirty-first

3 Listen and sing. Say your birthday!

When's your birthday? I know it's soon!  
It was yesterday, the 2<sup>nd</sup> of June!  
Did you have a birthday party?  
Yes, I did! Yes, I did!  
Did you eat a lot of cake?  
Yes, I did! Yes, I did!

Did you get a lot of presents?  
Yes, I did! Yes, I did!  
Did you play some party games?  
No, I didn't! No, I didn't!  
Why not?  
Because I had a broken leg!

4 Listen and repeat.  
What did you eat at your birthday party?  
I ate cake.  
Did she wear a party hat?  
Yes, she did./No, she didn't.

5 In pairs, ask and answer about birthdays.  
When's your birthday? It's on ...  
What did you do on your last birthday? I had a party ...  
Did you wear a party hat? No, I didn't, but I wore ...

6 Pupil A: Activity Book, page 69. Pupil B: Activity Book, page 71.

Activity Book, Unit 8  
Lesson 4, part 2 eighty-five 85

### 1 8.6 Listen, point and repeat. (5 minutes)

- Show pupils the Unit 8 flashcards (ordinals), say them and have pupils repeat. Then play the audio. Pupils point and repeat individually.
- Practise the language together. Display a calendar of the current month.
- Ask a volunteer to say today's date with an ordinal number. *It's the ...* Ask pupils to choose other volunteers. The class use the True/False response cards technique (see page 14) as you say, e.g. *Today is the ... Yesterday was the ... Tomorrow is the ... Last Saturday was the ... Next Friday is the ... Two weeks ago today was the ... This day next week is the ... This (name a day, e.g. Thursday) is the ...*

### 8.6

first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first, twenty-second, twenty-third, twenty-fourth, twenty-fifth, twenty-sixth, twenty-seventh, twenty-eighth, twenty-ninth, thirtieth, thirty-first



# Vocabulary and Grammar

## 2 🎧 8.7 Listen and write down the numbers you hear. (4 minutes)

- Play the audio.
- 👥 Place pupils in pairs to check that their dates are the same.
- Pupils tell you their answers as ordinal numbers.

### 8.7

seventeenth, eighth, twenty-fifth, third, thirty-first

## 3 🎧 8.8 & 8.9 Listen and sing. Say your birthday! (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the pictures and raise their hands to say who they can see (*a boy with a broken leg*).
- Play the song and have pupils listen only this time.
- Read out the song one line at a time and have pupils repeat.
- Play the song again and encourage pupils to join in.
- Play the karaoke version of the song (track 8.9) and encourage pupils to sing.
- 🗣️ Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), ask pupils to say when their birthdays are.

### 8.8

When's your birthday? I know it's soon!

It was yesterday, the 2nd of June!

Did you have a birthday party?

Yes, I did! Yes, I did!

Did you eat a lot of cake?

Yes, I did! Yes, I did!

Did you get a lot of presents?

Yes, I did! Yes, I did!

Did you play some party games?

No, I didn't! No, I didn't!

Why not?

Because I had a broken leg!

## 4 🎧 8.10 Listen and repeat. (5 minutes)

- Display or write the questions and answers on the board. Point out or underline the red words.
- Point to each example and ask pupils to look and raise their hands to say what they see (*question with what, long answer, question with did and short yes/no answers*).

### 8.10

What **did** you eat at the birthday party?

I **ate** cake.

**Did** she **wear** a party hat?

Yes, she **did**. / No, she **didn't**.

## 5 🗣️ In pairs, ask and answer about birthdays. (3 minutes)

- Ask two pupils to read out the examples.
- 👥 Place pupils in pairs for this activity.

### Diversity

#### Support

- 👥 Pupils repeat the pronunciation with you and ask you the questions first, before they complete the activity in pairs.

#### Challenge

- Pupils repeat the activity with the birthdays of their family members. They can also think of their own dates.

## 6 ➤ Pupil A: Activity Book, page 69.

### ➤ Pupil B: Activity Book, page 71. (10 minutes)

- Assign Pupil A or Pupil B, ask them to find the correct page in their Activity Book.
- 👥 Pupils work together to find whether they did the same thing last week by asking and answering questions in the Past simple.
- 🗣️ Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to make sure pupils understand what they have to do.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.

## Finishing the lesson (3 minutes)

- 📖 Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *Do you like the song? Can you remember it without looking at the book?*



## Lesson 4, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Divide the class into two teams. Play *Word swat* (see page 21) with the Unit 8 flashcards (ordinals).

### Practice

#### Activity Book

Lesson 4, part 2 **Vocabulary and Grammar** 8

1 Listen and match. When is their birthday?

Adam 30<sup>th</sup> March  
 Razan 6<sup>th</sup> January  
 Noora 1<sup>st</sup> July  
 Anas 19<sup>th</sup> October

2 Look and read. When is their birthday? Write the dates in words.

JUNE							
WEEK	SUNDAY	MONDAY	TUESDAY	WEDNESDAY	THURSDAY	FRIDAY	SATURDAY
1						1 <sup>st</sup>	2 <sup>nd</sup>
2	3 <sup>rd</sup>	4 <sup>th</sup>	5 <sup>th</sup>	6 <sup>th</sup>	7 <sup>th</sup>	8 <sup>th</sup>	9 <sup>th</sup>
3	10 <sup>th</sup>	11 <sup>th</sup>	12 <sup>th</sup>	13 <sup>th</sup>	14 <sup>th</sup>	15 <sup>th</sup>	16 <sup>th</sup>
4	17 <sup>th</sup>	18 <sup>th</sup>	19 <sup>th</sup>	20 <sup>th</sup>	21 <sup>st</sup>	22 <sup>nd</sup>	23 <sup>rd</sup>
5	24 <sup>th</sup>	25 <sup>th</sup>	26 <sup>th</sup>	27 <sup>th</sup>	28 <sup>th</sup>	29 <sup>th</sup>	30 <sup>th</sup>

1 I'm Malik. My birthday is in the fifth week of June. It's on Friday. twenty-ninth

2 My mum's birthday is in the third week of June. It's on the last day before the weekend. fourteenth

3 I'm Razan. My birthday is on the second Wednesday of June. It's my favourite number. thirteenth

4 Hi, I'm Azza. My birthday is on a Thursday this year. It's in the fourth week of June. twenty-first

5 My sister's birthday this year is at the weekend. It's the first Saturday in June. second

3 Complete the questions and answers.

saw drink didn't Did Yes give did eat drank see

1 Did your friend wear a white dress? No, she didn't.

2 Did they give you the party invitation? Yes, they did.

3 When did you see my parents? I saw them yesterday.

4 Did your friend eat the cupcakes? Yes, he did.

5 What did your friends drink at the cinema? They drank lemonade.

fifty-five 55

### 2 Look and read. When is their birthday? Write the dates in words. (10 minutes)

- Pupils work individually and check in pairs.
- Check feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### 3 Complete the questions and answers. (10 minutes)

- Pupils work individually and check in pairs.
- Ask different pairs to read out one question and answer each.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils to say how this lesson has helped them with their English.
- Have them say their birthdays.

#### Extra activity Photocopiables 44, 48, 56 and 60

- Ask pupils to do photocopiables 44, 48, 56 and 60.

### 1 8.11 Listen and match. When is their birthday? (10 minutes)

- Play the audio. Point out the example answer. Pupils work individually.
- Place pupils in pairs to check.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

#### 8.11

**Boy 1:** Hi. I'm Adam. I'm excited because it's the 30<sup>th</sup> of September today and tomorrow is a special day. It's the 1<sup>st</sup> of October, my birthday.

**Girl 1:** Hi, my name's Razan. I'm planning my birthday party. It's in 6 days, on the 19<sup>th</sup> of March!

**Girl 2:** Hi, I'm Noora. I'm two years and two days younger than my sister. She was born on the 28<sup>th</sup> of July and my birthday is on the 30<sup>th</sup> of July.

**Boy 2:** Hi. My name's Anas. My birthday's in the first month of the year. It's on the 6<sup>th</sup> of January.

# Culture and Project

## Lesson 5, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn about celebrations in the Arab world; to make a leaflet about special days in Oman
- **Target language:** revision of vocabulary and grammar

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can recognise single, familiar everyday words if supported by pictures (GSE 21). Can recognise simple words and phrases related to familiar topics if supported by pictures (GSE 23). Can extract factual details from a simple text (GSE 40). Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33).
- **Listening:** Can understand simple phrases related to familiar topics, if spoken slowly and clearly and supported by pictures (GSE 27).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41). Can talk about a familiar place in a basic way (GSE 35).
- **Writing:** Can write short, simple descriptive texts about familiar places using basic connectors, given a model. Can write a simple text (e.g. an invitation to a party) containing key information, given a model (GSE 41).

### Materials

- coloured pencils
- photocopiable 64

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Think-pair-share technique (see page 15)
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

### Culture Sources (online)

- [www.britannica.com](http://www.britannica.com)
- [www.memphistours.co.uk](http://www.memphistours.co.uk)
- [www.egyptescapes.com](http://www.egyptescapes.com)
- [www.arabnews.com](http://www.arabnews.com)
- [www.shuoon.om](http://www.shuoon.om)
- [www.timesofoman.com](http://www.timesofoman.com)

## Lesson 5, part 1

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Draw fireworks and flags on the board. Elicit pupils' ideas about celebrations and what usually happens during them.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will talk about traditional celebrations in the Arab world.

### Culture notes

- The job of Mesaharati has been around for hundreds of years in Egypt, as well as other Muslim countries. During the month of Ramadan, it's the Mesaharati's job to walk around each neighbourhood banging a drum called a *baza* in order to wake up the residents in time for *Sohour* (the pre-dawn meal eaten before each fasting day) and *Fajr* (the dawn prayer).
- Muslims celebrate not just one Eid during an Islamic year, but two. The first takes place after the month of Ramadan (*Eid al-Fitr* – small Eid) and the second takes place during Qurbani (*Eid al-Adha* – big Eid). The second of these two represents the most sacred time of the year for Muslims as it marks the Hajj pilgrimage.

## Practice

### Class Book



**Ramadan in Egypt**  
I learned about Ramadan in Egypt last week. Ramadan is the 9<sup>th</sup> month of the Hijri year. When the sun goes down, lights come on at all the mosques and there are decorations in many streets. The shops are open late and many people buy pretty lanterns to put in their homes. Ramadan in Egypt is colourful and fun!

**Eid Al-Adha**  
People celebrate Eid Al-Adha on 10<sup>th</sup> Dhu Al-Hijjah. Last year, I prayed at the mosque with my family on the first day. Then we visited our friends and relatives. They gave me some presents! I like Eid Al-Adha. Which celebration do you like?

**Al-Taimeena**  
In Oman, children celebrate Al-Taimeena when they finish learning the Quran. When my brother finished it last year, he walked around the streets wearing traditional clothes and carrying a lantern. He said a special *Du'a* and then enjoyed sweets and other food with our friends and family. It was a beautiful day.

**Eid Al-Adha**  
People celebrate Eid Al-Adha on 10<sup>th</sup> Dhu Al-Hijjah. Last year, I prayed at the mosque with my family on the first day. Then we visited our friends and relatives. They gave me some presents! I like Eid Al-Adha. Which celebration do you like?

**Fun fact**  
On Oman National Day, many buildings have white, red and green lights on them, the colours of the Omani flag.

**Project - Lesson 5, part 2**  
Make a leaflet about special days in Oman.

- 1 In groups, choose a festival from your country.
- 2 Find pictures.
- 3 Write how you celebrated this festival last year.
- 4 Have a class display of your leaflets. Vote for the most popular festival.

**1 Before you read** What's the most important festival in your country?

**2 Listen and read.**

**3 After you read**  
Activity Book, page 56.

**4 In pairs, ask and answer.**

Which festival do you want to go to?


I want to go to ... because ...

**Find out more! Watch the video.**


**Muscat Nights Festival**  
This festival is in February. Last year, there were many events.

86 eighty-six

**1 Before you read What's the most important festival in your country?** (2 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the pictures on page 86. Say *These are three festivals from the Arab world that are very popular. Ask What's the most important festival in your country?*
-  Pupils discuss the answer in pairs. Then they share their ideas with the class.

**2  8.12 Listen and read.** (5 minutes)

- Play the audio for pupils to listen and follow in their Class Books. Play the audio again, pausing it after each text. Ask different pupils to read the text aloud.
- Check comprehension with questions; e.g. *When does Ramadan take place? (The ninth month of the Muslim year.); What happens when the sun goes down? (Lights come on at all the mosques.); What are there in a lot of streets? (Decorations.); Do the shops close early? (No.); What do people buy to put in their homes? (Lanterns.); When do children celebrate Al-Taimeena in Oman? (When they finish learning the Quran.); What do the children do? (Walk the streets, wear traditional clothes and hold lanterns.); What do they eat? (Sweets and other food.)*
-  Pupils work in pairs and say three things they have learnt, e.g. *Ramadan is the 9<sup>th</sup> month of the Muslim year.*
- Ask a volunteer to read the Fun fact. Ask pupils what people wear for important festivals in their country.

### 8.12

#### Celebrations in the Arab world

##### Ramadan in Egypt

I learned about Ramadan in Egypt last week. Ramadan is the ninth month of the Hijri year. When the sun goes down, lights come on at all the mosques and there are decorations in many streets. The shops are open late and many people buy pretty lanterns to put in their homes. Ramadan in Egypt is colourful and fun!

##### Al-Taimeena

In Oman, children celebrate Al-Taimeena when they finish learning the Quran. When my brother finished it last year, he walked around the streets wearing traditional clothes and carrying a lantern. He said a special *Du'a* and then enjoyed sweets and other food with our friends and family. It was a beautiful day.

##### Eid Al-Adha

People celebrate Eid Al-Adha on 10<sup>th</sup> Dhu Al-Hijjah. Last year, I prayed at the mosque with my family on the first day. Then we visited our friends and relatives. They gave me some presents! I like Eid Al-Adha. Which celebration do you like?



#### Extra activity Critical thinking

- Discuss why countries celebrate with festivals.

**3 After you read Activity Book, page 56.**

- Pupils turn to page 56 in their Activity Books before they complete the Class Book activities for this lesson.

**4  In pairs, ask and answer.** (5 minutes)

-  Ask two volunteers to read the speech bubbles. Check pupils know what to do using the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14).
-  Place pupils in pairs. They can read the texts again before answering the question.
- Have pairs share their ideas with the class.

#### Diversity


##### Support

- Have pupils write down any words they haven't understood from the texts. Encourage them to ask the meaning. Explain the meaning for pupils to write them down.

##### Challenge


- Ask pupils to say key words from the texts connected to the topic of festivals and celebrations. Go around the class and have pupils say one sentence about a festival in their country.

** Find out more! Watch the video.** (6 minutes)

- Ask pupils what they think the video will be about. Tell them to watch the video carefully.
-  Using the Think-pair-share technique (see page 15), ask pupils to discuss any new things they learnt from the video and present their ideas to the whole class.

#### Activity Book



**1 Match the sentence halves.** (5 minutes)

-  Pupils turn to page 56 in their Activity Books before they complete the Class Book activities for this lesson.

**2 After you read Read and write True or False.** (3 minutes)


- Pupils complete the activity individually.
- Check answers as a class.

**3 Correct the false sentences in Activity 2.** (5 minutes)




-  Pupils correct the false answers with a partner.
-  Ask different pairs to read out their corrected false answers.

# Culture and Project

Lesson 5, part 1



**1 Match the sentence halves.**

1 Ramadan is the ninth month of the Muslim year.  
 2 When the sun goes down, lights come on at all the mosques.  
 3 In Oman, children celebrate Al-Taimeena.  
 4 We enjoyed sweets and other food with our friends and family.  
 5 People celebrate Eid Al-Adha on 10<sup>th</sup> Dhu Al-Hijjah.  
 6 Last year, I prayed at the mosque with my family.

a sweets and other food with our friends and family.  
 b month of the Muslim year.  
 c on 10<sup>th</sup> Dhu Al-Hijjah.  
 d at the mosque with my family.  
 e when they finish learning the Quran.  
 f lights come on at all the mosques.

**2 After you read. Read and write True or False.**

1 In Egypt, there are decorations in the streets for Ramadan.	True
2 The shops close early in Ramadan.	False
3 For Al-Taimeena, children wear old clothes and carry torches.	False
4 Children enjoy food with their friends and family.	True
5 People don't visit relatives at Eid Al-Adha.	False
6 Friends and relatives open presents at Eid Al-Adha.	True

**3 Correct the false sentences in Activity 2.**

2 The shops open late in Ramadan.  
 Children wear traditional clothes and carry lanterns.  
 People visit relatives at Eid Al-Adha.

56 fifty-six

## Finishing the lesson (2 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *What did you learn today?* and have pupils raise their hands to offer answers.

## Lesson 5, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Have a discussion about special days in Oman. Ask *Which do you like best? How do you celebrate it? Why is it your favourite?*

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will make a leaflet about a special day in Oman.

## Practice – Project

### Class Book



## Celebrations in the Arab world

**Ramadan in Egypt**

I learned about Ramadan in Egypt last week. Ramadan is the 9<sup>th</sup> month of the Hijri year. When the sun goes down, lights come on at all the mosques and there are decorations in many streets. The shops are open late and many people buy pretty lanterns to put in their homes. Ramadan in Egypt is colourful and fun!

**Al-Taimeena**

In Oman, children celebrate Al-Taimeena when they finish learning the Quran. When my brother finished it last year, he walked around the streets wearing traditional clothes and carrying a lantern. He said a special *Du'a* and then enjoyed sweets and other food with our friends and family. It was a beautiful day.

**Eid Al-Adha**

People celebrate Eid Al-Adha on 10<sup>th</sup> Dhu Al-Hijjah. Last year, I prayed at the mosque with my family on the first day. Then we visited our friends and relatives. They gave me some presents! I like Eid Al-Adha. Which celebration do you like?





**Fun fact**

On Oman National Day, many buildings have white, red and green lights on them, the colours of the Omani flag.

**Project - Lesson 5, part 2**

**Make a leaflet about special days in Oman.**

- In groups, choose a festival from your country.
- Find pictures.
- Write how you celebrated this festival last year.
- Have a class display of your leaflets. Vote for the most popular festival.

*This festival is in February. Last year, there were many events.*



**1 Before you read** What's the most important festival in your country?  
**2 Listen and read.**  
**3 After you read** Activity Book, page 56.  
**4 In pairs, ask and answer.**

Which festival do you want to go to? I want to go to ... because ...

**Find out more! Watch the video.**

86 eighty-six

## Make a leaflet about special days in Oman. (25 minutes)

- Divide pupils into groups of four.
- Explain that pupils must design a leaflet about a special day in their country in their notebooks using coloured pencils. They should all contribute ideas to the leaflet.
- Display all the leaflets on the walls or make a book for pupils to see. Ask questions about the different special days in the leaflets, e.g. *When is the special day? What is the special day about? What can you see and do at the special day?*

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask the pupils to say how the Culture lesson about Oman in this lesson has helped them understand their country better.

### Extra activity Photocopiable 64

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 64.



# English in action

## Lesson 6

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to learn to explain that you've lost something
- **Target language:** *What's the matter? I can't find my (bag). When did you last see it? I had it when ...*

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can understand some details in short, simple dialogues on familiar everyday topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 30).
- **Listening:** Can understand most of the concrete details in informal conversations on familiar everyday topics, if the speakers talk slowly and clearly (GSE 37).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41). Can act out a short dialogue or role play, given prompts (GSE 38).

### Materials

- coloured pencils
- photocopyable 68

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Hide a few possessions (e.g. a pair of glasses, a pen, etc.) around the class. Start the class by looking for them and acting concerned because you can't find them. Pupils can join in searching for the items.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to explain that they've lost something.

### Practice

#### Class Book

#### 1 When did you last lose something? What did you lose? (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 87. Pupils discuss in pairs and then raise their hands to offer answers.


**English in action** 8

Explaining you've lost something

**1** **When did you last lose something? What did you lose?**

**2** **Watch or listen and write. What can't Sara find?** her bag

**3** **Watch or listen again, read and check.**




What's the matter?  
I can't find my bag!  
What's it like?  
It's blue with a picture of a mouse on it.  
OK. When did you last see it?  
I don't know ... Oh, yes, I had it when I went on the big wheel.  
OK, let's go and look there.  
There it is! Thanks for your help!  
You're welcome!

**Say it!**

What's the matter?  
I can't find my book.  
When did you last see it?  
I had it when I went to school.  
Let's go and look there.


**4** **In pairs, talk about a lost object.**

hat



What's the matter?

water bottle



I can't find my water bottle.

Activity Book, Unit 8  
Lesson 6 eighty-seven 87

#### 2 **8.13 Watch or listen and write. What can't Sara find? (5 minutes)**

- Play the audio or video. Pupils write their answer and then raise their hands to give feedback. Do not confirm answers yet.

#### 8.13 & 8.14

**Mum:** What's the matter?

**Girl:** I can't find my bag!

**Mum:** What's it like?

**Girl:** It's blue with a picture of a mouse on it.

**Mum:** OK. When did you last see it?

**Girl:** I don't know ... Oh, yes, I had it when I went on the big wheel.

**Mum:** OK, let's go and look there.

**Girl:** There it is! Thanks for your help!

**Mum:** You're welcome!

#### 3 **8.14 Watch or listen again, read and check. (5 minutes)**

- Play the audio or video for pupils to watch or listen and read. Confirm the answer to Activity 2.
- Draw pupils' attention to the *Say it!* box. Read out the sentences and have pupils repeat as a class. Explain meanings if necessary.

# English in action

## Diversity

### Support

- Pupils work in pairs to draw a cartoon to show the story of the lost bag at the funfair. Pupils can work as a class and one or two volunteers can draw it on the board.

### Challenge

- Ask pupils to work in pairs and write out and change elements of the dialogue in their notebooks to make it personal to them.

## 4 In pairs, talk about a lost object. (5 minutes)

- Place pupils in pairs to complete the activity.
- **Extension** Pupils repeat the activity in different pairs.

## Extra activity TPR

- Place pupils in small groups. Have each pupil take turns to hide a small personal possession (e.g. a pencil, an eraser) somewhere close, but cleverly positioned, on or around the area where they are sitting or standing. Pupils use the dialogue from 3, but about the object they chose to hide.

## Activity Book

English in action 8  
Explaining you've lost something

Lesson 6

**1 Order the words to make sentences.**

1 the what's matter ?      What's the matter?

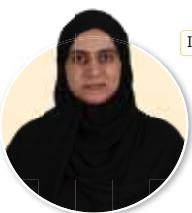
2 go there and let's look      Let's go and look there.

3 welcome you're !      You're welcome!

4 last when ? you did it see      When did you last see it?


5 it like what's ?      What's it like?

**2 Complete the dialogue with the sentences in Activity 1.**



What's the matter?

I can't find my necklace.




What's it like?

It's made of metal and it's got a blue stone.

When did you last see it?

Well... I had it when I went to our P.E. lesson.



Let's go and look there...

There it is! Thanks for your help!

fifty-seven 57

## 1 Order the words to make sentences. (5 minutes)

- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

## 2 Complete the dialogue with the sentences in Activity 1. (5 minutes)

- **Extension** Pupils read the dialogue in pairs.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask *Have you ever lost anything? What did you do?* Elicit answers.
- Play *Hangman* with the words from this lesson.

## Extra activity Photocopiable 68

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 68.

# Skills

## Lesson 7, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to read and understand a reading text
- **Target language:** revision of unit vocabulary and grammar

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can identify key information in short, simple factual texts from the headings and illustrations (GSE 33). Can understand some details in short, simple dialogues on familiar every day topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 30). Can understand the main points of short, simple dialogues related to everyday situations, if guided by questions (GSE 34). Can identify the main information for an event (e.g. day, time, place) (GSE 30).

### Materials

- coloured pencils
- photocopiable 72

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 7, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Revise the dialogue from the last lesson by eliciting what pupils remember about the structure of the lost bag conversation. Write *What's the matter?* on the board. Have pupils raise their hands to offer suggestions about how the conversation can go on. Accept all reasonable, grammatically correct words.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will read an interview about a party in a school newspaper.

### Diversity

#### Support

- Pre-teach words from the article that pupils might have a problem with, e.g. *funny, unusual*, etc.

#### Challenge

- Ask pupils extra questions, e.g. *Can you predict what the text is about from these words?* Have pupils discuss in pairs for one minute and then raise their hands to offer ideas.

## Practice

### Class Book

Skills
Lesson 7, part 1

Reading

- 1 Before you read Look at the title and the picture. What do you think happened at the party?
- 2 Listen and read. Were you right?

Invitation

Come to Samira's birthday party!

When: Saturday the 6<sup>th</sup> of July, 1-3pm  
Where: 6 North Road, Muscat

School News

Today, 10:34am

An unusual birthday party!

Something funny happened at Samira's birthday party at the weekend! We asked her all about it.

**Interviewer:** Hi, Samira! Tell us what happened at your party!


**Samira:** Well, I had my birthday party at my house. There were about 20 friends. First, we played some party games. We all wore funny party hats! Then, Mum and Dad put the food and drink on long tables. My birthday cake was at one end of the table. There was a buffet: I ate a lot of sandwiches, crisps and cupcakes! After that we played more party games in the garden.

**Interviewer:** OK. It sounds fun! What happened next?

**Samira:** It was time for the birthday cake, so we went back into the house. But the cake wasn't on the table! Then we saw my cat, Patch. He was asleep under the table, on his back. There was cake all over his face!

**Interviewer:** Oh no! Did Patch eat the whole cake?

**Samira:** Yes, he did! It was a great party for him!



- 3 After you read Read and tick (✓) the best summary.
  - 1 It was Samira's birthday party. There was a buffet. Samira and her friends ate a lot of food.
  - 2 At Samira's birthday party, Samira and her friends played games, wore party hats and there was a buffet. A cat ate the birthday cake.

88 eighty-eight
Activity Book, Unit 8  
Lesson 7, part 2

## Reading

- 1 Before you read Look at the title and the picture. What do you think happened at the party? (5 minutes)
  - Refer pupils to page 88. Tell them to look at the invitation, title and picture. Pupils discuss in pairs first. Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), ask pupils for answers.

# Skills

## 2 8.15 Listen and read. Were you right? (15 minutes)

- Before pupils do the activity, remind them that when they first listen to and read a text, they do not need to understand every word. They just have to get the general idea or gist of the text.
- Ask pupils to look at the title at the top and the sub-headings with each section. Explain that these help to make the article easier to read, because it is divided into smaller sections called paragraphs. Ask pupils if they enjoy going to parties and what they usually do at them.
- Play the audio.

### 8.15

**Narrator:** School News.  
An unusual birthday party!  
Something funny happened at Samira's birthday party at the weekend!  
We asked her all about it.

**Interviewer:** Hi, Samira! Tell us what happened at your party.

**Samira:** Well, I had my birthday party at my house. There were about 20 friends. First, we played some party games. We all wore funny party hats! Then, Mum and Dad put the food and drink on long tables. My birthday cake was at one end of the table. There was a buffet: I ate a lot of sandwiches, crisps and cupcakes! After that, we played more party games in the garden.

**Interviewer:** OK. It sounds fun! What happened next?

**Samira:** It was time for the birthday cake, so we went back into the house. But the cake wasn't on the table! Then we saw my cat, Patch. He was asleep under the table, on his back. There was cake all over his face!



**Interviewer:** Oh, no! Did Patch eat the whole cake?

**Samira:** Yes, he did! It was a great party for him!


### Extra activity Critical thinking

- Pupils read the text again and find all the verbs in the Past simple. They write the verbs in their notebooks and make a text containing them all.


## 3 **After you read** Read and tick (✓) the best summary. (10 minutes)

-  Pupils discuss the best answer in pairs.
-  Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).
- Check comprehension with questions, e.g. *What date was Samira's birthday party? (6<sup>th</sup> of July.); What day of the week was Samira's birthday party? (Saturday.); What time did the party start? (One o'clock.); How many people were there? (About 20.); What did Samira and her friends do at the party?*

*(Played party games, ate party food.); Where was the birthday cake? (At one end of the table.); What did her cat, Patch, do? (He ate Samira's birthday cake).*

-  Pupils write an invitation to any event using their imagination. They can use the invitation in the text as a model. They swap invitations with another pair and add a line to say what the activities or food there will be there.

### Extra activity TPR

-  Divide pupils into groups of two or three pairs. They read and choose one invitation to attend and act out the event. Set a time limit for one or two minutes. The class should watch all the groups. Pupils work out and say what they think the invitation was for (e.g. *a birthday, carnival party, etc.*).

### Extra activity Fast finishers

- Pupils modify the options in Activity to write a text about a celebration (e.g. a celebration they wrote an invitation for earlier in the lesson). Pupils write in their notebooks.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Pupils close their books. Say true/false sentences about the text, e.g. *Samara's birthday party was on Friday. (False.) There were about 20 people at the party. (True.)* Pupils correct the false sentences.

## Lesson 7, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to write as many celebration words as they can in two minutes.
- The pupils with the most words wins.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to read the text in the Class Book on page 88 again quickly. Check the meaning of any words they are unsure of.

## Practice

### Activity Book

Lesson 7, part 2

**Skills**

**Reading**

**1 After you read Answer the questions.**

- When was Samira's birthday party? Samira's birthday party was at the weekend.
- Where was her party? Samira's birthday party was at her house.
- What time did Samira's party finish? It finished at 3 o'clock.
- How many people were there? There were about twenty people.
- What did everybody at the party wear? They wore party hats.
- What did they eat? They ate sandwiches, crisps and cupcakes.
- Where did they play party games? They played in the garden and in the house.
- Did the cat like the party? Why? Yes, he did. He ate the birthday cake.

**2 Order the events in the story.**

They played more party games in the garden. 6

Samira gave invitations to her friends. 1

There was no cake on the party table. 7


They ate the party food. 5

A cat ate the cake. 8

Samira's friends came to her party. 2

They played party games. 3

There was a buffet. 4



**58** fifty-eight

## Reading

### 1 After you read Answer the questions. (15 minutes)

- Tell pupils to write complete sentences when answering the questions. They compare answers with a partner.

#### Extra activity Collaborative work

- Ask pupils if it is good for animals to eat cake, and why not. Explain that some food can be harmful to animals. Elicit pupils' ideas and help them to research what animals should and shouldn't eat. They can make posters to inform other classes.

### 2 Order the events in the story. (10 minutes)

- Ask pupils to check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask how successful pupils' learning is so far and, on a scale of 1–5, have them rate how much they enjoyed the lesson.

#### Extra activity Photocopiable 72

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 72.



# Skills

## Lesson 8, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to understand a listening task; to talk about a celebration you went to; to write an invitation to a party
- **Target language:** revision of vocabulary and grammar

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can extract factual information from short, simple dialogues or stories about past events if spoken slowly and clearly and guided by questions or prompts (GSE 39).
- **Reading:** Can understand some details in short, simple dialogues on familiar everyday topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 30). Can understand the main points of short, simple dialogues related to everyday situations, if guided by questions (GSE 34). Can identify the main information for an event (e.g. day, time, place) (GSE 30).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41).
- **Writing:** Can write a simple text (e.g. an invitation to a party) containing key information, given a model (GSE 36).

### Materials

- Unit 8 flashcards (celebrations and ordinals)
- coloured pencils
- photocopiable 76

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Two stars and a wish technique (see page 15); Think-pair-share technique (see page 15)
- Independent learning: Learning diary (see page 15); Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 8, part 1

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Play the song from Lesson 4 (track 8.8) and encourage pupils to join in.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to children talking about celebrations, speak about a celebration they went to, read a birthday invitation and write an invitation.
- Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), ask pupils to say the celebration words that they remember.

### Practice

#### Class Book

Lesson 8, part 1 8

**Listening**

1 Look at the pictures. Listen and match. What celebration did each child go to?

1 Malik      2 Manar      3 Yousof

A      B      C      D

**Speaking**

2 Talk about a celebration you went to.

I went to my uncle's wedding. We had fun. We watched ...

**Writing**

3 Read the invitation. When is Muna's birthday party? **Saturday 15<sup>th</sup> April**

**Birthday PARTY**

To: Laila

Come to Muna's birthday party!

When: Saturday 15<sup>th</sup> April, 10 am–1 pm

Where: 14 South Street, Ibra

RSVP by 10<sup>th</sup> April to muna456@gmail.com

See you there!

4 Write an invitation to a party.

1 **Plan**

- Who are you inviting?
- When is your party?
- Where is it?
- RSVP by? To an email or phone number?

2 **Write**

To:	Where:
Come to ...	RSVP by ...
When:	to ...

3 **Check your work**

- am and pm?
- RSVP?

**Writing**

When you write the time, use *am/pm*.

10 am = in the morning  
10 pm = in the evening  
RSVP means *please reply*.

Activity Book, Unit 8  
Lesson 8, part 2 eighty-nine 89

### Listening

#### 1 8.16 Look at the pictures. Listen and match. What celebration did each child go to? (5 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 89. Tell them to look at the pictures carefully before they listen so they know what to listen for.
- Play the audio.
- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to check answers.

## 8.16

**Man:** Yousuf and his friends Manar and Malik are talking about a busy weekend. What celebration did each child go to?

**Boy 1:** Hi, Manar. Hi, Malik!

**Girl:** Hi, Yousuf! How was your weekend?

**Boy 1:** It was good, thanks! I went to a great party!

**Girl:** Cool! Was it a birthday party?

**Boy 1:** No, it wasn't. It was a street party! There were lots of tables with food and drinks.

**Boy 1:** How about you? What did you do?

**Girl:** I went to a festival. We listened to music and then there were fireworks. What about you, Malik?

**Boy 2:** Well, I didn't go to a party or a festival; I went to a funfair! It was fantastic. I went on the big wheel and the rollercoaster!

## Diversity

## Support


- Write the questions below in the Challenge section on the board for pupils to answer.

## Challenge

- Ask comprehension questions: *Did Yousef enjoy his party? (Yes.); Where was it? (Outside/On the street.); Did Manar go to a party? (No.); What did she do? (She went to a festival.); What was at the festival? (Music and fireworks.); Did Malik go to a party? (No.); What did Malik do at the funfair? (He went on a rollercoaster and the big wheel).*

## Speaking

### 2 Talk about a celebration you went to. (5 minutes)


-  Pupils work in pairs.
- Walk around the room monitoring pairs.
- Ask different pairs to tell the class their ideas.

## Writing

### 3 Read the invitation. When is Muna's birthday party? (5 minutes)

- Give pupils a minute to read the invitation and find the answer.
- Check the answer as a class.
- Ask pupils to read the Writing tip and then ask comprehension questions about the invitation and the tip, e.g. *What time does Muna's party finish? (1 pm.); Who is the invitation for? (Laila.); How should Laila tell Muna she can come? (Email.); What is the date to reply before? (10<sup>th</sup> April.); How do you know that you should reply? (RSVP.); What does 'RSVP' mean? (Répondez s'il vous plait.) Tell pupils that this is French and means 'Please reply'. When do we use am/pm? (In the morning./In the afternoon.)*


## Extra activity TPR

-  Using the Thumbs up/down technique (see page 14), pupils respond to your questions, e.g. *Do you know how to write an invitation like this? Are you ready to write your invitation? Do you know which celebration you are going to write an invitation for? Are you going to write a plan first?*

### 4 Write an invitation to a party. (15 minutes)

- **Plan:** Go through the bullet points as a class. First, explain to pupils that they are going to make a list of the people they plan to invite (make sure they invite all class members). Then decide when your party is going to take place and what you'll be celebrating. Think about the number of people you want to invite. Decide how you are going to ask party guests to RSVP – by email or phone. Pupils work individually to answer the question. Monitor and help where necessary to help pupils write their notes.
- **Write:** Draw pupils' attention to the sections in an invitation. Ask them what to write in each section, e.g. *What goes in the 'To:' section? (The name of the person you are inviting.)* and write the answers on the board (*the answers can be made up*).
- **Check your work:** Read the Writing tip and make sure pupils understand it. Then, as a class, go over each bullet point and check that the writing on the board contains all the correct elements and that all sections of the invitation are covered.

## Finishing the lesson (3 minutes)

-  Pupils write down what they achieved in their Learning diary (see page 15): *Today I learnt about ... and I wrote ...*

## Skills

## Lesson 8, part 2

## Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Divide the class into two teams. Play *Team quiz* (page 22) with the Unit 8 flashcards.

## Presentation (3 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will write an invitation to a party. Ask pupils about the last party they went to and whether they enjoyed it. Ask what they did there.

## Practice

## Activity Book

Lesson 8, part 2

8

**Writing**

When you write the time, use am/pm.  
10 am = in the morning.  
10 pm = in the evening.  
RSVP means *please reply*.

**1 Complete for yourself. Write the time. Use am or pm.**

- 1 When I go to school, I get up at 7 am.
- 2 On Saturdays, I have dinner at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 At the weekend, I go to bed at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 School starts at \_\_\_\_\_ and finishes at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 On Sundays, I have lunch at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 At the weekend, I get up at \_\_\_\_\_.

**2 Write an invitation to a party.**

**Plan**

Read and answer. Make notes.

- Who are you inviting? \_\_\_\_\_
- When is your party? \_\_\_\_\_
- Where is it? \_\_\_\_\_
- RSVP by? To an email or phone number? \_\_\_\_\_

**2 Write**

Use your notes and write. Then decorate the card.

To: \_\_\_\_\_

When: \_\_\_\_\_

Where: \_\_\_\_\_

RSVP by: \_\_\_\_\_

to: \_\_\_\_\_

**3 Check your work**

Read your form again and tick (✓).

Use am or pm?  Use RSVP?  Correct spelling?  Clear handwriting?

**3 Create your own party invitations and display them in class.**

fifty-nine 59

## Writing

**1 Complete for yourself. Write the time. Use am or pm.** (5 minutes)

- Have pupils read the Writing tip. Explain that *am* refers to the morning and that *pm* the afternoon/evening (after 12pm).
- Have pupils complete the sentences so they are true for them.
- Check answers as a class.
- **Extension** Explain that *am* and *pm* are from the Latin words for the two cycles of the day from midnight to midday and midday to midnight.

**2 Write an invitation to a party.** (15 minutes)

- Refer pupils to Activity Book page 59. Remind them of what they learnt about writing an invitation from the last lesson.
- **Plan:** Use the Think-pair-share technique (see page 15) to discuss the writing plan from the Class Book in the last lesson. Ask *How many sections are usually in an invitation?* Ask them what they are (*who the invitation is for, when the celebration takes place, where it is and how to RSVP*). Pupils answer the questions individually.
- **Write:** Pupils use their plans to write their invitations. Monitor pupils, helping where necessary. Encourage them to decorate their invitations.
- **Check your work:** Using the Two stars and a wish technique (see page 15), pupils read and check each other's work, taking into account the Writing Tip.
- Encourage pupils to read aloud their completed invitations and show them to their classmates.

**3 Create your own party invitations and display them in class.** (7 minutes)

- Pupils write their own party invitations in their notebooks and decorate them.
- Put pupils in pairs. Have them use the Two stars and a wish technique (see page 15) to check each other's work.
- Make a class display of the invitations.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to discuss with pupils what they liked about today's lesson and what they didn't like. Ask pupils if they feel confident about writing invitations.

**Extra activity Photocopiable 76**

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 76.

## Phonics

## Lesson 9

## Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to review the sounds and spellings from Grade 4 Semesters 1 and 2; to review the tricky words from Semesters 1 and 2.
- **Target words:** revision: **ow:** *snow, blow*; **eigh:** *eight, sleigh*; **ei:** *reindeer*; **ew:** *screw, chew*; **ur:** *fur, curl*; **dge:** *bridge, hedge*; **ge:** *stage, large*; **wr:** *write, wrist*; **mb:** *thumb, climb*
- **Tricky words:** revision: *bye, my, any, Mr, Mrs, people, can't, was, were, little*

## Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can understand basic factual statements relating to pictures or simple texts (GSE 30).
- **Listening:** Can identify key information from short audio recordings, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 31).
- **Speaking:** Can say simple tongue twisters and other types of playful language (GSE 27).
- **Writing:** Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).

## Materials

- Optional teacher-made flashcards for the sounds and spellings covered in Grade 4
- Optional teacher-made flashcards for tricky words covered in Grade 4

## Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Peer learning: pairwork

## Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Review the sounds and spellings covered in Grade 4 Semesters 1 and 2, as listed above. Write the different spellings on the board, then point to each in turn and ask pupils to say the sounds.
- Then write alternative spellings where appropriate, but arranged in a random order across the board, e.g. for *y:* *ie, igh*; for *ew:* *oo, ue*. Ask pupils to tell you which sounds match.
- Point to each of the spellings in turn and ask pupils if they can remember any words that contain the sound. You can invite them up to draw a picture or do a mime to represent the word.
- Say words with each spelling, for example *sleigh, stage, curl, wrist*. Encourage pupils to point to the correct set of letters on the board each time. If they find this difficult, write the complete words on the board and ask volunteers to come up and draw a line to the correct set of letters.
- Invite pupils to identify the letters in each word that make the target sound. They can come up and circle the letters, or tell you which letters to choose.


## Presentation (2 minutes)

- Tell pupils that in this lesson, they will review and consolidate their phonics learning from the whole of Grade 4.

## Practice


## Class Book

Phonics Lesson 9

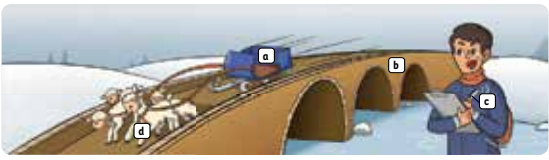
1  Circle and write. Listen and say.

1 scr\_ew\_      2 fr\_y\_      3 f\_ur\_      4 sn\_ow\_


ew oo      ie y      ur er      oa ow

2  Complete and match. Listen, check and say.

dge eigh mb wr




1 bri\_dge\_ (b)      2 sl\_eigh\_ (a)      3 \_wr\_ite (c)      4 la\_mb\_ (d)

3  Listen and write. Then say the tongue twister.

boat bike bridge fridge

Look at the **boat** \_\_\_\_\_,  
It's under the **bridge** \_\_\_\_\_.  
The man's got a **bike** \_\_\_\_\_.  
And a very large **fridge** \_\_\_\_\_!



90 ninety Activity Book, Unit 8  
Lesson 9

1  8.17 Circle and write. Listen and say. (5 minutes)

- Look at Activity 1 on page 90 with the class. Focus on the pictures and talk about what the pupils can see. Remind them that some of these items are revision from Semester 1.
- Focus on item 1 and elicit the word *screw* from the class. Then ask pupils to look at the two options underneath. Ask them to choose the correct vowel digraph to complete the word. They circle the correct answer *ew*, then write it on the line to complete the word.
- Play the audio for item 1 for pupils to listen, check and say.
- Repeat with items 2–4, working at a speed to suit your class.

## Phonics

## 8.17

- 1 screw
- 2 fry
- 3 fur
- 4 snow

2  **8.18 Complete and match. Listen, check and say.** (6 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at Activity 2. Elicit the sounds in the wordpool from the class. Then look at the picture and discuss what it shows. Ask questions to check understanding of the scene and actions. Then see if pupils can identify items in the picture that contain these spellings.
- Focus on the first gapped word under the picture, *bri*\_\_\_. Ask pupils to choose the correct letters to complete the word, then label the correct part of the image with number 1.
- You can play the audio for item 1 at this point for pupils to listen, check and say, or let pupils complete the remaining items and play the full audio at the end for confirmation.
- Check answers by pointing to the items in the picture and eliciting the correct words. In a confident class, ask pupils to come up and write the words on the board.

## 8.18

- 1 bridge
- 2 sleigh
- 3 write
- 4 lamb

3  **8.19 Listen and write. Then say the tongue twister.** (7 minutes)

- Look at the picture in Activity 3 with the class. Ask pupils to read out the words in the box and see if they can find the items in the picture.
- Explain that pupils will hear a tongue twister that relates to the picture. They will listen and complete the tongue twister with the words in the box.
- Play the audio and ask pupils to follow the words as they listen.
- Play the audio again and allow time for the pupils to write. Remind them to use the box to check they are spelling the words correctly.
- Repeat the tongue twister as a class until pupils are confident with the language and the pronunciation.

## 8.19

Look at the boat.  
It's under the bridge.  
The man's got a bike,  
And a very large fridge!

**Extra activity Collaborative work**


- Display the spellings of all the sounds using flashcards or write them on the board. Challenge pupils to choose three of them and to draw a scene that shows three items with these spellings. Ask them to label the picture, or see if they can write a sentence that uses all three words.
- Pupils can share their work with the class.

**Activity Book**





Lesson 9


Phonics

**Tricky words revision**


1  **Read and circle. Listen, match and say.**


- 1 Bye My! See you tomorrow!
- 2 My mum is a teacher. She is Mr Mrs Green.
- 3 There were where ferns in the hedge.
- 4 The birds were little few.


a  b  c  d 


2  **Complete. Listen, check and say.**


any can't was my


1  1 My thumb hurts!


2  2 There aren't any people in the town.

3  3 We can't go on the bridge.


4  4 Yesterday, there was snow.

3  **Listen and write. Say.**

1  1 Grandad, have you got any screws? You're little! You can't use screws!

2  2 You can use my glue. It was here yesterday ...

60 sixty

1  **8.20 Read and circle. Listen, match and say.** (3 minutes)

- Start by revising the tricky words that pupils have covered in Semesters 1 and 2 (*bye, my, any, Mr, Mrs, people, can't, was, were, little*). You can make flashcards of each word to elicit them orally as a class.
- Write sentences containing each word and invite volunteers to read them out. Try to combine the words in sentences, e.g. *There were lots of people.*
- Remind pupils that tricky words, which appear frequently in texts, can't be decoded in the same way as other words because not all the letters within these words follow the rules of phonics. Remind them that they should try to memorise tricky words where possible and use phonetic cues, if appropriate, to help them.





- Focus on Activity 1 on page 60 of the Activity Book and ask pupils to look at the sentences. Elicit or explain that they need to choose the correct word to complete the sentences, then complete the first item together as an example. Pupils read the whole sentence for context, then choose the correct word (*Bye*).
- Play the audio for pupils to listen and check. Then ask pupils to look at the pictures and choose the matching one (b). Explain that they should number the image in the box, then say the correct sentence as a class.
- Let pupils read items 2–4 and circle the correct words. Then play the audio all the way through for them to check their answers.
- When pupils have checked their answers, ask them to match the sentences to the images.
- Check answers by pointing to the images in turn and eliciting the correct sentence from the class.

### 8.20

- 1 Bye! See you tomorrow!
- 2 My mum is a teacher. She is Mrs Green.
- 3 There were ferns in the hedge.
- 4 The birds were little.


### 2 8.21 Complete. Listen, check and say. (5 minutes)

- Focus on Activity 2 and allow time for pupils to look at the pictures. Discuss what they can see and what is happening in each one.
- Ask pupils to read out the words in the box, and check their pronunciation. Model and repeat if necessary.
- Look at the first sentence and elicit suggestions from the class for the correct word to complete it. Confirm the answer (*My*). Allow time for pupils to write this on the line.
- Let pupils complete the remaining items individually.
- Play the audio all the way through for pupils to listen and check. Then ask pupils to say the sentences. If they need more support, play the audio again for each sentence at a time, pausing for them to repeat.
- Check answers by pointing to the pictures in random order and asking pupils to say the correct sentence.

### 8.21

- 1 My thumb hurts!
- 2 There aren't any people in the town.
- 3 We can't go on the bridge.
- 4 Yesterday, there was snow.

### 2 8.22 Listen and write. Say. (4 minutes)

- Look at Activity 3 with the class. Explain that in this section, pupils will practise listening and writing the tricky word in a sentence without a wordpool for support.
- First, look at the pictures. Discuss with pupils what they can see and what the boy and his grandad are doing. Ask if they can name any items which they have learned in the Class Book activities.
- Play the audio for the first picture and ask pupils to write the word on the line to complete the sentence.
- Repeat the process for the second picture.
-  Play the audio again for pupils to check, then have pupils repeat the sentences in pairs. Remind them to swap roles so they practise both parts of the conversation.

### 8.22

- 1 Boy:** Grandad, have you got any screws?  
**Grandad:** You're little! You can't use screws!
- 2 Grandad:** You can use my glue. It was here yesterday ...

### Finishing the lesson (3 minutes)

- Create five sentences that use the tricky words, e.g. *Mr Green was in the town*. Use flashcards or paper to put the words in jumbled order. Ask pupils to put the words in the correct sequence and write the correct sentences.
- Check answers by asking pupils to say the correct sentences aloud.

# Review

## Lesson 10, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to review unit language
- **Target language:** unit vocabulary

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41).
- **Writing:** Can write correctly structured questions with question marks (GSE 35). Can write about past activities using simple language, given a model (GSE 40).

### Materials

- Unit 8 flashcards (celebrations and ordinals)
- Units 5–7 flashcards
- fly swats
- photocopiable 80

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 10, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Ask *What events do we celebrate? How can we celebrate?* Accept all reasonable answers.

### Presentation (2 minutes)


- Explain that in this lesson pupils will review the unit and then play a game.


## Practice

### Class Book

Lesson 10, part 1 Review **8**

**1** Write the missing words. Use the past tense of the verbs.

 Ahmed and Hamzah (1) went (go) to a (2) funfair in the park. They (3) had (have) a great time! They (4) went (go) on the (5) big wheel because it was very fast. After that, they (6) didn't go (not / go) on the (7) roller coaster because it was very fast. After that, they (8) ate (eat) crisps and (9) drank (drink) lemonade. Suddenly they (10) saw (see) a little boy. The little boy was sad: 'I can't find my mum!'

 Suddenly a woman (11) ran (run) up to them: 'Muhannad! There you are! I (12) lost (lose) you!' Ahmed and Hamzah were happy the mum (13) found (find) her little boy.

At the end of the day, they (14) went (go) home.

**2** In pairs or small groups, ask and answer about the story.

1 Where / Ahmed and Hamzah / go?      2 What / they / go on?  
3 What / they / eat?                      4 Who / they / see?

Where did Ahmed and Hamzah go?      They went ...

**Challenge**

**Challenge your classmates and play the game!**

**Work in two teams. Look back through the unit to find the answers to these questions.**

1 What did Granny wear when she was 21? (1 point) **a new dress**  
2 What comes after the fourth of May? (1 point) **the fifth of May.**  
3 When is National Day? (1 point) **18<sup>th</sup> November.**

**Now think of three more questions to ask the other team.**

Activity Book, Unit 8  
Lesson 10, part 2      ninety-one      91

### 1 Write the missing words. Use the past tense of the verbs. (10 minutes)

- Refer pupils to page 91.
- Pupils work in pairs to complete the text with the past tense verbs.
- Walk around the room monitoring pairs.
- Call out a number at random, and, using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), ask different pairs to ask and answer.

### Diversity

#### Support

- Write the verbs from the story on the board. Check pupils know when they mean, e.g. elicit the translations. Ask pupils to tell you the Past simple positive/negative of these verbs before they do Activity 1.

#### Challenge

- Have pupils work in pairs to draw the story as a comic strip/cartoon in a few frames with speech bubbles.

**Extra activity TPR**

- Have pupils work in groups of four to take one of the roles in the story and act it out. Add an extra role if needed. Pupils can make their own dialogue and/or use what's in the story.

**2 In pairs or small groups, ask and answer about the story. (10 minutes)**

- Place pupils in pairs.
- Check pupils can pronounce the questions appropriately. Elicit the question forms. Have pupils repeat after you if they need help.

**Answer key**

- 1 Where did Ahmed and Hamzah go?  
They went to a funfair.
- 2 What did they go on?  
They went on the big wheel.
- 3 What did they eat?  
They ate crisps.
- 4 Who did they see?  
They saw a little boy.

**Challenge (10 minutes)****Challenge your classmates and play the game!**

- Divide the class into two teams. For large classes, divide the class into groups of eight and divide each group into two teams of four. Monitor the game.
- Give pupils two minutes to think of three extra questions.

**Extra activity Fast finishers**

- Pupils think of more questions for the Challenge game.

**Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)**

- Play *Word swat* (see page 21) with all the flashcards from the book.

**Lesson 10, part 2****Starting the lesson (4 minutes)**

- Play a game of *Picture dictation* with the Unit 8 celebration flashcards (see page 19). Then have pupils can play in groups.

**Practice****Activity Book**

Review 8

Lesson 10, part 2

**1 Read Yousuf's review and answer his questionnaire.**

Hi, I'm Yousuf. Yesterday it was English Open Day at school. I didn't wear my school uniform. I dressed up as an animal with my friend Muhannad. There was some English music. Before the Open Day, we ate some party food. We didn't have any ice creams because it was not hot, but we had crisps, sandwiches and fruit. We drank some lemonade, too. After we ate, we played some English games. It was good fun!

English Open Day

- 1 What did Yousuf wear to school today?  
a a school uniform  
b PE clothes  
c a costume
- 2 Who did he dress up with?  
a a friend  
b an English man  
c his cousins
- 3 They played English music.  
a True  
b False
- 4 What did he eat at school today?  
a fruit and ice cream  
b crisps, sandwiches and fruit  
c sandwiches and ice cream
- 5 He drank some lemonade.  
a True  
b False
- 6 He played some English games.  
a True  
b False

**2 Write your own questionnaire options for an English Open Day. Use your own ideas.**

English Open Day!

1 What did you wear to school today? a _____ b _____	2 Who did you dress up with? a _____ b _____	3 What music did they play? a _____ b _____
4 What did you eat? a _____ b _____	5 What did you drink? a _____ b _____	6 What did you play? a _____ b _____

**3 Give your questionnaire to your partner. Then tell the class about it.**

Self-assessment

My work in Unit 8 is OK good excellent.

My favourite lesson is the one about \_\_\_\_\_

Now I can \_\_\_\_\_

I need to work more on \_\_\_\_\_

sixty-one 61

**1 Read Yousuf's review and answer his questionnaire. (4 minutes)**

- Pupils work individually and check in pairs.

**2 Write your own questionnaire options for an English Open Day. Use your own ideas. (4 minutes)**

- Ask pupils to write the options for the questions individually.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.

**3 Give your questionnaire to your partner. Then tell the class about it. (4 minutes)**

- Ask pupils to swap their questionnaires with a partner and answer each other's questions.
- Pupils then share their partners' answers with the class. Encourage them use complete sentences when sharing answers, e.g. *Khalid wore a ...*

# Review

## Extra activity Critical thinking

- Pairs make a questionnaire to find out the most popular type of celebration in the class in their notebooks. They can choose what style of questionnaire they want to make, e.g. questions with true/false options, multiple choice, etc. Pairs can ask everyone in the class and create a poster with the results to present to the class.

## Self-assessment (2 minutes)

- Pupils work individually and check in pairs.

## Extra practice

### Activity Book

Lesson 10, part 2

**1 Write. Then match the words to the pictures.**

party invitation coaster fun big

1 fun fair  
 2 big wheel  
 3 roller coaster  
 4 party invitation  
 5 party hat

**2 Circle the correct word.**

1 She ate didn't eat a burger at Ruba's birthday party. It was delicious.  
 2 It was very hot but you drank didn't drink water after the race.  
 3 I ran didn't run to school because I was late.  
 4 We went didn't go to the funfair because it was very hot. We stayed at home.  
 5 Osamah and Rashid did didn't play basketball before going to the party. They didn't have time.

**3 Answer the questions. Write numbers or dates as words.**

1 Which is the tenth month of the year? October  
 2 Which is the second day of the week? Monday (various)  
 3 What date was last Monday? Monday  
 4 Which is the third month of the year? March

**4 Write the questions in the past simple. Then match the answers.**

1 What time you get up yesterday? a In the science lab.  
What time did you get up yesterday? b  
 2 you find the necklace in the jewellery box? b At 8 am.  
Did you find the necklace in the jewellery box? d  
 3 Fatma wear a beautiful dress? c My best friend.  
Did Fatma wear a beautiful dress? e  
 4 Where you lose your book? d No, I didn't.  
Where did you lose your book? a  
 5 Who you see at the funfair? e Yes, she did.  
Who did you see at the funfair? c

62 sixty-two

- 1 Write. Then match the words to the pictures. (3 minutes)**
- Pupils complete the activity individually.

- 2 Circle the correct word. (2 minutes)**
- Pupils complete the activity individually.
  - Check answers as a class.

- 3 Answer the questions. Write numbers or dates as words. (2 minutes)**
- Pupils complete the activity in pairs.
  - Ask pupils to read out the completed answers to check.

- 4 Write the questions in the Past simple. Then match the answers. (3 minutes)**

- Pupils complete the activity individually.
- Have pupils share their answers with the class.

## Vocabulary and Grammar reference

### Activity Book

Lesson 10, part 2 Vocabulary and Grammar reference 8

**Vocabulary**

**1 Translate the words into your language. Add more words to the list.**

Celebrations	Ordinal numbers
big wheel _____	first _____
buffet _____	second _____
costume _____	third _____
funfair _____	fourth _____
go-kart _____	fifth _____
invitation _____	ninth _____
party _____	twelfth _____
party hat _____	twentieth _____
play party games _____	twenty-first _____
present _____	thirtieth _____
rollercoaster _____	thirty-first _____
wedding _____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Grammar**

**2 Read and complete.**

did go eat didn't wore

Past simple – Affirmative and negative		
1 He/She/It _____	1 <u>wore</u> a cat costume	yesterday.
We/You/They _____	didn't 2 <u>go</u> to school	two days ago.
		last week.

Past simple – Interrogative and short answers		
Did _____	1 _____	3 <u>eat</u> a piece of cake?
Yes, _____	he/she/it _____	did.
No, _____	we/you/they _____	4 <u>didn't</u> _____
When _____	5 <u>did</u> _____	lose the ring?

Go to Dictation on page 73. sixty-three 63

- 1 Translate the words into your language. Add more words to the list. (3 minutes)**

- Pupils can work in pairs to complete the activity. Ask for feedback and write pupils' ideas on the board.

## Grammar

- 2 Read and complete. (2 minutes)**

- Do the activity as a class and write answers on the board for pupils to check against.

### Extra activity Photocopiable 80

- Ask pupils to do photocopiable 80.



### Dictation (5 minutes)

---

- Have pupils turn to page 73 in their Activity Book.
- Play the audio for pupils to individually listen and write the sentences.
- Check the answers as a class.

#### 8.23

---

- 1 We didn't take photos with our phones.
- 2 Did she wear a party hat?
- 3 We went to the park yesterday.

### Finishing the lesson (2 minutes)

---

- Write on the board, *In Unit 8, I can ..., I am good at ..., I am not very good at ...*. Pupils copy the sentences into their notebooks and complete them with their own evaluations. Ask different pupils *What will you do to practise more?*



# Get ready for...

## Lesson 11

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to practise for the A1 Movers Speaking Parts 1 and 2 and Reading and Writing Part 1
- **Target language:** unit vocabulary and grammar

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Speaking:** Can re-tell a familiar story, given prompts or a model (GSE 39).

### Materials

- an audio recording device
- slips of paper, enough for each pupil

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Expert envoy technique (see page 15)
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions (see page 15)

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Display or show the pictures on page 92. Ask pupils to tell each other what they can see and describe where the people are, why they are there, what they are doing and why. Pupils use only the visuals and their imaginations.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will practise for the A1 Movers Speaking Exam in the Class Book and the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Exam in the Activity Book.

### Practice

#### Class Book

- 1 **Tell the story. Use these verbs in the past.** (10 minutes)

- Pupils look at the pictures in Activity 1. Tell pupils that this is the A1 Movers Speaking Part 2 exam. Ask general questions about the pictures, e.g. *Where are they? How many people can you see? What is the woman holding in the first picture?*
- Read the Exam tip and check comprehension. Point out the order of the words and that they should be used in that order.

- Ask pupils to practice telling the story in pairs. Explain that they should use the verbs in the box in the Past simple. They can use the example in the speech bubble to help them tell their own version of the story. Pupils take turns to tell parts of the story. They help each other if they aren't sure of a word or expression.
- Invite pairs to tell their version of the story.
- Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14). Listen to a section from each pupil individually.

### Extra activity Communication

- Ask pupils to record their story/talk if they have tablets or other audio recording devices. Ask pupils to listen in pairs and notice where they didn't know the right word or pronunciation, paused for a long time, or had to repeat things. Have pupils help each other to spot the mistakes or gaps in knowledge. Pupils ask you questions about things they're not sure of. Then have pupils rehearse and record the story or talk again.

Lesson 11

## Get ready for...

**A1 Movers Speaking Part 2**

1 **Tell the story. Use these verbs in the past.**

be   drop   have   give   put   see   lose   find

**The lost sunglasses**

1

2

3

4

A girl and her mum were at the funfair. Their names were Aseel and Razan. They wore sunglasses because it was sunny. They wanted to go on the big wheel.

**A1 Movers Speaking Part 1**

2 **Find four differences. Then talk about them.**

1

2

In picture 1, the boy is 10, but in picture 2 he is 11.

In picture 1, there are some crisps. In picture 2, there are some cupcakes. In picture 1, three children are playing with a tennis ball. In picture 2, the children are playing with a football. In picture 1, the girl has an orange party hat. In picture 2, the girl has a yellow party hat.

92   ninety-two

- 2 **Find four differences. Then talk about them.** (10 minutes)

- Tell pupils that they will practise the A1 Movers Speaking Part 1 exam.
- Explain that both pictures are similar but there are some differences.
- Pupils work individually to find four differences.

- Put pupils in pairs. Read aloud the example in the speech bubble. Tell pupils to talk about the remaining differences with their partner.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Check answers as a class.

### Extra activity Collaborative work

- Divide the class into groups to discuss what they liked about the unit. Write a list of things on the board to help them: opening picture, vocabulary activities, story, listening activities, culture page, English in action. Pupils write down what they liked best on a piece of paper and, using the Expert envoy technique (see page 15), the envoy reports back to the class.

### Activity Book

Lesson 11


## Get ready for...

**A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 1**


**Think!** 1 Look at the words in Activity 2. Complete the table.

Events	Things	Places
a party	a party hat jewellery a costume a present	a market a funfair a shopping mall


**Do!** 2 Look and read. Choose and write the correct words.




a party




a funfair




a party hat




a shopping mall




jewellery



a market



a present



a costume

1 Necklaces and rings are part of this. jewellery

2 You give this on special days. a present

3 You can buy fresh fruit and vegetables in this place. a market

4 You can ride a big wheel or rollercoaster there. a funfair

5 You can buy many things here. a shopping mall

6 You can wear this on your head at a birthday party. a party hat

64 sixty-four

### 1 Think! Look at the words in Activity 2. Complete the table. (5 minutes)

- Tell pupils that this is the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 1 exam.
- Ask pupils to look at the words and pictures in Activity 2. Tell them work individually to write the words in the correct column in Activity 1.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### 2 Do! Look and read. Choose and write the correct words. (5 minutes)

- Tell pupils to read through the sentences first so they know what it is being described. Tell them to look carefully at all the choices before they decide which word to choose.
- Pupils complete the activity individually. Then they compare answers with a partner.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14).

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask *How did you get on in Unit 8? What did you like best? Which words were the most difficult to remember? Did you understand the grammar? What would you like to learn more about?*
- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask how successful pupils' learning is so far and, on a scale of 1–5, have them rate how much they enjoyed this unit.
- Congratulate pupils on completing the unit

### Shared reading Unit 8

- Focus a lesson on shared reading with the class. Follow procedures as set out in the Teacher's Book Introduction (see page 17).

### Unit 8 practice

- Pupils now complete the Unit 8 practice. Give pupils support where necessary and focus time on areas where pupils commonly needed extra help. Praise pupils for their hard work.

### End-of-semester 2 practice

- Pupils now complete the End-of-semester 2 practice. Give pupils support where necessary and focus time on areas where pupils commonly needed extra help. Praise pupils for their hard work.

# Optional lesson

## Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to revise unit language with fun tasks
- **Target language:** revision of unit language

## Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Reading:** Can make basic inferences from simple information in a short text (GSE 40). Can recognise single, familiar everyday words if supported by pictures (GSE 21). Can recognise simple words and phrases related to familiar topics if supported by pictures (GSE 23). Can understand some details in short, simple dialogues on familiar every day topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 30).
- **Speaking:** Can name everyday objects, animals or people around them or in pictures using single words (GSE 18). Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41).

## Materials

- Unit 8 flashcards (celebrations)
- Unit 8 poster: Celebrations

## Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Traffic light cards technique (see page 14); Lollipop stick technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Brainstorm all the celebrations that pupils have learnt about in Unit 8. Use the Unit 8 flashcards or poster as prompts. Ask pupils which is their favourite type of celebration.

## Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will play a game to locate a lost item.

## Practice

### Class Book

Fun corner 8

1 Play and say.

**Where is my party hat?**  
I went to a wedding.

**Where is my costume?**  
I didn't go to a wedding. I went to a funfair.

I didn't eat at a buffet at 1 o'clock.

I ate lunch at 1pm.

I drank lemonade.

I drank purple lemonade!

We played in the house.

We went on the big wheel.

I wore a costume.

I got a present.

I went to a ... I didn't eat ... After, I drank ... We played ... I wore ... I put my party hat with my ... Where's my party hat?

I went to a ... I ate ... Then I drank ... I went on a ... Then I got a ... I put my costume with my ... Where's my costume?

Under the present

Under the costume

Activity Book, Unit 8  
Fun corner

ninety-three 93

### 1 Play and say. (15 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the pictures and identify the celebrations.
- Pupils read either the orange speech bubbles or the green speech bubbles. Each pupil starts at the top. Pupil A playing in orange needs to read the story and find the party hat. Pupil B playing in green needs to find the costume.
- After each clue, each pupil needs to choose the correct photo under each pair of speech bubbles.
- At the end, pupils give a summary of the story and then complete the story to find where the costume or the party hat is.
- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to check pupils know what they have to do.

Activity Book

**Fun corner** 8

**1 Complete to find the hidden words.**

1

	p	ut
m	a	de
wo	r	ked
visi	t	ed
pla	y	ed

p \_\_\_\_\_ art \_\_\_\_\_ y

2

	w	ore
wer	e	
	d	rank
	d	elicious
d	i	d
prese	n	t
	g	ot

w \_\_\_\_\_ eddin \_\_\_\_\_ g







3

	f	ound
p	u	t
invitatio	n	
	f	avourite
h	a	d
b	i	g wheel
wo	r	e

f \_\_\_\_\_ unfai \_\_\_\_\_ r

**2 Put ticks (✓) to complete the table.**

Zaid: I went to a party last night. I wore a costume!  
 Samira: I went to a funfair. I went on a go-kart!  
 Malik: I was at a wedding. We got small presents!

						
Zaid	✓					✓
Samira		✓			✓	
Malik			✓	✓		

sixty-five 65

**Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)**

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask what pupils have learnt today. Ask *Did you enjoy the Fun corner? Which activity did you like the most?*

**1 Complete to find the hidden words. (10 minutes)**

- Pupils complete the missing words by filling in the coloured squares. Ask them what they think the first missing letter is in the first box. Tell pupils that most of the words are verbs in the past tense but that there are some other words too. Once they have completed each word, they use the letters in the coloured squares to write the missing word below.
- When pupils have finished, use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to practise pronunciation of the verbs.
- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) check pupils know what to do.
- Pupils complete the words individually and check answers in pairs.

**2 Put ticks (✓) to complete the table. (5 minutes)**

- Ask a pupil to read aloud the sentences.
- Pupils read the sentences and tick the correct boxes in the table.
- Check answers as a class.

# Graded readers 1 and 2

## Lessons 1–2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to review the phonics and language from semesters 1 and 2.
- **Target language:** *funfair, baseball cap, present, go-karts, rollercoaster, big wheel, bridge, high; What's the matter, Max? When did you last see it? Oh, yes, I had it when I went on the rollercoaster.*
- **Phonics:** revision
- **Tricky words:** revision

### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can identify key information about future plans in short, simple dialogues (GSE 32).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about everyday activities using simple language (GSE 34).
- **Reading:** Can understand the main themes of a simplified story (GSE 36). Can identify specific information in a simple story, if guided by questions (GSE 35).



### Learning outcomes

- **Listening:** Listen and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics; Listen and identify familiar words, set phrases and specific information in short, simple texts on familiar topics; Identify core vocabulary.
- **Speaking:** Use basic language structures when speaking; Retell simple stories, personal experiences and events using a range of familiar words, set phrases and expressions. Act out part of a picture story, short dialogue or role play.
- **Reading:** Decode unfamiliar words by using phonemic awareness and blending strategies when reading; Read frequently encountered words with ease; Read and understand the overall meaning of short, simple texts on familiar topics; Answer factual questions about reading material; Extract factual details and specific information in short texts; Make basic inferences from simple information in short texts.
- **Cognitive skills:** Participate in activities that involve taking the role of familiar people; Say whether they like a story, song, or game, and give reasons for their choice/preference; Recognise the differences between a story and a fact.

### Materials

- Unit 8 flashcards
- the Big Book

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)


-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Peer-learning: pairwork; groupwork

## Lesson 1, option A

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Explain that the next story is about a visit to a fun fair. Ask pupils if they like funfairs and what their favourite ride is.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Look at page 94 with the class. Ask pupils what they can see. Read the story title *At the Funfair* and ask pupils what they think the story will be about.
-  Explain that pupils will now participate in a shared reading activity where you will all enjoy a story together using The Big Book. Explain that some of the words from Unit 8 will feature in the story and they will also revise some of the letter sounds. Ensure that they are sitting comfortably, and in a position where they can see the text and the pictures easily.

### Before reading (5 minutes)

- Prepare pupils for the tricky words they will encounter in the story by writing them on the board to practise together (*my, can't*).



During reading (15 minutes)

Class Book

Graded reader 1

# At the Funfair

It was 1<sup>st</sup> July – Max’s birthday! Max liked going to the funfair, so he asked Harry to go with him. Harry gave Max a baseball cap for his birthday. Max put his new hat on.



Graded reader 1



Max and Harry quickly ran back to the rollercoaster.

Graded reader 1

First, the boys went on the go-karts. Then, they went on the rollercoaster. Last, they went on the big wheel. They had lots of fun! But after the big wheel, Max stopped and touched the top of his head.



Graded reader 1

Max saw his baseball cap on the bridge. It was very high. The rollercoaster stopped and a man got the hat for Max.



## Graded readers 1 and 2

- Begin reading the story to the pupils. Look at the pupils while you read and keep a good pace. Give time for the pupils to enjoy the story, pausing to allow them to predict what might happen next. Read expressively, changing your voice for different characters, and use facial expressions and different volume levels when appropriate. Ensure that pupils look at the pictures to help them understand the story.
- Pause at the end of each page and take time to ask questions to check understanding and then encourage pupils to make predictions about what will happen next. After reading page 94 to the pupils, ask *What's the date? (19<sup>th</sup> of July.); Who's birthday is it? (Max's.); Where do Max and his friend go? (The funfair.); What did Harry give Max? (A baseball cap; What does Max say? (Thanks for my cool present!)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. After reading page 95 to the pupils, ask *What do the boys do first? (They go on the go-karts); What do they do after that? (They go on the rollercoaster.); What do they do last? (They go on the big wheel.); What did Max do after they rode on the big wheel? (He stopped and touched the top of his head.); What can't he find? (His baseball cap.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 96: *When did Max last have the baseball cap? (On the rollercoaster.) Where do the run quickly to? (The rollercoaster.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 97: *Where was the baseball cap? (On the bridge.); Was the bridge very high? (Yes.); Who got the cap? (A man.) Who is happy? (Harry.) Why? (Max found his hat.)*

### Post reading (5 minutes)


- Write *Thanks for my cool present! I can't find my baseball cap on the board.* Ask pupils if they can identify any tricky words in the sentences and circle these words (*my, can't*).
- Encourage pupils to read whole sentences with support and reinforce the meaning of any words you focus on using picture cues, actions and explanations.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write the phonic spellings on the board: *br, oa*.
- Ask pupils to find words in the story that contain these spellings (*bridge, rollercoaster*). Segment each word and write them on the board below each heading and point to them for pupils to read. See if pupils can add other words to each list.

## Lesson 2, option A



### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

-  Ask pupils to work in pairs. They tell each other what they can remember about the story *At the Funfair*.
- Ask pairs to share what they can remember with the class.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Say sentences from the story, but include some mistakes. If the sentence is correct, pupils do not do anything. If there is a mistake, they clap. Encourage them to correct the mistakes.
- Say sentences from the speech bubbles. Pupils say who said it.

### Act the story (25 minutes)

-  First, ask pupils to work in pairs. They take it in turns to read a sentence from the story. Go around and offer help as they do this.
-  Now divide the class into groups of three (Max, Harry, narrator) Explain that they are going to act out the story. Ask pupils to choose a part to play, or you can allocate roles. Explain that the narrator will read the story as the others act, and will help the actors with prompts if they forget or do not know what to say.
- Give pupils time to practise their roles.
- When they are ready, groups take turns to perform the story to the class.
- Encourage the class to clap at the end.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils if they liked the story. Give them a few minutes to evaluate it and encourage them to think about what they liked and didn't like, what they thought of the characters, whether they were able to read the words and whether they understood the plot.
- Ask pupils which character was their favourite and encourage them to give reasons for their answers.



## Lesson 1, option B

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Write *y*, *ge* on the board. Ask pupils to say any words they can remember with these sounds.
- Use the Unit 8 flashcards and poster to revise the vocabulary. If you're using the poster, choose a pupil to come and tap on the picture of the word you say.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Look at page 98 with the class. Read the story title *The Animal Party*. Ask pupils what they think the story will be about. Ask them if they have ever been to a costume party.
- Explain that pupils will now participate in a shared reading activity where you will all enjoy a story together. Explain that some of the words from Unit 8 will feature in the story. Ensure that they are sitting comfortably and in a position where they can see the text and the pictures easily.

### Before reading (5 minutes)

- Prepare pupils for the tricky words they will encounter in the story by writing them on the board to practise together (*my*, *was*, *little*). You can also present the words *invitation*, *dress up*, *milkshake*, *wrong*.

## During reading (15 minutes)

### Class Book

Graded reader 2

## The Animal Party

My birthday is 25<sup>th</sup> April. Last year, I had a birthday party. I like animals, so I had an animal party. I gave invitations to all my friends. I asked them to dress up in costumes.



98 ninety-eight

Graded reader 2 8

My friends all wore different animal costumes. They dressed up as a black and white zebra, an orange giraffe, a green crocodile and a black and white panda. I was a lion. We had a delicious buffet. We ate big burgers and little animal cakes. We drank chocolate milkshake.



ninety-nine 99

## Graded readers 1 and 2

## Graded reader 2

After the buffet, we went in the garden and we played party games. I loved the party games. We had lots of fun. Then I saw something. It was behind the gate.

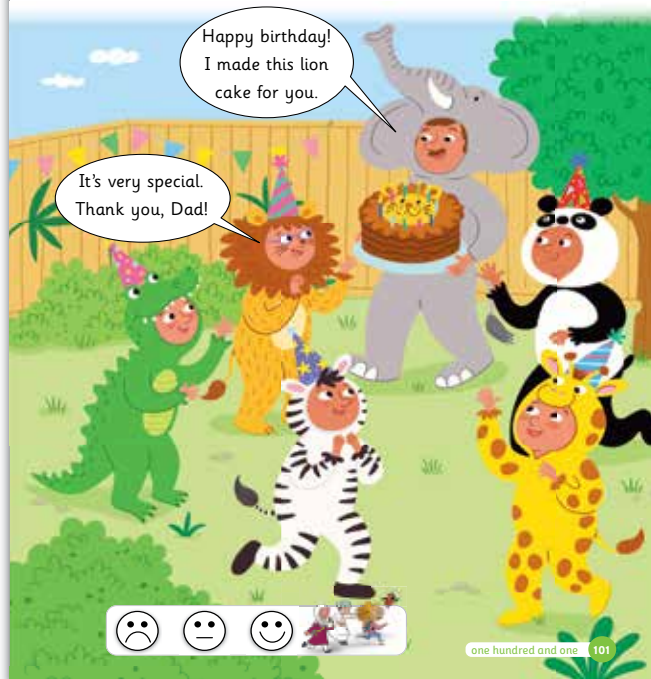


100 one-hundred

## Graded reader 2

8

I was wrong. It wasn't an elephant at all. It was Dad! It was his amazing elephant costume. He had a large birthday cake for me. My favourite animal was on top of the cake.



one hundred and one 101

- Begin reading the story to the pupils. Look at the pupils while you read and keep a good pace. Give time for the pupils to enjoy the story, pausing to allow them to predict what might happen next. Read expressively, changing your voice for different characters, and use facial expressions and different volume levels when appropriate. Ensure that pupils look at the pictures to help them understand the story.
- Pause at the end of each page and take time to ask questions to check understanding and then encourage pupils to make predictions about what will happen next. After reading page 98 to the pupils, ask *What date is the birthday? (25<sup>th</sup> April.); What birthday party did the girl have last year? (An animal party.); Who did she give invitations too? (All her friends.); Did they dress up? (Yes.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 99: *What animals did they dress up as? (A black and white zebra, an orange giraffe, a green crocodile, a black and white panda, a lion.); What was delicious? (The buffet.); What did they eat and drink? (Big burgers, little animal cakes and chocolate milkshake).*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 100: *What did they do after the buffet? (They played party games in the garden.); Were the games fun? (Yes.); What did the girl think she saw? (An elephant.); Where was it? (Behind the gate.)*
- Ask pupils to predict what they think will happen next.
- Continue reading the story. Ask if their predictions were correct. Ask questions at the end of page 101: *Was it an elephant? (No.); What was it? (It was Dad.); What did he give her? (A large cake.); What was on top of the cake? (A lion.); Who made the cake? (Her dad.); What does she say? (It's very special. Thank you, Dad!)*

## Post reading (5 minutes)

- Write *My birthday is 25<sup>th</sup> April. I was a lion. We ate big burgers and little animal cakes on the board.* Ask pupils if they can identify the tricky words in the sentences and circle them (*my, was, little*).
- Encourage pupils to read the whole sentences with support and reinforce the meaning of using picture cues, actions and explanations.

## Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)


- Write the phonic spelling on the board: *y, ge*.
- Ask pupils to find words in the story that contain these spellings (*my, you, very large, burgers*). Segment each word and write them on the board below each heading and point to them for pupils to read. See if pupils can add other words to each list.



## Lesson 2, option B

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

---

-  Ask pupils to work in pairs. They tell each other what they can remember about the story *The Animal Party*.
- Ask pairs to share what they can remember with the class.



### Presentation (5 minutes)

---

- Say sentences from the story, but include some mistakes. If the sentence is correct, pupils do not do anything. If there is a mistake, they clap. Encourage them to correct the mistakes.
- Say sentences from the speech bubbles. Pupils say who said it.

### Act the story (25 minutes)

---

-  First, ask pupils to work in pairs. They take it in turns to read a sentence from the story. Go around and offer help as they do this.
-  Now divide the class into groups of three (girl, dad, narrator). Explain that they are going to act out the story. Ask pupils to choose a part to play, or you can allocate roles. Explain that the narrator will read the story as the others act, and will help the actors with prompts if they forget or do not know what to say.
- Give pupils time to practise their roles.
- When they are ready, groups take turns to perform the story to the class. Encourage them to do the actions as they speak.
- Encourage the class to clap at the end.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

---

- Ask pupils if they liked the story. Give them a few minutes to evaluate it and encourage them to think about what they liked and didn't like, what they thought of the characters, whether they were able to read the words and whether they understood the plot.
- Ask pupils what animal they would dress up as.



# Learning club 4

## CLIL: Social Studies

### Lesson 1, parts 1 and 2

#### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to describe things to do on a holiday
- **Target language:** *build a sandcastle, buy an ice cream, go camping, go hiking, go sightseeing, go snorkelling, visit a theme park, visit a water park; Shall we go snorkelling? I'd rather buy an ice cream.*

#### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening:** Can understand the main information in short, simple dialogues about familiar activities, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 35).
- **Reading:** Can understand basic phrases in short, simple texts (GSE 24). Can understand the correct sequence of events in a simple story or dialogue (GSE 37).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about things they can or can't do using a simple fixed expression (GSE 28).

#### Materials

- Learning club 4 flashcards (*build a sandcastle, go snorkelling, buy an ice cream, go sightseeing, go hiking, visit a water park, visit a theme park, go camping*)
- Learning club 4 poster: Holidays

#### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Expert envoy technique (see page 15)
- Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

### Lesson 1, part 1

#### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to choose individual pupils to say where they went and what they did on their last holiday. Encourage them to use complete sentences.

#### Presentation (2 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson, pupils will talk about things to do on holiday.

#### Practice

##### Class Book

Lesson 1, part 1

Social Studies

### Describing holidays

**Think** 1 What can you do on a holiday?

**Learn** 2 Listen and say.

1  build a sandcastle	2  go snorkelling	3  buy an ice cream	4  go sightseeing
5  go hiking	6  visit a water park	7  visit a theme park	8  go camping

**check** 3 Write the correct activity. Then say.

- 1 People like to do this when it's hot. buy an ice cream
- 2 You need strong legs to do this! go hiking
- 3 People come from around the world to do this. go sightseeing
- 4 People like to go fast here, and they like water! visit a water park
- 5 I like to do this because I like making things! build a sandcastle

4 Make a new sentence for your partner.

5 Cover the photographs. How many words can you remember?

Go hiking. Go hiking, go camping ... Go hiking, go camping, visit a theme park ...

102 one hundred and two

#### 1 Think What can you do on a holiday? (3 minutes)

- Pupils discuss in pairs what they can do on a holiday. Give them one minute.
- Check answers as a class.

#### 2 Learn LC4.1 Listen and say. (10 minutes)



- Play the audio for pupils to listen and follow in their Class Books. Play the audio again and pause after each phrase. The class repeats the phrase chorally.
- **Extension** Pupils work in pairs and say which of the activities they would prefer to do and why.

##### LC4.1


1 build a sandcastle 2 go snorkelling 3 buy an ice cream 4 go sightseeing 5 go hiking 6 visit a water park 7 visit a theme park 8 go camping

**3 Check Write the correct activity. Then say.**


(5 minutes)

- Pupils work individually to complete the definitions.
-  Put pupils in pairs. Ask one pupil to read a definition and have their partner say the activity.
-  Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to make sure pupils know what to do.
- Check the answers as a class.

**Diversity****Support**


-  Review the holiday activities before doing Activity 3. Pupils draw pictures in their notebooks. They swap with a partner to guess the activity.


**Challenge**


-  Pupils choose three holiday activities and describe them to a partner. Their partner guesses the activities. Swap roles.

**4 ✨ Make a new sentence for your partner.**


(5 minutes)

-  Put pupils in pairs. Use the Expert envoy technique (see page 15) when choosing pairs.
- Pupils can write a sentence about one of the activities from Activity 3 or they choose a new one. Pupils work individually to write a sentence for their partner.
- Pupils read out their sentences and see if their partner can guess. Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.


**5  Cover the photographs. How many words can you remember?** (5 minutes)

-  Put pupils in pairs. Pupils cover the photos in Activity 2. Ask them how many of the activities they can remember. One pupil says an activity. Then their partner repeats that activity and adds another. They continue like this to see if they can say all of the activities.


**Extra activity TPR**

-  Put the class into two teams. Have a pupil act out a holiday activity for the rest of their team to guess. Continue until all pupils have had a turn. The team with the most points wins.

**Extra activity Creativity**

-  Place pupils in small groups. Tell them to draw their ideal holiday in their notebooks. Ask volunteers to present their holidays.

**Finishing the lesson** (5 minutes)

- On the board, place the Learning club 4 flashcards or poster. Point to an activity and ask pupils to say that activity. Then ask pupils if they can spell the complete phrases.
-  Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils what they have learnt today.

# Learning club 4

## Lesson 1, part 2

### Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Play *Remembering the order* (see page 19) with the Learning club 4 flashcards.
- Write the activities on the board after.

### Presentation (5 minutes)

- Explain that in this lesson, pupils will make a holiday calendar.
- Put pupils in pairs and have them write sentences about their last holiday (*where they went, what they did, what they ate, etc.*). Monitor and check they are using the Past simple correctly.

### Practice

#### Class Book

Lesson 1, part 2

Let's practise!

1 Sort the words: beach, city or mountains? Some have more than one answer!

Go sightseeing.

You go sightseeing in the city!

2 What do you want to do? In pairs, ask and answer about these places.

1 at the beach  
2 in the mountains  
3 in a city

We're at the beach. Shall we go snorkelling?

I'd rather buy an ice cream!

Show what you know

Make a holiday calendar

1 Choose a place for a week's holiday.  
2 Make a calendar for the days of the week.  
3 Decide on the activities you want to do on it each day.  
4 Write these on the calendar and draw pictures.  
5 Show your calendar to the class.

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday
Go snorkelling	Visit a museum	Visit a museum	Buy an ice cream
Thursday	Friday	Saturday	
Visit a water park	Go sightseeing		

one hundred and three 103

### 1 Let's practise! Sort the words: beach, city or mountains? Some have more than one answer! (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils which of the places they prefer to go to on holiday: the beach, the mountains or the city.
- Place pupils in groups and have them sort the activities from the previous lesson into the correct categories. Remind them that there can be more than one answer.
- Check the answers and write them on the board.

- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to check their the answers.
- Ask a volunteer to read aloud the speech bubbles. Place pupils in pairs. Explain that they are going to take it in turns to say an activity. Their partner then says where they can do that activity. Use the Expert envoy technique (see page 15) when choosing pairs.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.

### 2 What do you want to do? In pairs, ask and answer about these places. (10 minutes)

- Put pupils into pairs and have them ask and answer about the places and the activities that they'd prefer to do there. Ask them to use *Shall we ...?* and *I'd rather...* in the speech bubbles when talking about the places and activities.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Call on volunteer pairs to present their dialogues to the class.

#### Extra activity Fast finishers

- Have pupils write in their notebooks three things they learnt that they didn't know before the lesson.

### Show what you know Make a holiday calendar. (10 minutes)

- Put pupils into small groups. Have them read the instructions and decide amongst themselves where they're going, what they are going to do and when they are going to do the activities. Explain that they can use different activities than those in the previous lesson.
- Monitor pupils to make sure they are doing the activity correctly.
- When groups have finished, they present their calendars to the class. Have the class vote on the best calendar.

### Finishing the lesson (5 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils what they think about what they learnt today.
- Have pupils say the best thing about today's lesson.

# Language booster 4

## Lesson 2, parts 1 and 2

### Objectives

- **Lesson objectives:** to consolidate and extend vocabulary and grammar from Units 7–8
- **Target language:** Future with *going to*





### Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Speaking:** Can express personal plans and intentions for the future using *going to* (GSE 35).
- **Reading:** Can understand basic phrases in short, simple texts (GSE 24). Can understand the correct sequence of events in a simple story or dialogue (GSE 37).
- **Listening:** Can understand the main information in short, simple dialogues about familiar activities, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 35).

### Materials

- Learning club 4 flashcards (Holiday activities)
- Learning club 4 poster: Holidays
- fly swats

### Assessment for Learning (formative assessment)


-  Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
-  Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique (see page 14); Traffic light cards technique (see page 14)
-  Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Expert envoy technique (see page 15)
-  Independent learning: Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15)

## Lesson 2, part 1

### Starting the lesson (3 minutes)

- Review the holiday activities from the previous lesson. Show pupils one of the Learning club 4 flashcards or point to the poster and have pupils say and spell the activity.

### Presentation (2 minutes)

-  Explain that in this lesson, pupils will decide what activities they are going to do on their next holiday using *going to*.

## Practice

### Class Book



**Language booster 4**

**1** Where do you want to go on your next holiday?

**2**  Listen and read.

Are you going on holiday next summer?

Yes, I am. I'm going on holiday with my family.

Are you going to the beach?

No, I'm not. We're going to go to the mountains.

Are you going to go camping?

No, we're not. We're going to go hiking.

That sounds great!

**3** Act out the dialogue. Choose different places and activities.


beach   desert   city   mountains

build a sandcastle   go snorkelling   go sightseeing   go hiking


visit a water park   visit a theme park   go camping

104 one hundred and four

### 1 Where do you want to go on your next holiday? (5 minutes)

-  Put pupils in pairs. Ask them to discuss where they would like to go on their next holiday. Encourage them to give reasons for their choices.

### 2 LC4.2 Listen and read. (10 minutes)

- Say *I'm going to visit England. I'm going to go on the London Eye. I'm not going to go to the Tower of London.* Explain that we use *going to* and a verb to talk about future plans.
- Play the audio and have pupils read along to it.
- Ask pupils comprehension questions about the dialogue: *Who is the girl going on holiday with? (Her family.); Is she going to go to the beach? (No, she isn't.); Where is she going to go? (The mountains.); Is she going to go camping? (No, she's going to go hiking); What does the other girl say? ('That sounds great!')*
-  Ask pupils to work in pairs and practise the dialogue.
- Have volunteers read it aloud. Check pronunciation.



# Learning club 4

## LC4.2

**Girl 1:** Are you going on holiday next summer?

**Girl 2:** Yes, I am. I'm going on holiday with my family.

**Girl 1:** Are you going to the beach?

**Girl 2:** No, I'm not. We're going to go to the mountains.

**Girl 1:** Are you going to go camping?

**Girl 2:** No, we're not. We're going to go hiking.

**Girl 1:** That sounds great!

### 3 Act out the dialogue. Choose different places and activities. (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the words in blue and green.
- Explain to pupils that they are going to act out their own dialogues using the places in blue and the activities in green. They should use the dialogue in Activity 2 as a model.
- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to make sure pupils have understood the activity.
- Pupils work in pairs to practise their dialogues. Monitor them, helping where necessary.
- Invite pairs to act out their dialogues in front of the class.

### 4 LC4.3 Listen and number 1–4. Who is talking? (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to say what activities the people are doing in the pictures.
- Place pupils in pairs. Use the Expert envoy technique (see page 15) when pairing pupils. Explain that they have to number the people who are talking.
- Play the audio.
- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to make sure pupils know what they have to do.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Check answers as a class.

## LC4.3

**Ahmed:** I'm going to go snorkelling. Then I'm going to go windsurfing. Then I'm going to build a sandcastle.

**Badriya:** I'm not going to go windsurfing. I'm going to build a sandcastle and buy an ice cream.

**Noora:** I'm not going to buy an ice cream. I'm not hungry. I'm not going to go windsurfing either. I'm going to build a sandcastle.

**Hamzah:** I'm going to buy an ice cream and go snorkelling, but I'm not going to go windsurfing.

### 5 Play a game. (5 minutes)

- Put pupils in pairs. They take it in turns to say sentences about a person from Activity 4 with *going to*. Their partner then has to say who that person is.
- Monitor pupils to make sure they are using *going to* correctly.

### Show what you know (2 minutes)

- Pupils work individually to complete the activity.
- Ask them to share their answers if they feel comfortable.

### Finishing the lesson (3 minutes)

- Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to ask pupils what they learnt today.

Lesson 2, part 1

LC4

4 Listen and number 1–4. Who is talking?

Noora 3	Badriya 2	Ahmed 1	Hamzah 4

5 Play a game.

She's going to build a sandcastle and buy an ice cream. She isn't going to go windsurfing.

Badriya!

Show what you know

Well done!

Can you talk about holiday activities?

Can you talk about what people are going to do?

Activity Book, Language booster  
Lesson 2, part 2

one hundred and five 105



## Lesson 2, part 2

## Starting the lesson (5 minutes)

- Divide the class into teams. Play *Word swat* (see page 21) with the Learning Club 4 flashcards.

## Practice

## Activity Book



## Language booster 4

**1 Find and circle the words**




s	a	n	d	c	a	s	t	l	e	u	f	
q	v	b	r	t	w	v	o	p	z	z	c	
s	n	o	r	k	e	l	l	i	n	g	e	
v	t	c	v	w	v	i	w	v	z	h	c	
e	j	j	b	e	t	c	q	b	m	i	r	
w	e	z	w	v	q	n	m	u	i	k	e	
c	x	e	o	i	y	n	i	w	m	i	a	
u	g	h	r	y	u	i	w	t	o	n	m	
s	i	g	h	t	s	e	e	i	n	g	o	
y	o	w	a	t	e	r	p	a	r	k	r	
e	t	h	e	m	e	p	a	r	k	r	o	
q	u	i	b	l	e	c	a	m	p	i	n	g










**2 Complete the sentences with an activity from Activity 1.**

- It's hot and I love water! Shall we visit a water park?
- We're at the beach. Shall we build a sandcastle?
- Look at the colourful fish. Shall we go snorkelling?
- It's hot and I'm thirsty. Shall we buy an ice cream?
- It's our first day in a new city. Shall we go sightseeing?
- We're in the mountains. Shall we go hiking to the waterfall?
- I love sleeping under the stars. Shall we go camping?
- I can see a rollercoaster. Shall we visit the theme park?

**3 What about you? Complete the sentence.**  
I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_.

66 sixty-six

## 1 Find and circle the words. (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to look at the pictures and say what the holiday activities are.
- Pupils find and circle the activities individually. Check answers as a class.

## 2 Complete the sentences with an activity from Activity 1. (5 minutes)


- Ask pupils to read the example. Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to make sure pupils know what to do.
- Ask pupils to complete the activity individually and then check answers in pairs.
- Check answers as a class.

## 3 What about you? Complete the sentence. (2 minutes)

- Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to make sure pupils know what to do.


- Using the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14), have pupils read aloud their completed sentences. See which activity is the most popular.

Lesson 2, part 2




**4 Listen and match.**


Sara



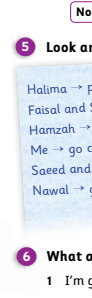
Faisal



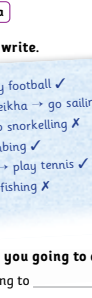
Samira



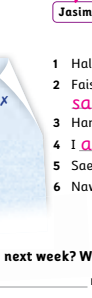
Noora



Jasim



Qais



**5 Look and write.**

Halima → play football ✓  
Faisal and Sheikha → go sailing X  
Hamzah → go snorkelling X  
Me → go climbing ✓  
Saeed and I → play tennis ✓  
Nawal → go fishing X

- Halima is going to play football.
- Faisal and Sheikha aren't going to go sailing.
- Hamzah isn't going to go snorkelling.
- I am going to go climbing.
- Saeed and I are going to play tennis.
- Nawal isn't going to go fishing.

**6 What are you going to do next week? Write.**

- I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ next week.
- I'm not going to \_\_\_\_\_ next week.

sixty-seven 67

## 4 LC4.4 Listen and match. (8 minutes)

- Use the Lollipop stick technique (see page 14) to check pupils know what to do.
- Play the audio once all the way through. Then play it again for pupils to match the people to the activities.
- Check answers as a class.

## LC4.4

**1 Boy:** Who are all these people in the photo?

**Girl:** These are some of my friends at school. Look! This is Noora.

**Boy:** The one with sunglasses?

**Girl:** No, the one with the beach towel. She is going to go snorkelling with her friends.

**Boy:** I see.

**2 Boy:** So, who is the girl wearing sunglasses?

**Girl:** Well, there are two girls wearing sunglasses.

**Boy:** Oh, yes, you're right.


**Girl:** This one is Sara. She's going to read a book at the beach.

**Boy:** Ah yes, I can see her book.


**Girl:** Yes.

- 3 Boy:** And the other one is ...?  
**Girl:** That's Samira.  
**Boy:** She isn't going to go to the beach, is she?  
**Girl:** No, she's going to go to the mountains.  
She's going to take a lot of photos.  
**Boy:** I can see her camera.
- 4 Boy:** What about the boys? What are their names?  
**Girl:** This one is Qais. He's not wearing sunglasses. He's going to go to the beach. Can you see his windsurfing board?  
**Boy:** Ah yes, I think he's going to go windsurfing at the beach.  
**Girl:** Yes, he loves windsurfing.
- 5 Boy:** So, who is the boy wearing glasses? It looks like he's going to play baseball. Look at his hat!  
**Girl:** Oh, that's Faisal. He's not going to play baseball. He's going to play tennis. Can you see his racket?  
**Boy:** Ah yes, that's right.
- 6 Boy:** And the boy with the sunglasses?  
**Girl:** Yes, he's Jasim.  
**Boy:** I'm sure he's going to a party.  
**Girl:** I think he's going to a birthday party. Look! He's carrying a present.  
**Boy:** Yes, you're right!


**5 Look and write.** (5 minutes)

- Ask pupils to write what each person is going to do using the information on the sticky note.
-  Use the Traffic light cards technique (see page 14) to make sure pupils know what to do.
- Monitor pupils, helping where necessary.
- Ask pupils to read aloud their completed sentences to check answers.

**6 What are you going to do next week? Write.** (5 minutes)

-  Pupils complete the activity individually and then check answers in pairs.
- When pupils have finished, ask them to share their answers with the class.

**Finishing the lesson** (5 minutes)

-  Use the Summative and thought-provoking questions technique (see page 15) to have a class discussion on how pupils feel about their overall learning. Are they happy with their learning? What do they think they are very good at? What do they think they can improve?





**York Press Limited**  
322 Old Brompton Road,  
London SW5 9JH,  
England

Original edition, Team Up! © Pearson Educación, S.A. 2018

Team Together © Pearson Education Limited 2019

This edition published by York Press © 2023

Published by arrangement with Pearson Education with permission of Pearson Educación S.A.

Authorized Licensed Edition from the Spanish edition, entitled Team Up, by Lucy Norris with Magdalena Custodio and Victoria Bewick, published by Pearson Educación, S.A. Copyright © Pearson Educación, S.A., 2018, and Team Together, Lucy Norris with Magdalena Custodio and Victoria Bewick, published by Pearson Education Limited 2019

The right of Lucy Norris to be identified as author of this Work has been asserted by her in accordance with the Royal Legislative Decree, 12 April 1/1996, which approves the consolidated text of the Law of Intellectual Property Rights.

The publishers would like to thank Magdalena Custodio and Victoria Bewick for their contribution.

Additional material provided by Gareth Vaughan.

'Pearson', 'GSE', 'Team Together' and associated logos and designs are trademarks of Pearson.

**Partner in development:**

Foreign Languages Section,  
Ministry of Education, Oman

The series has been customised by the Ministry of Education, Oman, based on the contract between the Ministry of Education and Pearson Education Limited and York Press Limited based on the ministerial decree 211/2021.

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

First published 2023

ISBN: 978-99992-56-22-3

Illustrated by Javier Lacasta Llácer (unit openers and stories), Miguel Calero Hernández, Alberto de Hoyos Maso and Carmen Marcos Vaca, Christos Skaltsas (Hyphen) and Zacharias Papadopoulos (Hyphen); Becky Davies, Bright Illustration, 2023 (Let's Go Fishing!; The Deep Well); Berta Maluenda, Bright Illustration, 2023 (The Animal Party; The Baby Camel); Lucy Neale, Bright Illustration, 2023 (A Special Jar; At the Funfair); Veronica Montoya, Advocate Art, 2023 (It's Craft Day!; The Old Food Market)

**Cover Image:** Javier Lacasta Llácer

Reg No: 7307/2024





LEARN Together  
SUCCEED Together

# TEAM Together OMAN



**Team Together Oman** is a four-level primary English course that develops language alongside future skills. Pupils are challenged to communicate creatively in authentic contexts, think critically and work together to get results. **Team Together Oman** sets out a clear path for progress and prepares children for success in external examinations including PTE Young Learners and Cambridge English Qualifications.

## Grade 4B

### For pupils

- Class Book with Digital Resources
- Activity Book
- Audio
- Videos and animations

### For teachers

- Teacher's Book with Digital Resources
- Flashcards
- Word Cards
- Story Cards
- Posters
- Photocopiable quizzes and worksheets
- Audio
- Videos and animations

**English Benchmark for Young Learners (EBYL)** and **Team Together Oman** make the perfect partners for your language and assessment needs

GSE	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	
Grade 4										
Grade 3										
Grade 2										
Grade 1										
CEFR	<A1	A1	A2	A2+	B1	B1+	B2	B2+	C1	C2
	PTE YL		EBYL		Cambridge English Qualifications					
Grade 1					Pre A1 Starters					
Grade 2	Firstwords		Level 1		Pre A1 Starters					
Grade 3	Springboard		Level 2		Pre A1 Starters					
Grade 4	Quickmarch		Level 3		A1 Movers					

www.moe.gov.om

ISBN 978-99992-56-22-3



9 789999 256223 >

Learn more about the Global Scale of English at [pearsonenglish.com/gse](http://pearsonenglish.com/gse)

## Unit 5 practice

## Answer key

## Reading and Writing A

- 1 1 go 2 play 3 go 4 play 5 play 6 go  
 2 1 c 2 d 3 b 4 a  
 3 1 Manar can swim well, but Huda can't swim well. 2 Can Manar build a robot carefully? No, she can't. 3 Manar can't talk quietly, but Huda can talk quietly. 4 Can Manar sing loudly? Yes, she can. 5 Can Manar and Huda knit quickly? Yes, they can.

## Reading and Writing B

- 1 1 go 2 play 3 go 4 play 5 play 6 go  
 2 1 c, up 2 d, can 3 b, a robot 4 a, but  
 3 1 Manar can swim well, but Huda can't swim well. 2 Can Manar build a robot carefully? No, she can't. 3 Manar can't talk quietly, but Huda can talk quietly. 4 Can Manar sing loudly? Yes, she can. 5 Can Manar and Huda knit quickly? Yes, they can.

## Listening A

- 4 1 c 2 e 3 a 4 d 5 f 6 b  
 5 1 True 2 False 3 True 4 True

## Listening B

- 4 1 d 2 f 3 a 4 e 5 h 6 c  
 5 1 well 2 can't 3 chess 4 board games

## Audioscript

 Task 4

- 1 knit  
 2 skip  
 3 build a robot  
 4 sew  
 5 kick  
 6 dress up

 Task 5

**Saeed:** Hi Rasha. What are you doing?

**Rasha:** Hi Saeed. I'm knitting a scarf.

**Saeed:** You can knit very well. I can't knit.

**Rasha:** Do you want to play chess today? I like chess!

**Saeed:** I can't play chess, but I can play board games.

**Rasha:** OK, let's play board games.

## Speaking A and B

The Speaking quiz should be taken by pupils in a separate class. Ask pupils to work in pairs. They should ask and answer the questions which you will assess.

Using the rating scale below, determine the scale out of 10 for the pupils' answers.

Accept short answers as long as they are appropriate. In the suggested answers, the words in brackets are optional. More advanced pupils will offer longer, more extended answers.

Allow for a minute between pupils to mark performance according to the speaking scales.

### Some possible questions and answers:

Can you (play chess)?

Can you (build a robot)? Yes, I can (, and I can skip).

Can you (play board games well)? No, I can't (, but I can play computer games).

Can you (sew quickly)? Yes, I can./No, I can't.

Can you (skip slowly)? No, I can't (, but I can skip slowly).

Can you play computer games well?

Yes, I can (, and I can play board games).

Can you dress up well? Yes, I can.

Use the writing rating scales below for Task 3 with a total of 10 marks:

<b>Writing rating scales</b>			
<b>OUTCOME # 1</b>		<b>OUTCOME # 2</b>	
Can write sentences.		Can produce short written texts.	
<b>RATING SCALE # 1</b>		<b>RATING SCALE # 2</b>	
<b>Tasks out of 10</b>		<b>Tasks out of 10</b>	
<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are consistently correct.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is very accurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is very clear.</li> </ul>	<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is always clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are almost always correct.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are almost always appropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>8</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are usually correct.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is mostly accurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is usually clear.</li> </ul>	<b>8</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is almost always clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are usually correct.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are usually appropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are reasonably correct.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is sometimes inaccurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is reasonably clear.</li> </ul>	<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is usually clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are reasonably correct.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are reasonably appropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>4</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are often incorrect.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is often inaccurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is often unclear.</li> </ul>	<b>4</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is sometimes unclear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are often incorrect.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are often inappropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are almost always incorrect.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is almost always inaccurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is always unclear.</li> </ul>	<b>2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is rarely clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are almost always incorrect.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are almost always inappropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>0</b>	<i>Performance does not satisfy the Band 1 descriptor.</i>		

Use the speaking rating scales below for Task 6.

<b>Speaking rating scale</b>		
<b>Vocabulary and Pronunciation</b>	<b>Interaction</b>	
<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the vocabulary required to deal with all test tasks.</li> <li>• Produces simple utterances but makes occasional mistakes.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word or phrase level but may also produce some longer utterances.</li> <li>• Pronunciation is always easy to understand, although some sounds may be unclear.</li> <li>• Has limited control of word stress and intonation.</li> <li>• Can join ideas with some simple linkers (e.g. <i>and, but, then, when</i>).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to instructions, questions and visual prompts, and very little support is required.</li> <li>• Is able to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• Almost always responds promptly, although there may be hesitation and some pausing mid-utterance.</li> </ul>
<b>8</b>	<i>Some features of 6.0 and some features of 10.0 in approximately equal measure.</i>	
<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the vocabulary required to deal with most test tasks.</li> <li>• Produces some simple structures but makes some basic mistakes which may obscure meaning.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word level but may also produce some longer utterances.</li> <li>• Can join ideas with a few simple linkers (e.g. <i>and</i>).</li> <li>• Pronunciation is usually easy to understand, mostly intelligible, although some sounds may be unclear.</li> <li>• Has limited control of word stress.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to instructions, questions and visual prompts, although some support is required.</li> <li>• Is able to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• Often responds promptly, although there may be hesitation and pausing mid-utterance.</li> </ul>
<b>4</b>	<i>Some features of 6.0 and some features of 2.0 in approximately equal measure.</i>	
<b>2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Has the vocabulary required to attempt some test tasks.</li> <li>• Attempts a few simple utterances but basic mistakes and lack of language prevent communication.</li> <li>• Attempts to produce the sounds of the language but Pronunciation is often difficult to understand.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word level but may also produce phrases.</li> <li>• Can join words with simple linkers (e.g. <i>and</i>).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to some instructions, questions and visual prompts, although frequent support may be required.</li> <li>• May attempt to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• There is hesitation and pausing mid-utterance; responses may be delayed or halting.</li> </ul>
<b>0</b>	<i>Performance does not satisfy the Band 1 descriptor.</i>	





Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Time allowed: 35 minutes

Class: \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_ / 40 marks

**Reading**

**Task 1 Read and choose the correct answer.** \_\_\_\_\_ / 6

- 1 Do you want to **go** **play** sailing?
- 2 On Saturdays we **go** **play** board games.
- 3 I **go** **play** windsurfing at the weekend.
- 4 My sisters can **go** **play** chess very well.
- 5 Do you want to **go** **play** computer games tomorrow?
- 6 I **go** **play** fishing with my brother on Saturdays.


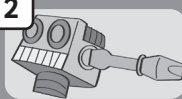



**Task 2 Read and match.** \_\_\_\_\_ / 4

- |                   |                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 I can dress     | <b>a</b> but she can kick.      |
| 2 Can you sew     | <b>b</b> a robot easily.        |
| 3 He can build    | <b>c</b> up well.               |
| 4 She can't skip, | <b>d</b> carefully? Yes, I can. |

**Writing**

**Task 3 Complete the sentences or questions with *can* or *can't* and the correct adverb.** \_\_\_\_\_ / 10

swim    build a robot    talk    sing    knit

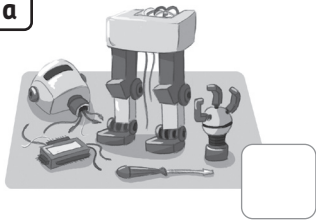
	1  well	2  carefully	3  quietly	4  loudly	5  quickly
<b>Manar</b>	☺	☹	☹	☺	☺
<b>Huda</b>	☹	☺	☺	☹	☺

- 1 Manar \_\_\_\_\_ , but Huda \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ Manar \_\_\_\_\_ ? \_\_\_\_\_ , she \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 3 Manar \_\_\_\_\_ , but Huda \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ Manar \_\_\_\_\_ ? Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ Manar and Huda \_\_\_\_\_ ? Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ .

## Listening

### Task 4 Listen and number. / 6

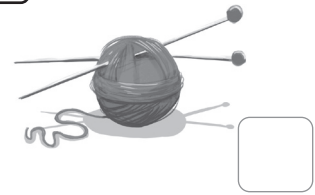
a




b




c




d




e




f

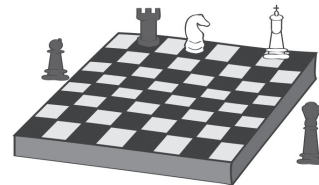
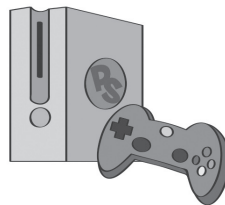
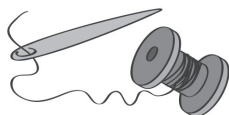
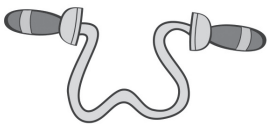
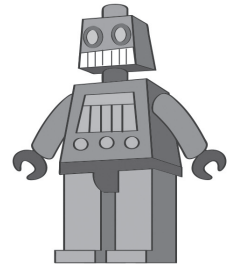
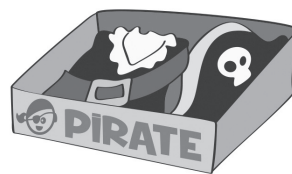
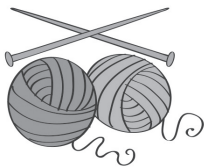
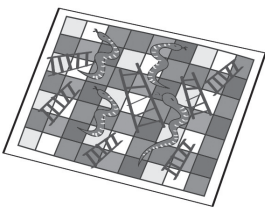



### Task 5 Listen and choose *True* or *False*. / 4

- 1 Rasha can knit very well. True  False
- 2 Saeed can knit. True  False
- 3 Saeed can't play chess. True  False
- 4 The children agree to play board games. True  False

## Speaking

### Task 6 In pairs, ask and answer about what you can and can't do. / 10



Yes, I can... and I can ...

Can you ...?

I can't ..., but I can ...



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Time allowed: 35 minutes

Class: \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_ / 40 marks

**Reading**

**Task 1** Read and complete the sentences. Use *go* or *play*. \_\_\_\_\_ / 6

- 1 Do you want to \_\_\_\_\_ sailing?
- 2 On Saturdays we \_\_\_\_\_ board games.
- 3 I \_\_\_\_\_ windsurfing at the weekend.
- 4 My sisters can \_\_\_\_\_ chess very well.
- 5 Do you want to \_\_\_\_\_ computer games tomorrow?
- 6 I \_\_\_\_\_ fishing with my brother on Saturdays.


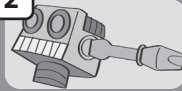



**Task 2** Read, match and complete. \_\_\_\_\_ / 4

- |                   |                            |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 I can dress     | a _____ she can kick.      |
| 2 Can you sew     | b _____ easily.            |
| 3 He can build    | c _____ well.              |
| 4 She can't skip, | d carefully? Yes, I _____. |

**Writing**

**Task 3** Look and complete the sentences and questions. \_\_\_\_\_ / 10

swim    build a robot    talk    sing    knit

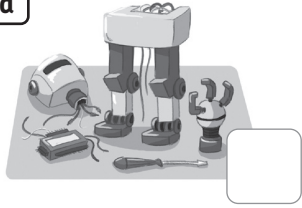
	1  well	2  carefully	3  quietly	4  loudly	5  quickly
<b>Manar</b>	☺	☹	☹	☺	☺
<b>Huda</b>	☹	☺	☺	☹	☺

- 1 Manar can \_\_\_\_\_, but Huda \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ Manar \_\_\_\_\_? \_\_\_\_\_, she \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Manar \_\_\_\_\_, but Huda \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ Manar \_\_\_\_\_? \_\_\_\_\_, she \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ Manar and Huda \_\_\_\_\_? \_\_\_\_\_, they \_\_\_\_\_.

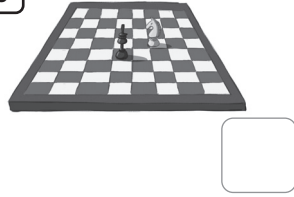
## Listening

**Task 4**  Listen and number. There are two extra.        / 6

a



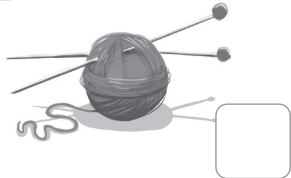
b



c



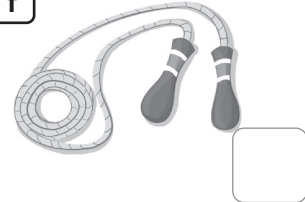
d



e



f



g



h

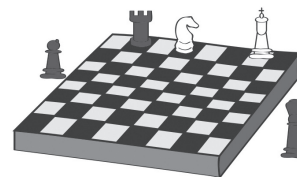
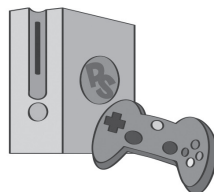
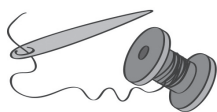
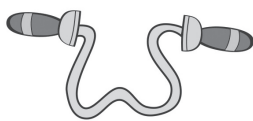
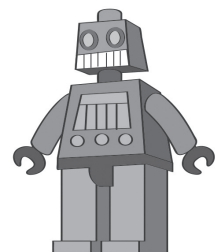
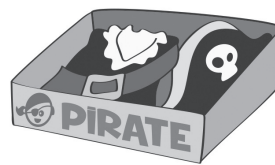
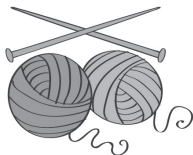
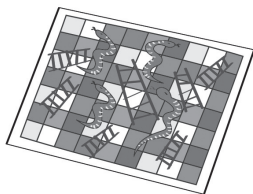


**Task 5**  Listen and complete.        / 4

- 1 Rasha can knit very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Saeed \_\_\_\_\_ knit.
- 3 Saeed can't play \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 The children agree to play \_\_\_\_\_.

## Speaking

**Task 6** In pairs, ask and answer about what you can and can't do.        / 10



Can you ...?

## Unit 6 practice

## Answer key

## Reading and Writing A

- 1 1b 2e 3f 4d 5a 6c  
 2 1 ancient 2 busy 3 expensive  
 4 modern 5 quiet  
 3 1 were 2 weren't 3 wasn't 4 Was  
 5 were

## Reading and Writing B

- 1 1b 2e 3f 4d 5a 6c  
 2 1 ancient 2 busy 3 expensive  
 4 modern 5 quiet  
 3 1 were/weren't 2 weren't 3 wasn't  
 4 Was 5 were

## Listening A

- 4 1c 2e 3b 4f 5a 6d  
 5 1 shopping mall 2 busy 3 bookshop

## Listening B

- 4 1c 2e 3b 4g 5a 6d  
 5 1 shopping mall 2 busy 3 bookshop

## Audioscript

 Task 4

- 1 expensive  
 2 safe  
 3 cheap  
 4 modern  
 5 noisy  
 6 quiet

 Task 5

**Talal:** Hi Noora. Where were you yesterday?  
 Were you at the clothes shop?

**Noora:** No, I wasn't. I was at the shopping  
 mall with Azza.

**Talal:** OK. Was it busy?

**Noora:** Yes, it was. Where were you, Talal?

**Talal:** I was at the bookshop with Anas.



## Speaking A and B

The Speaking quiz should be taken by pupils in a separate class. Ask pupils to work in pairs. They should ask and answer the questions which you will assess.

Using the rating scale below, determine the scale out of 10 for the pupils' answers.

Accept short answers as long as they are appropriate. In the suggested answers, the words in brackets are optional. More advanced pupils will offer longer, more extended answers.

Allow for a minute between pupils to mark performance according to the speaking scales.

### Some possible questions and answers:

Where was Marwa yesterday? (She was) at the bus stop (at eleven o'clock).

Where was Sara yesterday? (She was) at the train station (at six o'clock).

Where were Marwa and Sara last Saturday? (They were) at the square (at four o'clock).

Was Marwa at the park yesterday? No (, she wasn't).

Was Sara at the café last Saturday? Yes (, she was).

They were at the square at the same time.

Use the writing rating scales below for Task 3 with a total of 10 marks:

<b>Writing rating scales</b>			
<b>OUTCOME # 1</b>		<b>OUTCOME # 2</b>	
Can write sentences.		Can produce short written texts.	
<b>RATING SCALE # 1</b>		<b>RATING SCALE # 2</b>	
<b>Tasks out of 10</b>		<b>Tasks out of 10</b>	
<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are consistently correct.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is very accurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is very clear.</li> </ul>	<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is always clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are almost always correct.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are almost always appropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>8</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are usually correct.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is mostly accurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is usually clear.</li> </ul>	<b>8</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is almost always clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are usually correct.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are usually appropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are reasonably correct.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is sometimes inaccurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is reasonably clear.</li> </ul>	<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is usually clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are reasonably correct.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are reasonably appropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>4</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are often incorrect.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is often inaccurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is often unclear.</li> </ul>	<b>4</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is sometimes unclear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are often incorrect.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are often inappropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are almost always incorrect.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is almost always inaccurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is always unclear.</li> </ul>	<b>2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is rarely clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are almost always incorrect.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are almost always inappropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>0</b>	<i>Performance does not satisfy the Band 1 descriptor.</i>		

Use the speaking rating scales below for Task 6.

<b>Speaking rating scale</b>		
<b>Vocabulary and Pronunciation</b>	<b>Interaction</b>	
<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the vocabulary required to deal with all test tasks.</li> <li>• Produces simple utterances but makes occasional mistakes.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word or phrase level but may also produce some longer utterances.</li> <li>• Pronunciation is always easy to understand, although some sounds may be unclear.</li> <li>• Has limited control of word stress and intonation.</li> <li>• Can join ideas with some simple linkers (e.g. <i>and, but, then, when</i>).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to instructions, questions and visual prompts, and very little support is required.</li> <li>• Is able to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• Almost always responds promptly, although there may be hesitation and some pausing mid-utterance.</li> </ul>
<b>8</b>	<i>Some features of 6.0 and some features of 10.0 in approximately equal measure.</i>	
<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the vocabulary required to deal with most test tasks.</li> <li>• Produces some simple structures but makes some basic mistakes which may obscure meaning.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word level but may also produce some longer utterances.</li> <li>• Can join ideas with a few simple linkers (e.g. <i>and</i>).</li> <li>• Pronunciation is usually easy to understand, mostly intelligible, although some sounds may be unclear.</li> <li>• Has limited control of word stress.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to instructions, questions and visual prompts, although some support is required.</li> <li>• Is able to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• Often responds promptly, although there may be hesitation and pausing mid-utterance.</li> </ul>
<b>4</b>	<i>Some features of 6.0 and some features of 2.0 in approximately equal measure.</i>	
<b>2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Has the vocabulary required to attempt some test tasks.</li> <li>• Attempts a few simple utterances but basic mistakes and lack of language prevent communication.</li> <li>• Attempts to produce the sounds of the language but Pronunciation is often difficult to understand.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word level but may also produce phrases.</li> <li>• Can join words with simple linkers (e.g. <i>and</i>).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to some instructions, questions and visual prompts, although frequent support may be required.</li> <li>• May attempt to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• There is hesitation and pausing mid-utterance; responses may be delayed or halting.</li> </ul>
<b>0</b>	<i>Performance does not satisfy the Band 1 descriptor.</i>	



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Time allowed: 35 minutes

Class: \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_ / 40 marks

**Reading**

**Task 1 Read and match.** (\_\_\_\_ / 6)

- |                                   |                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 You can catch a train there.    | <b>a</b> a clothes shop  |
| 2 You can sleep there.            | <b>b</b> a train station |
| 3 You can see animals there.      | <b>c</b> a café          |
| 4 You can buy fruit there.        | <b>d</b> a market        |
| 5 You can buy T-shirts there.     | <b>e</b> a hotel         |
| 6 You can buy a cup of tea there. | <b>f</b> a zoo           |

**Task 2 Read and choose the correct answer.** (\_\_\_\_ / 5)

- The buildings in the square were really old. They were **ancient** **safe** **cheap** .
- There were a lot of people in the shopping mall. It was **quiet** **busy** **safe** .
- The cake was nice, but it was very **noisy** **expensive** **cheap** .
- The car park wasn't old. It was **modern** **safe** **ancient** .
- There were no people in the café. It was very **ancient** **busy** **quiet** .

**Writing**

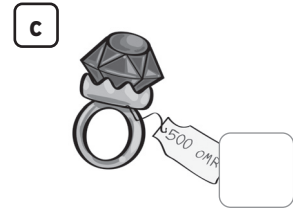
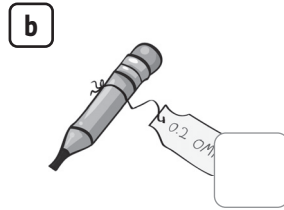
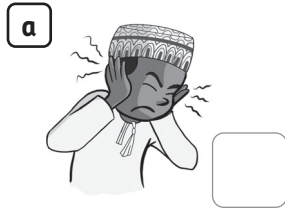
**Task 3 Complete the sentences with *was*, *wasn't*, *were* or *weren't*.** (\_\_\_\_ / 10)



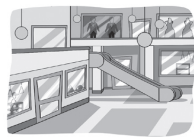
- Aseel and Sara \_\_\_\_\_ at the shopping mall last Saturday.
- Last Sunday we \_\_\_\_\_ at home. We were at the zoo.
- My sister \_\_\_\_\_ at school yesterday. It was a holiday.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Ibrahim at the bus stop this morning?
- There \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of expensive bananas at the market yesterday.

## Listening

**Task 4**  Listen and number. There is one extra. \_\_\_\_\_ / 6



**Task 5**  Listen and complete the sentences. \_\_\_\_\_ / 3



- 1 Noora was at the \_\_\_\_\_ with Azza.
- 2 It was very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Talal was at the \_\_\_\_\_ with Anas.

## Speaking

**Task 6** In pairs, ask and answer. Where were Marwa and Sara? When were they at the same place at the same time? \_\_\_\_\_ / 10



**Marwa**

	yesterday	last Saturday
eleven o'clock	bus stop	park
four o'clock	shopping mall	square
six o'clock	café	hotel



**Sara**

	yesterday	last Saturday
eleven o'clock	market	bridge
four o'clock	clothes shop	square
six o'clock	train station	café





Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Time allowed: 35 minutes

Class: \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_ / 40 marks

**Reading**

**Task 1 Read and match.** (\_\_\_\_ / 6)

- |                                   |                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 You can catch a train there.    | <b>a</b> a clothes shop  |
| 2 You can sleep there.            | <b>b</b> a train station |
| 3 You can see animals there.      | <b>c</b> a café          |
| 4 You can buy fruit there.        | <b>d</b> a market        |
| 5 You can buy T-shirts there.     | <b>e</b> a hotel         |
| 6 You can buy a cup of tea there. | <b>f</b> a zoo           |

**Task 2 Read and choose the correct answer.** (\_\_\_\_ / 5)

- The buildings in the square were really old. They were **ancient** **safe** **cheap** .
- There were a lot of people in the shopping mall. It was **quiet** **busy** **safe** .
- The cake was nice, but it was very **noisy** **expensive** **cheap** .
- The car park wasn't old. It was **modern** **safe** **ancient** .
- There were no people in the café. It was very **ancient** **busy** **quiet** .

**Writing**

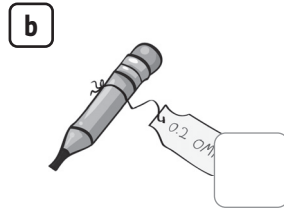
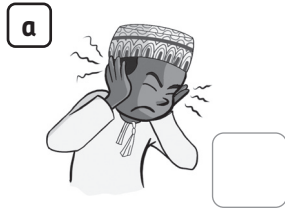
**Task 3 Complete the sentences with *was*, *wasn't*, *were* or *weren't*.** (\_\_\_\_ / 10)



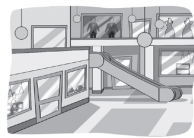
- Aseel and Sara \_\_\_\_\_ at the shopping mall last Saturday.
- Last Sunday we \_\_\_\_\_ at home. We were at the zoo.
- My sister \_\_\_\_\_ at school yesterday. It was a holiday.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Ibrahim at the bus stop this morning?
- There \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of expensive bananas at the market yesterday.

## Listening

**Task 4**  Listen and number. There is one extra. \_\_\_\_\_ / 6



**Task 5**  Listen and complete the sentences. \_\_\_\_\_ / 3



- 1 Noora was at the \_\_\_\_\_ with Azza.
- 2 It was very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Talal was at the \_\_\_\_\_ with Anas.

## Speaking

**Task 6** In pairs, ask and answer. Where were Marwa and Sara? When were they at the same place at the same time? \_\_\_\_\_ / 10



**Marwa**

	yesterday	last Saturday
eleven o'clock	bus stop	park
four o'clock	shopping mall	square
six o'clock	café	hotel



**Sara**

	yesterday	last Saturday
eleven o'clock	market	bridge
four o'clock	clothes shop	square
six o'clock	train station	café

## Unit 7 practice

## Answer key

## Reading and Writing A

1 1 X 2 X 3 ✓ 4 X 5 X  
6 ✓ 7 X 8 ✓

2 1 c 2 d 3 a 4 b

3 1 visited 2 arrived 3 walked 4 were  
5 played 6 watched 7 cooked  
8 listened 9 painted 10 didn't want

## Reading and Writing B

1 1 khanjar 2 sword 3 jewellery  
4 necklace 5 jars 6 stone 7 silver  
8 clay

2 1 c 2 d 3 a 4 b

3 1 visited 2 arrived 3 walked 4 were  
5 played 6 watched 7 cooked  
8 listened 9 painted 10 didn't want

## Listening A

4 1 seven 2 museum 3 year  
4 Wednesday 5 two

5 1 c 2 b 3 a

## Listening B

4 1 seven 2 museum 3 year  
4 Wednesday 5 two

5 1 d 2 c 3 a

## Audioscript



## Task 4

1

**Ahmed:** Zaid, what time did the film start yesterday?

**Zaid:** It started at seven o'clock. It was great.

2

**Rasha:** Azza, what did you do yesterday?

**Azza:** I visited a museum. I learned a lot about ancient jewellery.

3

**Rahaf:** Where did you live last year, Huda?

**Huda:** I lived in London. It was exciting! I visited Buckingham Palace, but I didn't see the king!

4

**Hamed:** Saeed, did you start your project on Monday?

**Saeed:** No, I didn't. I started it on Wednesday.

5

**Hazim:** Abdullah, when did you arrive in Madrid?

**Abdullah:** I arrived in Madrid two days ago.



## Task 5

1 Yesterday Hamzah and Ibrahim played chess.

2 On Tuesday at four o'clock, Sheikha played tennis.

3 Qais visited his grandparents last weekend. He travelled by train.

## Speaking A and B

The Speaking quiz should be taken by pupils in a separate class. Ask pupils to work in pairs.

They should ask and answer the questions which you will assess.

Using the rating scale below, determine the scale out of 10 for the pupils' answers.

Accept short answers as long as they are appropriate. In the suggested answers, the words in brackets are optional. More advanced pupils will offer longer, more extended answers. Allow for a minute between pupils to mark performance according to the speaking scales.

### Some possible questions and answers:

What did you do on Monday? I visited the museum. (It was really interesting!)

What did you do on Friday? I played basketball (with my friends).

What did you do at the weekend? I cooked (lunch).

Did you (visit the shopping mall) yesterday?

Yes (, I did). / No (, I didn't).

Did you (dress up) at the weekend? Yes

(, I did). / No (, I didn't).

Use the writing rating scales below for Task 3 with a total of 10 marks:

<b>Writing rating scales</b>			
<b>OUTCOME # 1</b>		<b>OUTCOME # 2</b>	
Can write sentences.		Can produce short written texts.	
<b>RATING SCALE # 1</b>		<b>RATING SCALE # 2</b>	
<b>Tasks out of 10</b>		<b>Tasks out of 10</b>	
<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are consistently correct.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is very accurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is very clear.</li> </ul>	<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is always clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are almost always correct.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are almost always appropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>8</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are usually correct.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is mostly accurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is usually clear.</li> </ul>	<b>8</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is almost always clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are usually correct.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are usually appropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are reasonably correct.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is sometimes inaccurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is reasonably clear.</li> </ul>	<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is usually clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are reasonably correct.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are reasonably appropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>4</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are often incorrect.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is often inaccurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is often unclear.</li> </ul>	<b>4</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is sometimes unclear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are often incorrect.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are often inappropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are almost always incorrect.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is almost always inaccurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is always unclear.</li> </ul>	<b>2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is rarely clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are almost always incorrect.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are almost always inappropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>0</b>	<i>Performance does not satisfy the Band 1 descriptor.</i>		



Use the speaking rating scales below for Task 6.

<b>Speaking rating scale</b>		
<b>Vocabulary and Pronunciation</b>	<b>Interaction</b>	
<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the vocabulary required to deal with all test tasks.</li> <li>• Produces simple utterances but makes occasional mistakes.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word or phrase level but may also produce some longer utterances.</li> <li>• Pronunciation is always easy to understand, although some sounds may be unclear.</li> <li>• Has limited control of word stress and intonation.</li> <li>• Can join ideas with some simple linkers (e.g. <i>and, but, then, when</i>).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to instructions, questions and visual prompts, and very little support is required.</li> <li>• Is able to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• Almost always responds promptly, although there may be hesitation and some pausing mid-utterance.</li> </ul>
<b>8</b>	<i>Some features of 6.0 and some features of 10.0 in approximately equal measure.</i>	
<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the vocabulary required to deal with most test tasks.</li> <li>• Produces some simple structures but makes some basic mistakes which may obscure meaning.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word level but may also produce some longer utterances.</li> <li>• Can join ideas with a few simple linkers (e.g. <i>and</i>).</li> <li>• Pronunciation is usually easy to understand, mostly intelligible, although some sounds may be unclear.</li> <li>• Has limited control of word stress.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to instructions, questions and visual prompts, although some support is required.</li> <li>• Is able to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• Often responds promptly, although there may be hesitation and pausing mid-utterance.</li> </ul>
<b>4</b>	<i>Some features of 6.0 and some features of 2.0 in approximately equal measure.</i>	
<b>2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Has the vocabulary required to attempt some test tasks.</li> <li>• Attempts a few simple utterances but basic mistakes and lack of language prevent communication.</li> <li>• Attempts to produce the sounds of the language but Pronunciation is often difficult to understand.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word level but may also produce phrases.</li> <li>• Can join words with simple linkers (e.g. <i>and</i>).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to some instructions, questions and visual prompts, although frequent support may be required.</li> <li>• May attempt to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• There is hesitation and pausing mid-utterance; responses may be delayed or halting.</li> </ul>
<b>0</b>	<i>Performance does not satisfy the Band 1 descriptor.</i>	



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Time allowed: 35 minutes

Class: \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_ / 40 marks

**Reading**

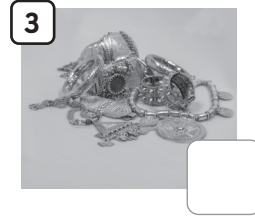
**Task 1** Look and tick (✓) or cross (✗). \_\_\_\_\_ / 8



sword



khanjar



jewellery



ring



well



stone



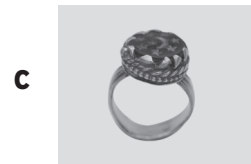
coins



clay

**Task 2** Read and match. \_\_\_\_\_ / 4

- 1 You wear it on your finger.
- 2 You get water from it.
- 3 They are small and round.  
You use them to buy things.
- 4 It's high and it's made of stone.



## Writing

### Task 3 Read and complete. / 10

Hi Younis,

Last weekend I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) my cousins. We (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at ten o'clock on Friday morning. We (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) to a big square. There (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a lot of cafés. In the afternoon we (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis and in the evening we (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) a film. On Saturday my cousins (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) a big lunch. Then we (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (listen) to music and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (paint) pictures. I like my cousins and I (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (not want) to go home!

See you soon!

Malik

## Listening

### Task 4 Listen and choose the correct answer. / 5

- The film started at  six  seven o'clock.
- Azza was at a  shopping mall  museum yesterday.
- Last  year  month Huda lived in London.
- Saeed started his project on  Monday  Wednesday .
- Abdullah arrived in Madrid  two  three days ago.

### Task 5 Listen and write the number. / 3

a



b



c



## Speaking

### Task 6 In pairs, ask and answer about what you did last week. / 10

What did you do ...?

I played ...

Did you ...?

I visited ...



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Time allowed: 35 minutes

Class: \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_ / 40 marks

**Reading**

**Task 1 Look and circle.** \_\_\_\_\_ / 8



sword khanjar

khanjar sword

jewellery wall

ring necklace



jars well

stone silver

silver coins

clay silver

**Task 2 Read and match.** \_\_\_\_\_ / 4

- |                                     |                   |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 You wear it on your finger.       | a They are coins. |
| 2 You get water from it.            | b It's a wall.    |
| 3 You use them to buy things.       | c It's a ring.    |
| 4 It's high and it's made of stone. | d It's a well.    |

**Writing**

**Task 3 Read and complete.** \_\_\_\_\_ / 10

arrive    be    cook    listen    (not) want  
paint    play    visit    walk    watch

Hi Younis,  
Last weekend I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ my cousins. We (2) \_\_\_\_\_ at ten o'clock on Friday morning. We (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to a big square. There (4) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of cafés. In the afternoon we (5) \_\_\_\_\_ tennis and in the evening we (6) \_\_\_\_\_ a film. On Saturday my cousins (7) \_\_\_\_\_ a big lunch. Then we (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to music and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ pictures. I like my cousins and I (10) \_\_\_\_\_ to go home!  
See you soon!  
Malik

## Listening

### Task 4 Listen and complete. / 5

- 1 The film started at \_\_\_\_\_ o'clock.
- 2 Azza was at a \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
- 3 Last \_\_\_\_\_ Huda lived in London.
- 4 Saeed started his project on \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Abdullah arrived in Madrid \_\_\_\_\_ days ago.

### Task 5 Listen and write the number. There are two extra. / 3

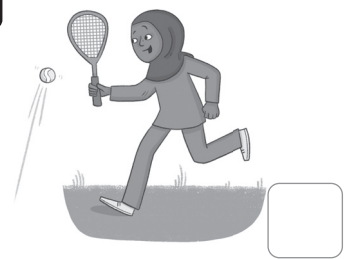
a



b



c



d



e



## Speaking

### Task 6 In pairs, ask and answer about what you did last week. / 10

What did you do ...?

Did you ...?



## Unit 8 practice

## Answer key

## Reading and Writing A

- 1 1 What time did the party start? a  
 2 Where did you have the party? e  
 3 Did you eat the birthday cake? c  
 4 Did you go to the funfair? d  
 5 When did you go to Salalah? b
- 2 1 c 2 a 3 b
- 3 1 got 2 made 3 went 4 wore  
 5 played 6 drank 7 ate 8 got 9 took  
 10 had

## Reading and Writing B

- 1 1 What time did the party start? g  
 2 Where did you have the party? f  
 3 Did you eat the birthday cake? b  
 4 Did you go to the funfair? d  
 5 When did you go to Salalah? a
- 2 1 d 2 a 3 c
- 3 1 got 2 made 3 went 4 wore  
 5 played 6 drank 7 ate 8 got  
 9 took 10 had

## Listening A

- 4 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 a  
 5 1 c 2 b 3 a

## Listening B

- 4 1 a birthday party 2 rice  
 3 (orange) juice 4 played (lots of) games  
 5 1 d 2 b 3 a

## Audioscript



## Task 4

- Halima:** Where did you go yesterday, Ruba?  
**Ruba:** I went to Aysha's birthday party.  
**Halima:** Where was it? Was it at the funfair?  
**Ruba:** No, it was at the funfair last year. It was at Aysha's house.  
**Halima:** What did you wear?  
**Ruba:** I wore my new dress and hijab.  
**Halima:** What did you eat?  
**Ruba:** There was a buffet. I ate some delicious rice!  
**Halima:** What did you drink?  
**Ruba:** There was lemonade and orange juice. I don't like lemonade so I had orange juice.  
**Halima:** Did you have fun?  
**Ruba:** Yes, it was a lot of fun. We played lots of games.



## Task 5

- Jasim's birthday was on the 5<sup>th</sup> of March. He had a big party.
- Razan went to a funfair on her birthday. It was on the 2<sup>nd</sup> of June.
- Yasir's friends had their costume party on the 23<sup>rd</sup> of May.

## Speaking A and B

The Speaking quiz should be taken by pupils in a separate class. Ask pupils to work in pairs. They should ask and answer the questions which you will assess. Using the rating scale below, determine the scale out of 10 for the pupils' answers. Accept short answers as long as they are appropriate. In the suggested answers, the words in brackets are optional. More advanced pupils will offer longer, more extended answers. Allow for a minute between pupils to mark performance according to the speaking scales.

### **Some possible questions and answers:**

Where was the party? (It was) a birthday party at my house.

When was the party? (It was) on Saturday (30<sup>th</sup> June).

What did you do? I ate (some cake) and drank (lemonade). We played party games and dressed up.

Use the writing rating scales below for Task 3 with a total of 10 marks:

<b>Writing rating scales</b>			
<b>OUTCOME # 1</b>		<b>OUTCOME # 2</b>	
Can write sentences.		Can produce short written texts.	
<b>RATING SCALE # 1</b>		<b>RATING SCALE # 2</b>	
<b>Tasks out of 10</b>		<b>Tasks out of 10</b>	
<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are consistently correct.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is very accurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is very clear.</li> </ul>	<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is always clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are almost always correct.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are almost always appropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>8</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are usually correct.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is mostly accurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is usually clear.</li> </ul>	<b>8</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is almost always clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are usually correct.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are usually appropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are reasonably correct.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is sometimes inaccurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is reasonably clear.</li> </ul>	<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is usually clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are reasonably correct.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are reasonably appropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>4</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are often incorrect.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is often inaccurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is often unclear.</li> </ul>	<b>4</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is sometimes unclear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are often incorrect.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are often inappropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Word order and spelling are almost always incorrect.</li> <li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is almost always inaccurate.</li> <li>• Handwriting is always unclear.</li> </ul>	<b>2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning is rarely clear.</li> <li>• Grammar, vocabulary, spelling, and punctuation are almost always incorrect.</li> <li>• Organisation/layout are almost always inappropriate to the text.</li> </ul>
<b>0</b>	<i>Performance does not satisfy the Band 1 descriptor.</i>		

Use the speaking rating scales below for Task 6.

<b>Speaking rating scale</b>		
<b>Vocabulary and Pronunciation</b>	<b>Interaction</b>	
<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the vocabulary required to deal with all test tasks.</li> <li>• Produces simple utterances but makes occasional mistakes.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word or phrase level but may also produce some longer utterances.</li> <li>• Pronunciation is always easy to understand, although some sounds may be unclear.</li> <li>• Has limited control of word stress and intonation.</li> <li>• Can join ideas with some simple linkers (e.g. <i>and, but, then, when</i>).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to instructions, questions and visual prompts, and very little support is required.</li> <li>• Is able to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• Almost always responds promptly, although there may be hesitation and some pausing mid-utterance.</li> </ul>
<b>8</b>	<i>Some features of 6.0 and some features of 10.0 in approximately equal measure.</i>	
<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the vocabulary required to deal with most test tasks.</li> <li>• Produces some simple structures but makes some basic mistakes which may obscure meaning.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word level but may also produce some longer utterances.</li> <li>• Can join ideas with a few simple linkers (e.g. <i>and</i>).</li> <li>• Pronunciation is usually easy to understand, mostly intelligible, although some sounds may be unclear.</li> <li>• Has limited control of word stress.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to instructions, questions and visual prompts, although some support is required.</li> <li>• Is able to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• Often responds promptly, although there may be hesitation and pausing mid-utterance.</li> </ul>
<b>4</b>	<i>Some features of 6.0 and some features of 2.0 in approximately equal measure.</i>	
<b>2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Has the vocabulary required to attempt some test tasks.</li> <li>• Attempts a few simple utterances but basic mistakes and lack of language prevent communication.</li> <li>• Attempts to produce the sounds of the language but Pronunciation is often difficult to understand.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word level but may also produce phrases.</li> <li>• Can join words with simple linkers (e.g. <i>and</i>).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to some instructions, questions and visual prompts, although frequent support may be required.</li> <li>• May attempt to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• There is hesitation and pausing mid-utterance; responses may be delayed or halting.</li> </ul>
<b>0</b>	<i>Performance does not satisfy the Band 1 descriptor.</i>	



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Time allowed: 35 minutes

Class: \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_ / 40 marks

**Reading**

**Task 1 Order the words to make questions. Then match.** (\_\_\_\_ / 10)

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 time / the / did / start / party / What<br>_____? | a At six o'clock.                |
| 2 the party / did / have / Where / you<br>_____?    | b Last year.                     |
| 3 cake / you / Did / the birthday / eat<br>_____?   | c Yes, we did. It was delicious. |
| 4 the / go / funfair / Did / to / you<br>_____?     | d No, we didn't. It was raining. |
| 5 you / to / did / When / Salalah / go<br>_____?    | e At my house.                   |

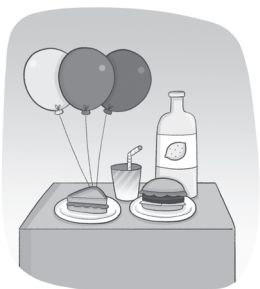
**Task 2 Read and match.** (\_\_\_\_ / 3)

- It was my birthday on 1<sup>st</sup> February.
- We went to the funfair last weekend.
- My friend had a costume party.



**Writing**

**Task 3 Read and complete the sentences in the past simple.** (\_\_\_\_ / 10)



Last week I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (get) an invitation to Malik's party. Malik (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (make) the invitation. On Saturday I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to his birthday party. I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) a costume. We (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (play) a lot of party games. We (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) some lemonade and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) some birthday cake. Malik (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (get) a lot of presents. His parents (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) lots of photos. We (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (have) fun!



## Listening

### Task 4 Listen and circle.        / 4

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1 Where did Ruba go yesterday?<br/> <b>a</b> a birthday party<br/> <b>b</b> a wedding<br/> <b>c</b> a costume party</p> <p>3 What did she drink?<br/> <b>a</b> lemonade<br/> <b>b</b> water<br/> <b>c</b> orange juice</p> | <p>2 What did she eat?<br/> <b>a</b> cake<br/> <b>b</b> rice<br/> <b>c</b> burgers</p> <p>4 What did she do?<br/> <b>a</b> She played games.<br/> <b>b</b> She danced.<br/> <b>c</b> She went on a big wheel.</p> |
|---|---|



### Task 5 Listen and match.        / 3

1



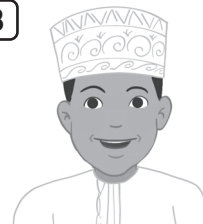
**Jasim**

2



**Razan**

3



**Yasir**

a



b



c



## Speaking

### Task 6 In pairs, ask and answer about a party.        / 10

Where was the party?

It was ...

When was the party?

It was on ...

What did you do?

I ...



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Time allowed: 35 minutes

Class: \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_ / 40 marks

**Reading**

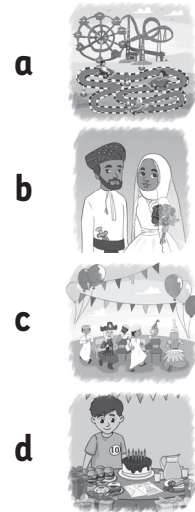
**Task 1** Order the words to make questions. Then match. There are two extra answers. ( \_\_\_\_\_ / 10)

- 1 time / the / did / start / party / What  
\_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 the party / did / have / Where / you  
\_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 cake / you / Did / the birthday / eat  
\_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 the / go / funfair / Did / to / you  
\_\_\_\_\_?
- 5 you / to / did / When / Salalah / go  
\_\_\_\_\_?

- a Last year.
- b Yes, we did. It was delicious.
- c On 1<sup>st</sup> March next year.
- d No, we didn't. It was raining.
- e Yes, I do. It's amazing.
- f At my house.
- g At six o'clock.

**Task 2** Read and match. There's one extra picture. ( \_\_\_\_\_ / 3)

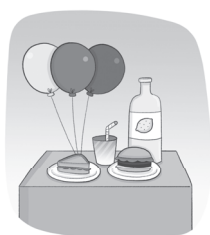
- 1 It was my birthday on 1<sup>st</sup> February.
- 2 We went to the funfair last weekend.
- 3 My friend had a costume party.



**Writing**

**Task 3** Read and complete the sentences in the past simple. ( \_\_\_\_\_ / 10)

drink eat get get go have make play take wear



Last week I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ an invitation to Malik's party. Malik (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the invitation. On Saturday I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to his birthday party. I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ a costume. We (5) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of party games. We (6) \_\_\_\_\_ some lemonade and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ some birthday cake. Emil (8) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of presents. His parents (9) \_\_\_\_\_ lots of photos. We (10) \_\_\_\_\_ fun!

## Listening

**Task 4**  Listen and complete the answers.        / 4

- 1 Where did Ruba go yesterday?  
She went to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 What did she eat?  
She ate \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 What did she drink?  
She drank \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 What did she do?  
She \_\_\_\_\_.



**Task 5**  Listen and match. There are two extra dates.        / 3

1



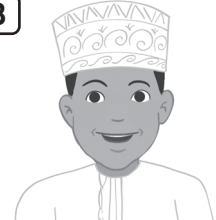
**Jasim**

2

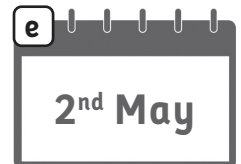
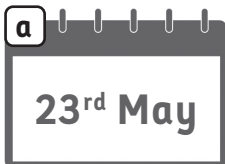


**Razan**

3



**Yasir**



## Speaking

**Task 6** In pairs, ask and answer about a party.        / 10

Where was the party?

When was the party?

What did you do?

# English in Action Videos

**G4B-UNIT5**

**G4B-UNIT6**

**G4B-UNIT7**

**G4B-UNIT8**



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Time allowed: 40 minutes

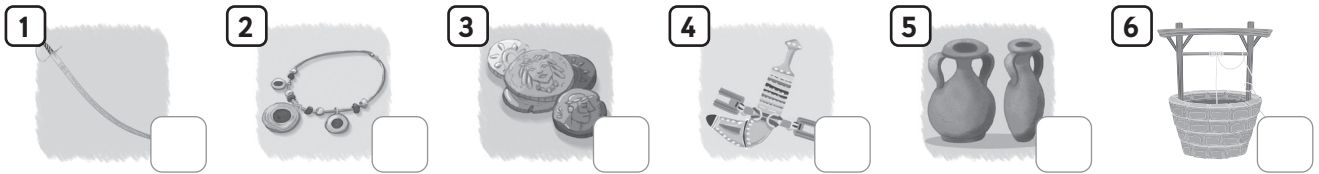
Class: \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_ / 60 marks

**Reading**

**Task 1** Read about Rasha's visit to a museum. Tick (✓) the things she saw. \_\_\_\_\_ / 6

Last month I visited a museum. It was very interesting. I liked the jewellery. There were necklaces made of silver. There were a lot of old coins and some jars made of clay. In the museum garden there were some stone walls from an ancient house. There was also a big well, but there wasn't any water! People lived there a long time ago! I'm going to go to the museum again in the summer. There are activities for children. I'm going to learn how to make jewellery. I want to make a ring. I'm very excited!



**Task 2** Match the sentence halves. \_\_\_\_\_ / 8

- |                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Rasha visited the museum | a made of clay.          |
| 2 There were necklaces     | b any water.             |
| 3 The jars were            | c in the summer.         |
| 4 The stone walls were     | d made of silver.        |
| 5 There was a big          | e last month.            |
| 6 There wasn't             | f from an ancient house. |
| 7 There are activity days  | g make a ring.           |
| 8 Rasha's going to         | h well.                  |

**Task 3** Read the text again and choose *True* or *False*. \_\_\_\_\_ / 6

- |  |      |       |
|--|------|-------|
| 1 The museum was very interesting.                 | True | False |
| 2 There weren't a lot of old coins.                | True | False |
| 3 Rasha liked the necklaces.                       | True | False |
| 4 The ancient house was in the museum.             | True | False |
| 5 The well had water.                              | True | False |
| 6 Rasha's going to visit the museum in the summer. | True | False |



**Task 4** Read and underline twelve mistakes in Ibrahim's diary about last weekend. Then write the verbs in the past simple. \_\_\_\_\_ / 12

**Friday**

In the morning I visit Grandma and go shopping with Mum. In the afternoon we get the bus to the park and play basketball. Then we ate cake and have ice cream. In the evening we watch films and drink lemonade.

**Saturday**

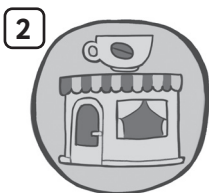
In the morning I do my homework. I run to the shopping mall. In the afternoon I went to a party. I dress up and danced. Then I cooked dinner with Dad. In the evening I play chess and eat crisps.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Task 5** Write your diary about what you did last weekend. Use the past simple. \_\_\_\_\_ / 8



**Friday**

1 On Friday morning \_\_\_\_\_

2 In the afternoon I \_\_\_\_\_


3 Then I \_\_\_\_\_

4 In the evening I \_\_\_\_\_


## Listening


**Task 6**  Listen and write the words in the correct chart.        / 6


birthday party    costume    dancing    funfair    party games    wedding




**Qais**








**Talal**





**Task 7**  Listen again and choose *True* or *False*.        / 4

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 Jasim didn't invite Talal to the party. | <input type="checkbox"/> True <input type="checkbox"/> False |
| 2 Qais wore a giraffe costume.            | <input type="checkbox"/> True <input type="checkbox"/> False |
| 3 Qais likes birthday cake.               | <input type="checkbox"/> True <input type="checkbox"/> False |
| 4 The wedding was next to a funfair.      | <input type="checkbox"/> True <input type="checkbox"/> False |

## Speaking

**Task 8** Look at the table. In pairs, ask and answer.

	Ruba	Saeed
Friday morning	play tennis	play computer games
Friday afternoon	go to the market	go to a funfair
Friday evening	go to the cinema	go to a museum
Saturday morning	do her homework	go fishing
Saturday afternoon	visit a theme park	go to a birthday party
Saturday evening	play chess	do his homework

Did Saeed Ruba ... on ...?

Yes, he she did. / No, he she didn't.

**Task 9** Talk about next summer. In pairs, ask and answer.

\_\_\_\_\_ / 10

Are you going to go camping?

No, I'm not.

Are you going to visit a water park?

Yes, I am.



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Time allowed: 40 minutes

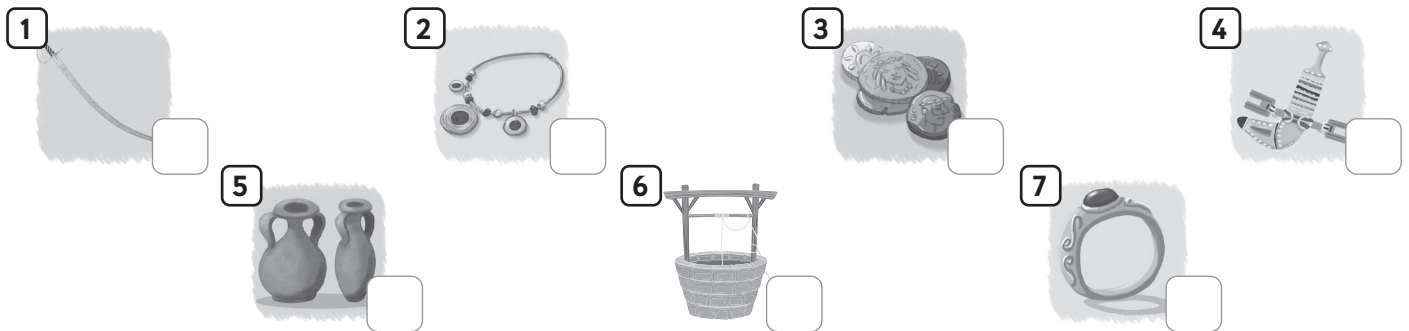
Class: \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_ / 60 marks

**Reading**

**Task 1 Read about Rasha's visit to a museum. Tick (✓) the things she saw. \_\_\_\_\_ / 4**

Last month I visited a museum. It was very interesting. I liked the jewellery. There were necklaces made of silver. There were a lot of old coins and some jars made of clay. In the museum garden there were some stone walls from an ancient house. There was also a well, but there wasn't any water! People lived there a long time ago! I'm going to go to the museum again in the summer. There are activities for children. I'm going to learn how to make jewellery. I want to make a ring. I'm very excited!



**Task 2 Complete the sentences. \_\_\_\_\_ / 8**

- 1 Rasha visited the museum \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 There were necklaces \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The jars were \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The stone walls were \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 There was a big \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 There wasn't \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 There are activity days \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Rasha's going to \_\_\_\_\_

**Task 3 Read the text again and choose T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences. \_\_\_\_\_ / 8**

- 1 The museum was very interesting. T / F \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 There weren't a lot of old coins. T / F \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Rasha liked the necklaces. T / F \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The ancient house was in the museum. T / F \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The well had water. T / F \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Rasha's going to visit the museum in the summer. T / F \_\_\_\_\_

## Writing

**Task 4** Read and underline twelve mistakes in Ibrahim's diary about last weekend. Then write the verbs in the past simple. \_\_\_\_\_ / 12

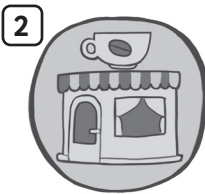
### Friday

In the morning I visit Grandma and go shopping with Mum. In the afternoon we get the bus to the park and play basketball. Then we ate cake and have ice cream. In the evening we watch films and drink lemonade.

### Saturday

In the morning I do my homework. I run to the shopping mall. In the afternoon I go to a party. I dress up and danced. Then I cooked dinner with Dad. In the evening I play chess and ate crisps.

**Task 5** Write about what you did last weekend. Use the past simple. \_\_\_\_\_ / 8



### Friday

1 On Friday morning \_\_\_\_\_

2 In the afternoon \_\_\_\_\_



3 Then \_\_\_\_\_

4 In the evening \_\_\_\_\_



**Task 6**  Listen and make notes about what Qais and Talal did last Saturday.


\_\_\_\_\_ / 6


 **Qais** 

Where was he?

What did he do?

What did he eat?





 **Talal**

Where was he?

What did he do?

What did he eat?

**Task 7**  listen again and choose *T* (True) or *F* (False).

Correct the false sentences. \_\_\_\_\_ / 4

- 1 Jasim didn't invite Talal to the party. T / F \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Qais wore a horse costume. T / F \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Qais likes birthday cake. T / F \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The wedding was next to a funfair. T / F \_\_\_\_\_

## Speaking

**Task 8** Look at the table. In pairs, ask and answer questions about what Ruba and Saeed did last weekend.

	Ruba	Saeed
Friday morning	play tennis	play computer games
Friday afternoon	go to the market	go to a funfair
Friday evening	go to the cinema	go to a museum
Saturday morning	do her homework	go fishing
Saturday afternoon	visit a theme park	go to a birthday party
Saturday evening	play chess	do his homework

**Task 9** Talk about next summer. In pairs, ask and answer questions.

\_\_\_\_\_ / 10

Are you going to ...?

Yes, I am    No, I'm not.

Are you going to ...?

## End of Semester 2 practice

## Answer key

## Reading and Writing A

1 2 ✓ 3 ✓ 5 ✓ 6 ✓

2 1 e 2 d 3 a 4 f 5 h 6 b 7 c 8 g

3 1 True 2 False 3 True 4 False 5 False  
6 True4 visited, went, got, played, had, watched,  
drank, did, ran, dressed, played, ate5 1 I went fishing. 2 went to a café  
3 ate sandwiches 4 played computer  
games

## Reading and Writing B

1 2 ✓ 3 ✓ 5 ✓ 6 ✓

2 1 last month 2 made of silver  
3 made of clay 4 from an ancient house  
5 well 6 any water 7 for children in  
the summer 8 go to the museum again /  
learn how to make jewellery / make a ring3 1 T 2 F. There were a lot of old coins.  
3 T 4 F. The stone walls from the house  
were in the museum garden. 5 F. The well  
didn't have any water. 6 T4 visited, went, got, played, had, watched,  
drank, did, ran, went, dressed, played5 1 I went fishing. 2 I went to a café.  
3 I ate sandwiches.  
4 I played computer games.

## Listening A

6 Qais: birthday party, costume, party  
games

Talal: wedding, funfair, dancing

7 1 False 2 False 3 False 4 True

## Listening B

6 Qais: (he was) at a birthday party, (he)  
played party games, (he ate)  
burgersTalal: (he was) at a wedding, (he) went  
to a funfair / on a big wheel / (he)  
danced, (he ate) cake7 1 F. Jasim invited him. 2 F. He wore an  
elephant costume. 3 F. Qais doesn't like  
birthday cake. 4 T

## Audioscript



## Tasks 6 and 7

Qais: Hi, Talal.

Talal: Hi, Qais. What did you do last  
Saturday?Qais: I went to Jasim's birthday party.  
Did you get an invitation, Talal?Talal: Yes, I did, but I didn't go. My uncle got  
married last Saturday and I went to  
his wedding. Was the birthday party  
fun, Qais?Qais: Yes. It was a costume party so we  
all dressed up. I wore an elephant  
costume!

Talal: Did you play party games?

Qais: Yes, we played party games in the  
garden. Then we had some food.

Talal: What did you eat?

Qais: I ate burgers.

Talal: Did you have birthday cake?

Qais: No, I didn't. I don't like cake. Was  
the wedding fun, Talal?Talal: Yes, it was OK. The wedding party  
was next to a funfair.

Qais: Really?

Talal: Yes. After the wedding, I went on  
the big wheel with my mum and dad.

Qais: Wow! Did you dance?

Talal: Yes. There was great music.  
I danced a lot. And I ate a lot of cake.

Qais: So it was fun.

Talal: Yes, it was!

Use the rating scale below for Tasks 4 and 5:

<b>WRITING RATING SCALE</b>		
<b>8</b>	<b>12</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Word order and spelling are consistently correct.</li><li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is very accurate.</li><li>• Handwriting is very clear.</li></ul>
<b>6.5</b>	<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Word order and spelling are usually correct.</li><li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is mostly accurate.</li><li>• Handwriting is usually clear.</li></ul>
<b>4.5</b>	<b>7</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Word order and spelling are reasonably correct.</li><li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is sometimes inaccurate.</li><li>• Handwriting is reasonably clear.</li></ul>
<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Word order and spelling are often incorrect.</li><li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is often inaccurate.</li><li>• Handwriting is often unclear.</li></ul>
<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Word order and spelling are almost always incorrect.</li><li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is almost always inaccurate.</li><li>• Handwriting is always unclear.</li></ul>

## Speaking A and B

The Speaking quiz should be taken by pupils in a separate class. Allocate one minute per pupil. Ask each pupil two or three warm-up questions which won't be assessed.

This might be asking their name, etc.

In pairs, students ask and answer three or four of the questions which you will assess. Using the rating scale below, determine the scale out of 10 for the pupils' answers for both tasks.

Accept short answers as long as they are appropriate. In the suggested answers, the words in brackets are optional. More advanced pupils will offer longer, more extended answers.

Allow for a minute between pupils to mark performance according to the speaking scales.

### Suggested warm-up questions:

**Examiner:** What's your name?

**Suggested answer:** (My name's / I'm) Marwa.

**Examiner:** When's your birthday?

**Suggested answer:** (It's in) August.

### For Task 8 some possible questions and answers:

Did Saaed play tennis on Friday morning?

No, (he didn't. He played computer games.)

Did Ruba go to the market on Friday afternoon?

Yes, (she did.)

Did Saaed go to the museum on Friday evening?

Yes, (he did).

Did Ruba visit a theme park on Saturday morning?

No, (she didn't. She did her homework on Saturday morning.)

Did Saaed do his homework on Saturday evening?

Yes, (he did.)

### For Task 9 some possible questions and answers:

Are you going to go camping? Yes (, I am.) / No (, I'm not. I'm going to go sightseeing.)

Are you going to visit a water park? Yes (, I am.) / No (, I'm not. I'm going to visit a theme park.)

Are you going to build a sandcastle? Yes (, I am.) / No (, I'm not. I'm going to go snorkelling.)

Are you going to go hiking? Yes (, I am.) / No (I'm not. I'm going to go sailing.)



<b>SPEAKING RATING SCALE</b>		
<b>Vocabulary /grammar and pronunciation</b>	<b>Interaction</b>	
<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the vocabulary required to deal with all test tasks.</li> <li>• Produces simple utterances but makes occasional mistakes.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word or phrase level but may also produce some longer utterances.</li> <li>• Pronunciation is always easy to understand, although some sounds may be unclear.</li> <li>• Has limited control of word stress and intonation.</li> <li>• Can join ideas with some simple linkers (e.g. <i>and, but, then, when</i>).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to instructions, questions and visual prompts, and very little support is required.</li> <li>• Is able to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• Almost always responds promptly, although there may be hesitation and some pausing mid-utterance.</li> </ul>
<b>8</b>	<i>Some features of 3.0 and some features of 5.0 in approximately equal measure.</i>	
<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the vocabulary required to deal with most test tasks.</li> <li>• Produces some simple structures but makes some basic mistakes which may obscure meaning.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word level but may also produce some longer utterances.</li> <li>• Can join ideas with a few simple linkers (e.g. <i>and</i>).</li> <li>• Pronunciation is usually easy to understand, mostly intelligible, although some sounds may be unclear.</li> <li>• Has limited control of word stress.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to instructions, questions and visual prompts, although some support is required.</li> <li>• Is able to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• Often responds promptly, although there may be hesitation and pausing mid-utterance.</li> </ul>
<b>4</b>	<i>Some features of 3.0 and some features of 1.0 in approximately equal measure..</i>	
<b>2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Has the vocabulary required to attempt some test tasks.</li> <li>• Attempts a few simple utterances but basic mistakes and lack of language prevent communication.</li> <li>• Attempts to produce the sounds of the language but pronunciation is often difficult to understand.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word level but may also produce phrases.</li> <li>• Can join words with simple linkers (e.g. <i>and</i>).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to some instructions, questions and visual prompts, although frequent support may be required.</li> <li>• May attempt to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• There is hesitation and pausing mid-utterance; responses may be delayed or halting.</li> </ul>
<b>0</b>	<i>Performance does not satisfy the Band 1 descriptor.</i>	



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Time allowed: 40 minutes

Class: \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_ / 60 marks

**Reading**

**Task 1 Read and match.** (\_\_\_\_ / 4)



Aysha, Scientist

I'm a scientist. I work in a science lab. I like my job because it's exciting. I want to make new discoveries. I work in a team with other people. We meet three times a week. Next summer I'm going to go to London to visit an English science lab.



Adam, Chef

I'm a chef. I love my job because I love food. The kitchen is always very busy. In the morning we prepare meat, fish, vegetables and fruit. Then we cook the food for lunch.



Faisal, Firefighter

I'm a firefighter. I wear a uniform with a helmet. I love my job but sometimes it's dangerous. Every day is different. It's never boring. I like helping people and animals. Yesterday I helped a cat. It was in a tree but now it's safe.



Jasim, Farmer

I'm a farmer. I like my job because I like working outside. It's quiet. I get the fruit and vegetables from my plants. Then I must take them to the market. I work with my family.

- 1 Aysha
- 2 Faisal
- 3 Jasim
- 4 Adam

- a loves food.
- b works with plants.
- c works in a science lab.
- d likes helping people.

**Task 2 Read again and complete the sentences.** (\_\_\_\_ / 8)

busy three exciting outside market morning uniform cat

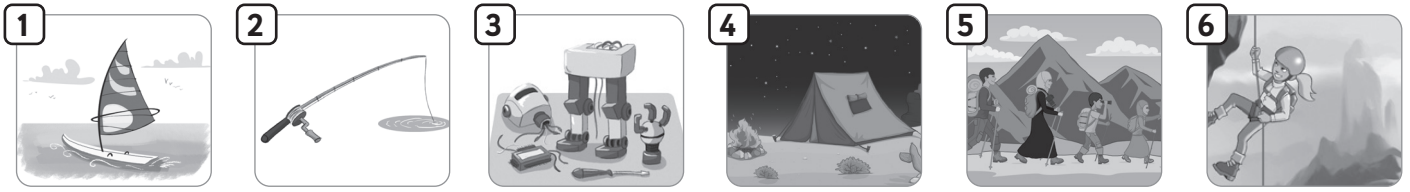
- 1 Aysha's job is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Faisal wears a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Adam's kitchen is always \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Jasim likes being \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Aysha's team meet \_\_\_\_\_ times a week.
- 6 Yesterday Faisal helped a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Adam prepares food in the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Jasim must go to the \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 3 Read again and choose True or False.** (\_\_\_\_ / 8)

- |   |      |       |
|---|------|-------|
| 1 Aysha works with other people.                  | True | False |
| 2 Next summer, Aysha is going to go to London.    | True | False |
| 3 Faisal does the same thing every day.           | True | False |
| 4 Faisal's job is sometimes dangerous.            | True | False |
| 5 Adam prepares meat, fish, vegetables and fruit. | True | False |
| 6 Adam cooks the food for dinner                  | True | False |
| 7 Jasim works with his friends.                   | True | False |
| 8 Jasim gets the fruit and vegetables.            | True | False |

## Writing

**Task 4** Look, read and complete Talal's plans for this summer. \_\_\_\_\_ / 6



build a robot

go fishing  
go camping

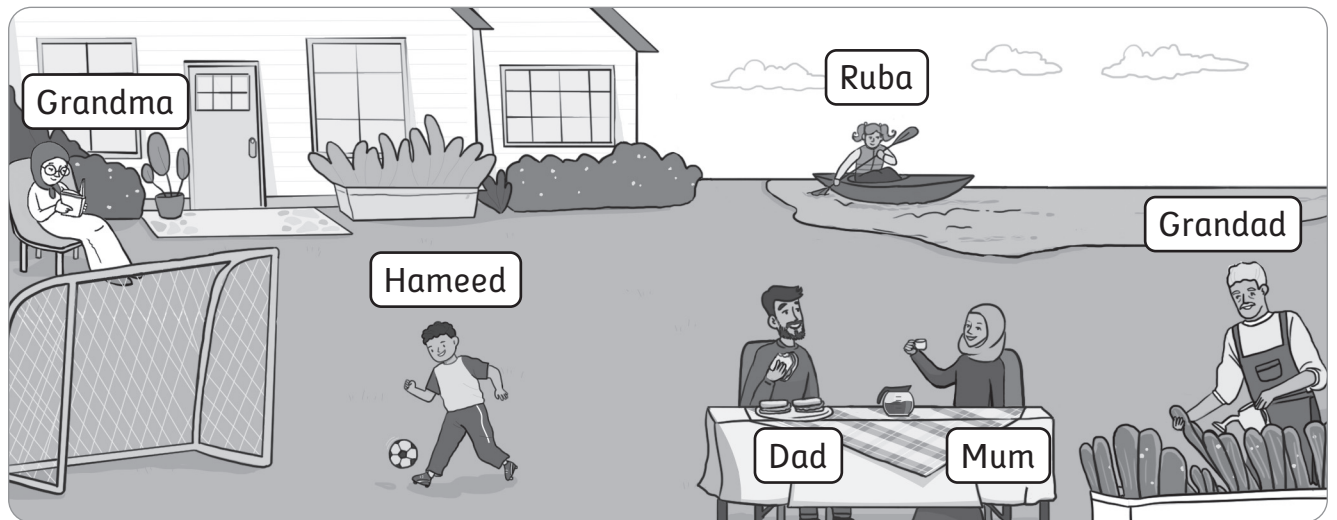
go windsurfing  
go hiking

go climbing

In July, I'm going to go to a summer camp. I'm going to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in a big lake and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ in a river. In the evening I'm going to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ with my dad. In August I'm going to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ near a waterfall with my family. I always go there every year. I'm going to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ and (6) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 5** Write about what the family are doing. Use the present continuous. \_\_\_\_\_ / 12

drink coffee    canoe    play    read a book    eat a sandwich    grow vegetables



1 Ruba is \_\_\_\_\_.

2 Grandma is \_\_\_\_\_.


3 Mum is \_\_\_\_\_.

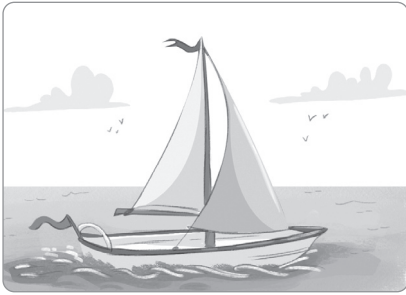
4 Dad is \_\_\_\_\_.

5 Hameed is \_\_\_\_\_.

6 Granddad is \_\_\_\_\_.

Listening

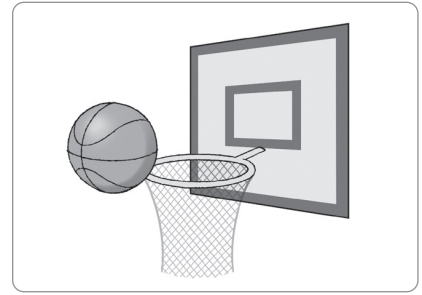
**Task 6**  Look at the pictures. What activities do Laila and Samira like doing? What activities do they both like? Listen and complete. \_\_\_\_\_ / 6



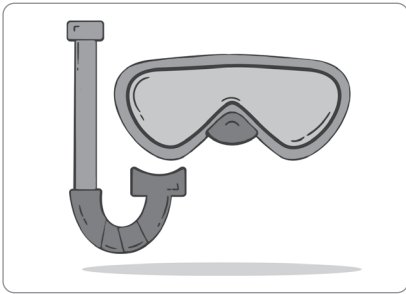
go sailing



play computer games



play basketball



go snorkelling



go hiking



go to funfairs

Laila	Samira	Laila and Samira
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

**Task 7**  Listen again and choose the correct answers. \_\_\_\_\_ / 6

- Last Saturday, Laila went **sailing** **snorkelling** on the sea.
- Samira **can** **can't** swim very well.
- Last Saturday, Samira went to the **funfair** **square**.
- Last summer, Laila went swimming in the **sea** **lake**.
- Last summer, Samira went **hiking** **canoeing**.
- Next weekend, Laila and Samira are going to **go to the funfair** **play computer games**.

**Task 8** Talk about the picture. What things can you see? What are they doing?

\_\_\_\_ / 5



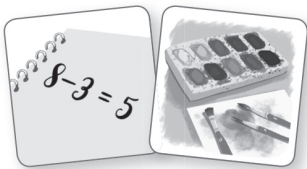
There's ...

The woman is ...

There are ...

**Task 9** In pairs, ask and answer the questions. Say why.

\_\_\_\_ / 5



What's your favourite school subject?

My favourite school subject is ... because ...

What's your favourite food for a picnic?

My favourite food for a picnic is ...

Where are you going to go this Saturday?

This Saturday I'm going to ... because ...

What was your favourite holiday?

My favourite holiday was ... because it was ...





Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Time allowed: 40 minutes

Class: \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_ / 60 marks

**Reading**

**Task 1 Read and match. There are two extra phrases.** ( \_\_\_\_\_ / 4 )



Aysha, Scientist

I'm a scientist. I work in a science lab. I like my job because it's exciting. I want to make new discoveries. I work in a team with other people. We meet three times a week. Next summer I'm going to go to London to visit an English science lab.



Adam, Chef

I'm a chef. I love my job because I love food. The kitchen is always very busy. In the morning we prepare meat, fish, vegetables and fruit. Then we cook the food for lunch.



Faisal, Firefighter

I'm a firefighter. I wear a uniform with a helmet. I love my job but sometimes it's dangerous. Every day is different. It's never boring. I like helping people and animals. Yesterday I helped a cat. It was in a tree but now it's safe.



Jasim, Farmer

I'm a farmer. I like my job because I like working outside. It's quiet. I get the fruit and vegetables from my plants. Then I must take them to the market. I work with my family.

- 1 Aysha
- 2 Faisal
- 3 Jasim
- 4 Adam

- a loves food.
- b works with plants.
- c works in London.
- d works in a science lab.
- e doesn't work with other people.
- f likes helping people.

**Task 2 Read again and complete the sentences.** ( \_\_\_\_\_ / 8 )

- 1 Aysha's job is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Faisal wears a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Adam's kitchen is always \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Jasim likes being \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Aysha's team meet \_\_\_\_\_ times a week.
- 6 Yesterday Faisal helped a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Adam prepares food in the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Jasim must go to the \_\_\_\_\_.

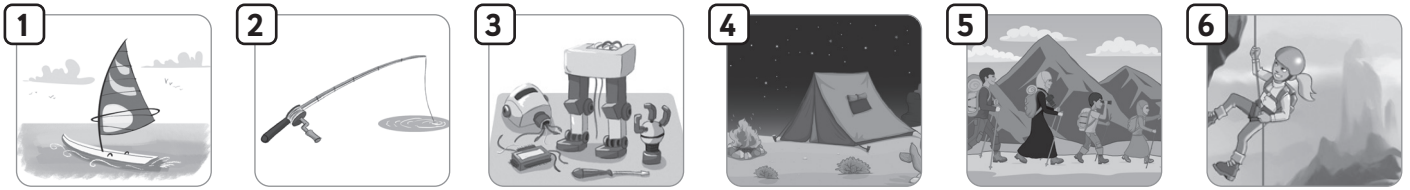
**Task 3 Read again and choose True or False. Correct the false sentences.** ( \_\_\_\_\_ / 8 )

- 1 Aysha works in a team. True False \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Next summer, Aysha is going to go to London. True False \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Faisal does the same thing every day. True False \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Faisal's job is sometimes dangerous. True False \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Adam prepares meat, fish, vegetables and fruit. True False \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Adam cooks the food for dinner True False \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Jasim works with his friends. True False \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Jasim gets the fruit and vegetables. True False \_\_\_\_\_

## Writing

**Task 4** Look, read and complete Talal's plans for this summer.

\_\_\_\_\_ / 6

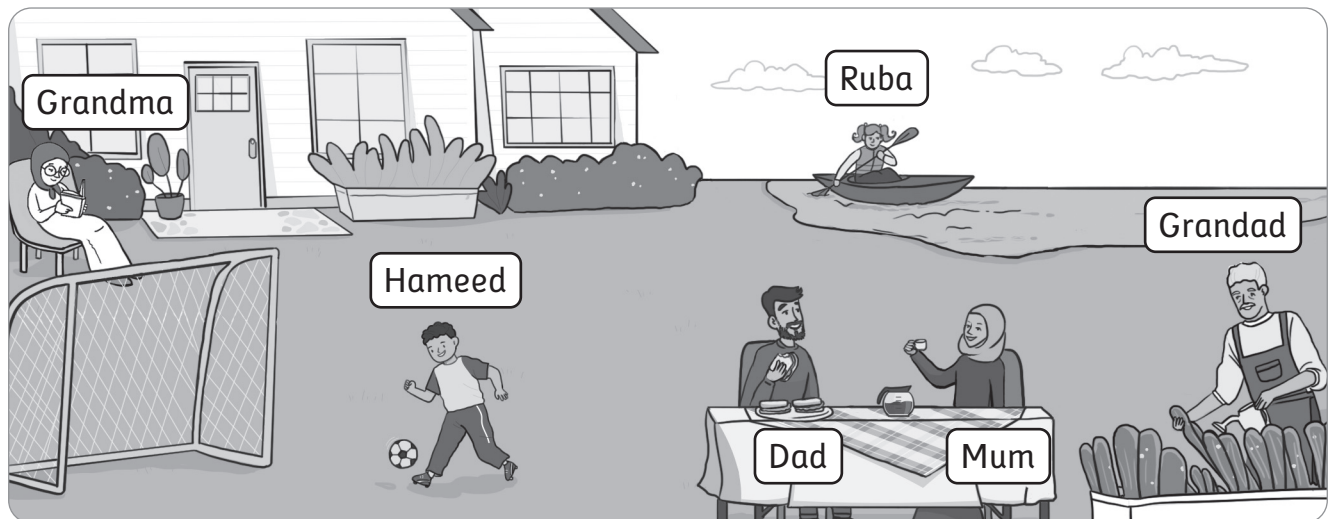


In July, I'm going to go to a summer camp. I'm going to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in a big lake and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ in a river. In the evening I'm going to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ with my dad. In August I'm going to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ near a waterfall with my family. I always go there every year. I'm going to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ and (6) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 5** Write about what the family are doing. Use the present continuous.

\_\_\_\_\_ / 12

drink coffee    canoe    play    read a book    eat a sandwich    grow vegetables



1 Ruba \_\_\_\_\_.

2 Grandma \_\_\_\_\_.


3 Mum \_\_\_\_\_.

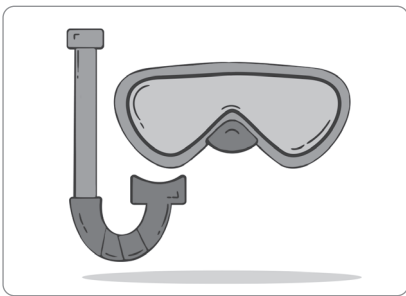
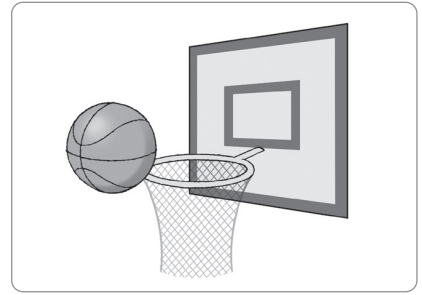
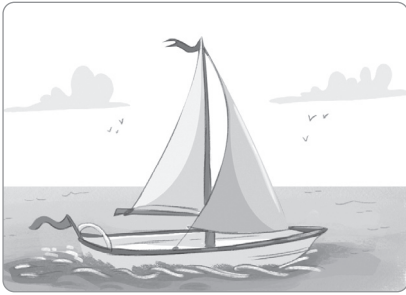
4 Dad \_\_\_\_\_.

5 Hameed \_\_\_\_\_.

6 Granddad \_\_\_\_\_.

Listening

**Task 6**  Look at the pictures. What activities do Laila and Samira like doing? What activities do they both like? Listen and complete. \_\_\_\_\_ / 6



Laila	Samira	Laila and Samira
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

**Task 7**  Listen again and choose the correct answer. \_\_\_\_\_ / 6

- 1 Last Saturday, Laila went \_\_\_\_\_ on the sea.
- 2 Samira \_\_\_\_\_ swim very well.
- 3 Laila and Samira can play computer games at Samira's house next \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Samira was at a \_\_\_\_\_ last Saturday.
- 5 The rollercoaster was \_\_\_\_\_ than the big wheel.
- 6 Samira went \_\_\_\_\_ with her family last summer.

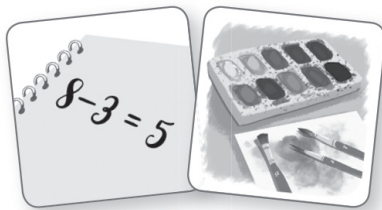
**Task 8** Talk about the picture. What things can you see? What are they doing?

/ 5



**Task 9** In pairs, ask and answer the questions. Say why.

/ 5



What's your favourite school subject?

What's your favourite food for a picnic?

Where are you going to go this Saturday?

What was your favourite holiday?

## End of year practice

## Answer key

## Reading and Writing A

- 1 1 c 2 d 3 b 4 a  
 2 1 exciting 2 uniform 3 busy 4 outside  
 5 three 6 cat 7 morning 8 market  
 3 1 True 2 True 3 False 4 True 5 True  
 6 False 7 False 8 True  
 4 1 go windsurfing 2 go fishing  
 3 build a robot 4 go camping  
 5 go hiking 6 go climbing  
 5 1 canoeing 2 reading a book  
 3 drinking coffee 4 eating a sandwich  
 5 playing football 6 growing vegetables

## Reading and Writing B

- 1 1 d 2 f 3 b 4 a  
 2 1 a scientist / exciting 2 uniform 3 busy  
 4 outside 5 three 6 cat 7 morning  
 8 market  
 3 1 True 2 True 3 False. Every day is  
 different. 4 True 5 True 6 False. He  
 cooks the food for lunch. 7 False. He  
 works with his family. 8 True  
 4 1 go windsurfing 2 go fishing  
 3 build a robot 4 go camping  
 5 go hiking 6 go climbing  
 5 1 is canoeing 2 is reading a book  
 3 is drinking coffee 4 is eating a  
 sandwich 5 is playing football  
 6 is growing vegetables

## Listening A

- 6 **Laila:** go sailing, go snorkelling  
**Samira:** play basketball, go hiking  
**Laila and Samira:** play computer games, go to funfairs  
 7 1 sailing 2 can't 3 funfair 4 sea  
 5 hiking 6 play computer games

## Listening B

- 6 **Laila:** go sailing, go snorkelling  
**Samira:** play basketball, go hiking  
**Laila and Samira:** play computer games, go to funfairs

- 7 1 sailing 2 can't 3 weekend  
 4 funfair 5 faster 6 hiking

## Audioscript



## Tasks 6 and 7

- Laila:** Hi, Samira.  
**Samira:** Hi, Laila. What are your hobbies?  
**Laila:** I like going sailing and going snorkelling.  
**Samira:** How exciting!  
**Laila:** Yes! I went sailing last Saturday on the sea. It was very deep. I wore my new baseball cap, too! What are your hobbies? Do you like the water?  
**Samira:** No, I don't like the water. I can't swim very well. I like playing basketball. I can run fast. I also like going hiking.  
**Laila:** Now, what activities do we both like? I like playing computer games. Do you like playing computer games?  
**Samira:** Yes, I do! We can play computer games together at my house next weekend.  
**Laila:** Yes, good idea! How about going to funfairs? I like funfairs. I like going on the big wheel.  
**Samira:** Yes, I love funfairs! I was at a funfair last Saturday. I like going on the big wheel too. I went on the big wheel and a rollercoaster. The rollercoaster was faster than the big wheel! It was fun! What did you do last summer?  
**Laila:** I went to the beach last summer. I went swimming in the sea!  
**Samira:** Nice! Did you see any fish?  
**Laila:** Yes, I did! There were lots of fish! What did you do last summer?  
**Samira:** I went hiking with my family. It was fun!  
**Laila:** Lovely!  
**Samira:** So let's play computer games at my house next weekend. See you then!  
**Laila:** Great! See you then!



Use the rating scale below for Tasks 4 and 5:

<b>WRITING RATING SCALE</b>		
<b>Task 5</b>	<b>Task 4</b>	
<b>6</b>	<b>12</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Word order and spelling are consistently correct.</li><li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is very accurate.</li><li>• Handwriting is very clear.</li></ul>
<b>5</b>	<b>10</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Word order and spelling are usually correct.</li><li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is mostly accurate.</li><li>• Handwriting is usually clear.</li></ul>
<b>4</b>	<b>8</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Word order and spelling are reasonably correct.</li><li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is sometimes inaccurate.</li><li>• Handwriting is reasonably clear.</li></ul>
<b>3</b>	<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Word order and spelling are often incorrect.</li><li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is often inaccurate.</li><li>• Handwriting is often unclear.</li></ul>
<b>2</b>	<b>4</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Word order and spelling are almost always incorrect.</li><li>• Use of capital letters, full stops and question marks is almost always inaccurate.</li><li>• Handwriting is always unclear.</li></ul>

## Speaking A and B

The Speaking quiz should be taken by pupils in a separate class. Allocate one minute per pupil. Ask each pupil two or three warm-up questions which won't be assessed. This might be asking their name, etc.

Then ask pupils to do the tasks which you will assess. Using the rating scale below, determine the scale out of 5 for the pupils' answers. Accept short answers as long as they are appropriate. In the suggested answers, the words in brackets are optional. More advanced pupils will offer longer, more extended answers. Allow for a minute between pupils to mark performance according to the speaking scales.

### Suggested warm-up questions:

**Examiner:** What's your name?

**Suggested answer:** (My name's / I'm) Basim.

**Examiner:** When's your birthday?

**Suggested answer:** (It's in) December.

### For task 8 here are some possible answers:

(There's a) museum.

(There are two) jars. (They are made of clay.)

(There is some) jewellery.

(There are some) necklaces. (They are made of silver.)

(There's a) sword.

The man is buying tickets.

The woman is taking a photo.

The children are standing next to the jars.

### For task 9, here are some possible questions and answers:

What's your favourite school subject? (My favourite school subject is) Art because I like painting pictures.

What's your favourite food for a picnic? (My favourite food for a picnic is) a sandwich because I can't cook well.

Where are you going to go this Saturday? (This Saturday I'm going to the) shopping mall because I want to buy a shirt.

What was your favourite holiday? (My favourite holiday was) camping because I love hiking.

<b>SPEAKING RATING SCALE</b>		
<b>Vocabulary/grammar and pronunciation</b>	<b>Interaction</b>	
<b>5</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the vocabulary required to deal with all test tasks.</li> <li>• Produces simple utterances but makes occasional mistakes.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word or phrase level but may also produce some longer utterances.</li> <li>• Pronunciation is always easy to understand, although some sounds may be unclear.</li> <li>• Has limited control of word stress and intonation.</li> <li>• Can join ideas with some simple linkers (e.g. <i>and, but, then, when</i>).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to instructions, questions and visual prompts, and very little support is required.</li> <li>• Is able to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• Almost always responds promptly, although there may be hesitation and some pausing mid-utterance.</li> </ul>
<b>4</b>	<i>Some features of 3.0 and some features of 5.0 in approximately equal measure.</i>	
<b>3</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the vocabulary required to deal with most test tasks.</li> <li>• Produces some simple structures but makes some basic mistakes which may obscure meaning.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word level but may also produce some longer utterances.</li> <li>• Can join ideas with a few simple linkers (e.g. <i>and</i>).</li> <li>• Pronunciation is usually easy to understand, mostly intelligible, although some sounds may be unclear.</li> <li>• Has limited control of word stress.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to instructions, questions and visual prompts, although some support is required.</li> <li>• Is able to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• Often responds promptly, although there may be hesitation and pausing mid-utterance.</li> </ul>
<b>2</b>	<i>Some features of 3.0 and some features of 1.0 in approximately equal measure.</i>	
<b>1</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Has the vocabulary required to attempt some test tasks.</li> <li>• Attempts a few simple utterances but basic mistakes and lack of language prevent communication.</li> <li>• Attempts to produce the sounds of the language but pronunciation is often difficult to understand.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word level but may also produce phrases.</li> <li>• Can join words with simple linkers (e.g. <i>and</i>).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to some instructions, questions and visual prompts, although frequent support may be required.</li> <li>• May attempt to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• There is hesitation and pausing mid-utterance; responses may be delayed or halting.</li> </ul>
<b>0</b>	<i>Performance does not satisfy the Band 1 descriptor.</i>	



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Time allowed: 30 minutes

Class: \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_ / 10 marks

**Reading and Writing**

**Task 1** Look and read. Choose the correct words and write them on the lines. There is one example. \_\_\_\_\_ / 2.5



**a chef**



**a firefighter**



**a dentist**



**a bus driver**



**a farmer**



**a mechanic**



**an engineer**



**a vet**

This person takes care of sick animals.

a vet

1 This person takes care of people's teeth.

2 This person fixes cars and motorbikes.

3 This person cooks food in restaurants.

4 This person takes children to school.

5 This person grows food and works mostly outside.

---



---



---



---



---

**Task 2** Read the story. Choose a word from the box. Write the correct word next to numbers 1–5. There is one example. \_\_\_\_\_ / 2.5

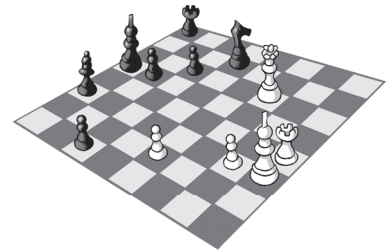
Jasim goes fishing every week with his father. He can fish very well. This week it is raining, but they stay at the lake because they are having a good time. They always follow the rules, so at the end of the day, they take all their (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and put it in the bin before they go home. The next day, Jasim isn't feeling very well. He has a headache and a sore throat. The doctor says, "You have a (2) \_\_\_\_\_. You should (3) \_\_\_\_\_ in bed for a few days." So now he is building a (4) \_\_\_\_\_ because he can't play (5) \_\_\_\_\_ with his friends.



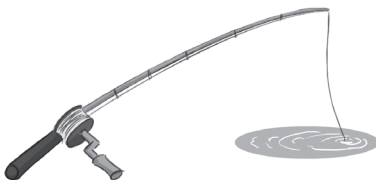
medicine



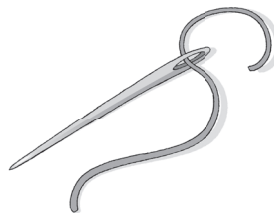
litter



chess



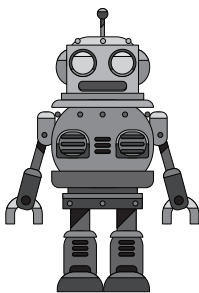
fishing



sew



stomachache



robot



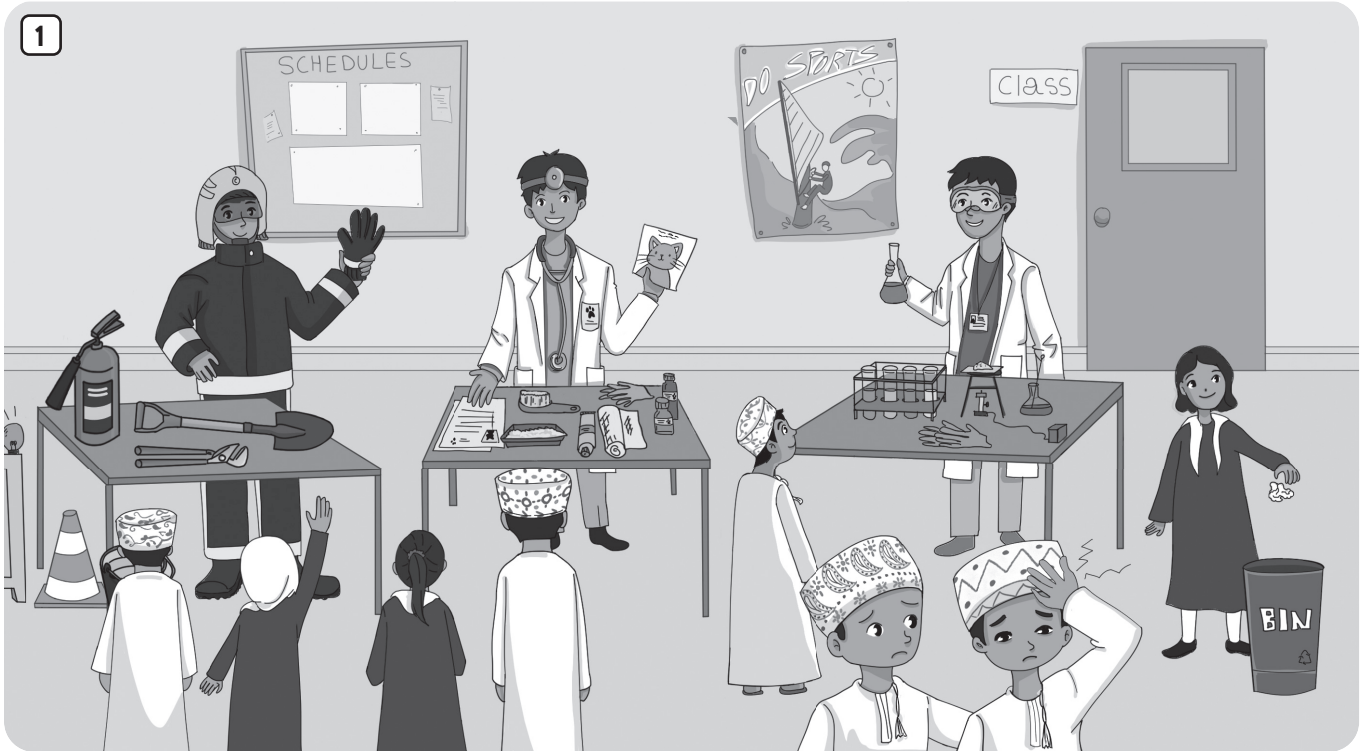
cold



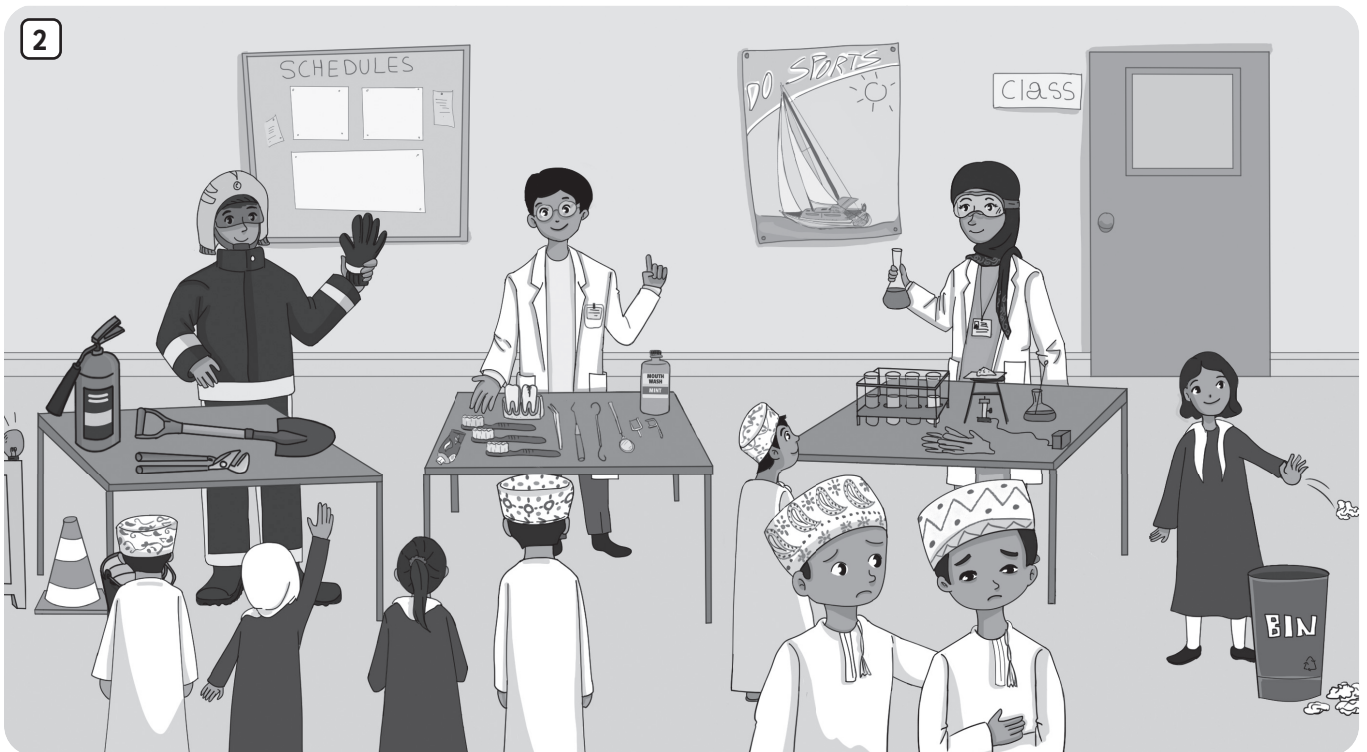
rest



Task 3 Listen to your teacher.     / 5



Picture 1



Picture 2

**Total:**     / 10 marks

## Class Test 2

### Answer key

### Reading and Writing

#### Task 1

- 1 a dentist
- 2 a mechanic
- 3 a chef
- 4 a bus driver
- 5 a farmer

#### Task 2

- 1 litter
- 2 cold
- 3 rest
- 4 robot
- 5 chess

### Speaking

#### Task 3

The Speaking quiz should be taken by pupils in a separate class. Allocate one minute per pupil. Ask each pupil two or three warm-up questions which won't be assessed. This might be asking their name, etc.

Then do the task below which you will assess.

Using the rating scale below, determine the scale out of 5 for the pupils' answers.

Accept short answers as long as they are appropriate. More advanced pupils will offer longer, more extended answers.

Allow for a minute between pupils to mark performance according to the speaking scales.

### Suggested warm-up questions:

**Examiner:** What's your name?

**Suggested answer:** (My name's / I'm) Basim.

**Examiner:** When's your birthday?

**Suggested answer:** (It's in) December.

### Task

Show pupils the two pictures. Explain that there are differences between the pictures. Ask pupils to tell you how the pictures are different.

Differences:

- 1 In picture 1, there's a vet and in picture 2, there's a dentist.
- 2 In picture 1, the scientist is a man and in picture 2, the scientist is a woman.
- 3 In picture 1, the girl is putting the litter in the bin and in picture 2, the girl is dropping the litter.
- 4 In picture 1, the boy has a headache and in picture 2, he has a stomachache.
- 5 On the poster on the wall, in picture 1 a person is windsurfing and in picture 2 the person is sailing.

## Speaking rating scale

<b>Vocabulary /grammar and pronunciation</b>		<b>Interaction</b>
<b>5.0</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the vocabulary required to deal with all test tasks.</li> <li>• Produces simple utterances but makes occasional mistakes.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word or phrase level but may also produce some longer utterances.</li> <li>• Pronunciation is always easy to understand, although some sounds may be unclear.</li> <li>• Has limited control of word stress and intonation.</li> <li>• Can join ideas with some simple linkers (e.g. and, but, then, when).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to instructions, questions and visual prompts, and very little support is required.</li> <li>• Is able to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• Almost always responds promptly, although there may be hesitation and some pausing mid-utterance.</li> </ul>
<b>4.0</b>	<i>Some features of 3.0 and some features of 5.0 in approximately equal measure.</i>	
<b>3.0</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses the vocabulary required to deal with most test tasks.</li> <li>• Produces some simple structures but makes some basic mistakes which may obscure meaning.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word level but may also produce some longer utterances.</li> <li>• Can join ideas with a few simple linkers (e.g. and).</li> <li>• Pronunciation is usually easy to understand, mostly intelligible, although some sounds may be unclear.</li> <li>• Has limited control of word stress.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to instructions, questions and visual prompts, although some support is required.</li> <li>• Is able to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• Often responds promptly, although there may be hesitation and pausing mid-utterance.</li> </ul>
<b>2.0</b>	<i>Some features of 3.0 and some features of 1.0 in approximately equal measure.</i>	
<b>1.0</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Has the vocabulary required to attempt some test tasks.</li> <li>• Attempts a few simple utterances but basic mistakes and lack of language prevent communication.</li> <li>• Attempts to produce the sounds of the language but Pronunciation is often difficult to understand.</li> <li>• Generally responds at word level but may also produce phrases.</li> <li>• Can join words with simple linkers (e.g. and).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responds appropriately to some instructions, questions and visual prompts, although frequent support may be required.</li> <li>• May attempt to ask for support if required.</li> <li>• There is hesitation and pausing mid-utterance; responses may be delayed or halting.</li> </ul>
<b>0</b>	<i>Performance does not satisfy the Band 1 descriptor.</i>	



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Time allowed: 30 minutes

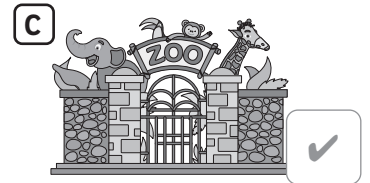
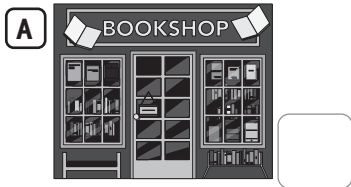
Class: \_\_\_\_\_

Total \_\_\_\_\_ / 10 marks

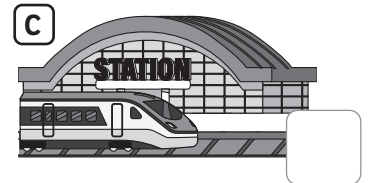
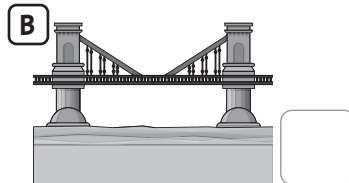
Listening

**Task 1** **CT3.1 Listen and tick (✓) the box.** \_\_\_\_\_ / 2.5

Where was Marwa last Saturday?



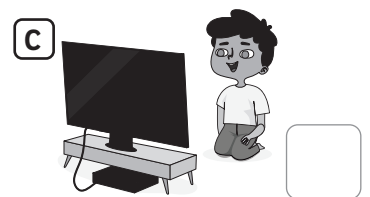
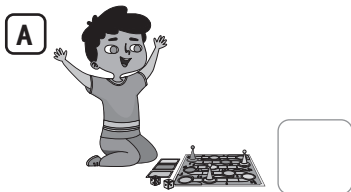
1 What was there in Hamed's town 100 years ago?



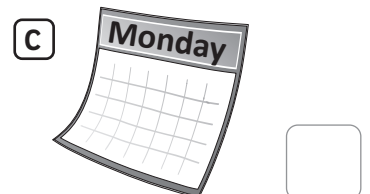
2 When were Ruba and Samira at the café?



3 What did Malik do yesterday?



4 When did Noora visit the museum?



5 What costume did Ali wear to the party?



**Task 2**  **Listen and draw lines. There is one example.** / 2.5

Manar

Talal

Aysha



Hamzah

Nawal

Yasir



**Task 3** Read the text. Choose the right words and write them on the lines.

\_\_\_\_\_ / 2.5



Hi Saeed

We're having a great holiday here in the UK!

Yesterday we went sightseeing. I had a big ice cream! The day before we (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a theme park. It was really fun!

Tomorrow, we're going to the beach. My brother and my dad

(2) \_\_\_\_\_ going to go snorkelling. I'm (3) \_\_\_\_\_

because I don't like it, but I'm (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to build a sandcastle on the beach. What about you? Are you and your family going (5) \_\_\_\_\_ camping again these holidays?

Talk soon

Sheikha

visited bought **went**

1 visited had did

2 is am are

3 not no isn't

4 go going goes

5 to get to have to go

**Task 4** Look at the pictures and read the story. Write some words to complete the sentences about the story. You can use 1, 2 or 3 words.  / 2.5



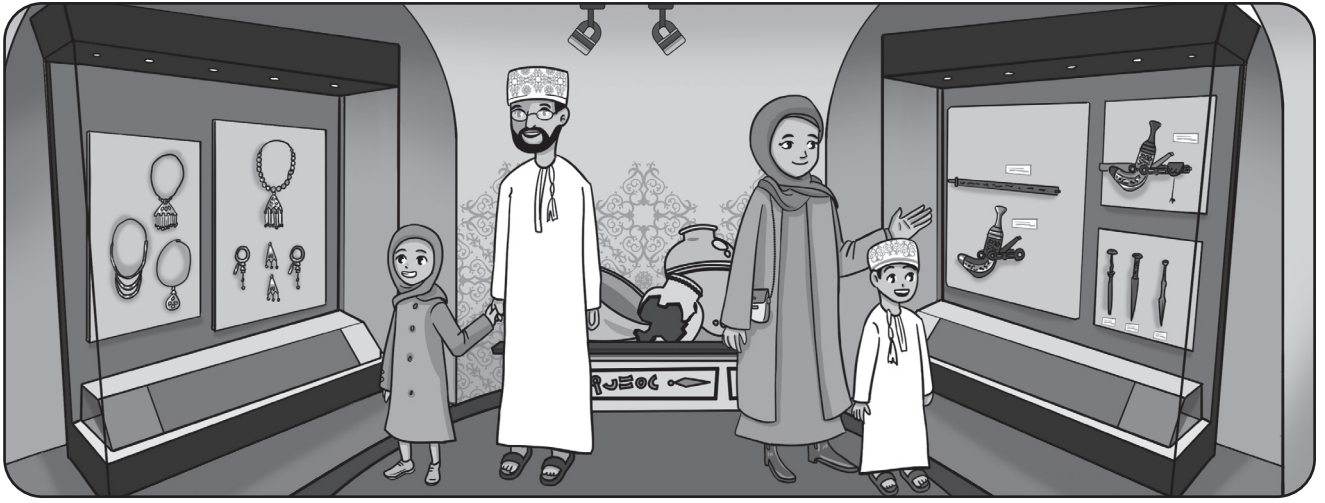
### A Day at the Museum

Marwa and Basim are brother and sister. They got up early to go to the beach with their parents on Saturday, but it was raining a lot. 'Why don't we go to the museum?' said their father. Marwa loves museums, but Basim was sad because he really wanted to go snorkelling. But he didn't want to stay at home, so he went with Marwa and their parents to the museum.

Basim wanted to go to the beach on Saturday.

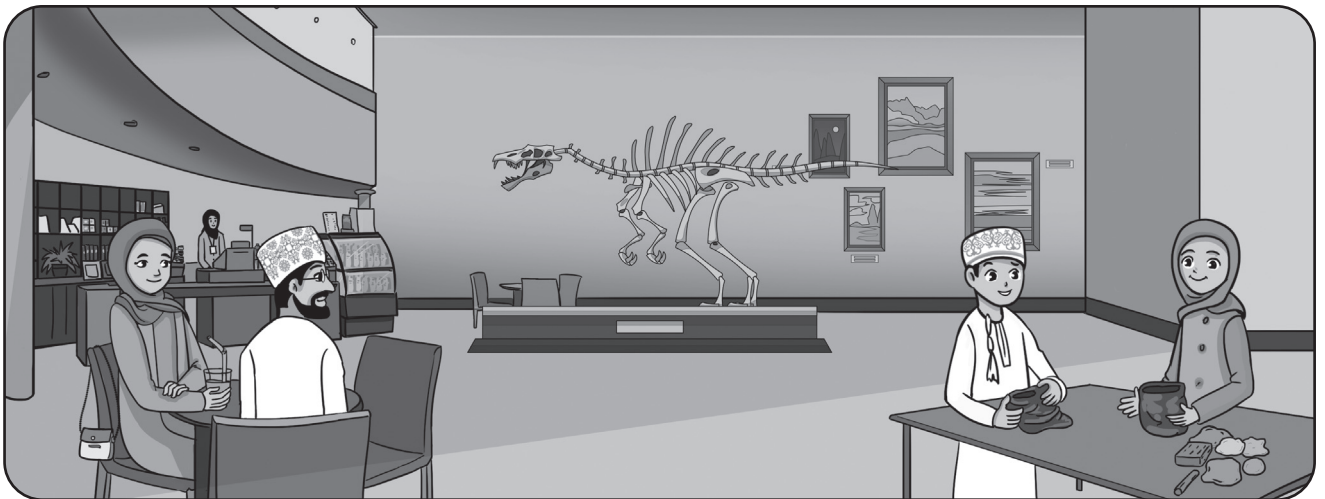
Because of the rain, they went to the museum.

1 Basim's plan was to \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturday.



They saw a lot of interesting things at the museum. Marwa and Basim's mother is a Social Studies teacher. "I'm going to tell you everything about how people lived back then," Marwa and Basim's mother said. She told them lots of exciting stories. Marwa liked the jewellery and the old coins. Basim was interested in the swords, but his favourite object was an ancient khanjar.

- 2 Marwa and Basim's mother works as a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Basim liked an old \_\_\_\_\_ the most.



After they saw the objects, they all went to the café in the museum. Their parents had a coffee and Marwa and Basim made objects with clay. Marwa made a beautiful jar. Basim also made a jar, but Marwa's jar was more beautiful! After that, they went to the shop and Basim found a book about Omani history. He wanted to go back to the museum the next weekend. He loved the museum!

- 4 Marwa's \_\_\_\_\_ looked more beautiful than Basim's.
- 5 Basim \_\_\_\_\_ the museum.

## Class Test 3

## Answer key

## Listening

## Task 1

- 1 A
- 2 C
- 3 A
- 4 B
- 5 A

## Audioscript



## Task 1

Hello. This is the Listening test.

Look at Task 1.

Look at the pictures. Listen and tick the box.  
There is one example.

**Narrator:** Where was Marwa last Saturday?

**Huda:** Hi, Marwa! How was your weekend?

**Marwa:** It was good, thanks. On Saturday, I was at the zoo with my aunt and uncle.

**Huda:** That's nice. Did you go to the bookshop? It's near the zoo.

**Marwa:** No, I didn't. I want to go to the market on Saturday. Would you like to come with me?

**Huda:** Yes, please!

Can you see the letter C? This is the example.  
Now you listen and tick the boxes.

1

**Narrator:** What was there in Hamed's town 100 years ago?

**Jasim:** Hello, Hamed. Look, here is an interesting book about our town in the past.

**Hamed:** Oh yes, I like this book. Was there a train station 100 years ago?

**Jasim:** No, there wasn't. The train station is very busy now!

**Hamed:** The market is busy now, too. Was there a market 100 years ago?

**Jasim:** Yes, there was.

**Hamed:** So there was a market. Was there a bridge? The bridge in our town is very modern.

**Jasim:** No, there wasn't.

2

**Narrator:** When were Ruba and Samira at the café?

**Ruba:** Look at this photo, Samira. It's you and me at the new café in town with our parents.

**Samira:** Oh yes, it's a lovely photo. When were we at the new café? Were we there last Saturday?

**Ruba:** No, I was at the shopping mall with my aunt last Saturday. Was it last month?

**Samira:** No, the café is new. It opened this month.

**Ruba:** I know! We were there last Friday.

**Samira:** Yes, that's right! Let's go again soon!

3

**Narrator:** What did Malik do yesterday?

**Boy:** Hello, Malik! What did you do yesterday? Did you play football?

**Malik:** No, I didn't. I played football last weekend.

**Boy:** Were you at home yesterday?

**Malik:** Yes, I was. I played board games with my dad.

**Boy:** Did you watch television, too?

**Malik:** No, I didn't.

4

**Narrator:** When did Noora visit the museum?

**Girl:** Hello, Noora! There is a new museum in town. It's very modern. Would you like to go with me on Monday?

**Noora:** Yes, please! But I visited the museum last week. It's very interesting.

**Girl:** Did you go last Friday?

**Noora:** No, I didn't go to the museum last Friday. I went to the museum last Saturday.

5

**Narrator:** What costume did Ali wear to the party?

**Boy:** Hello, Ali! Did you go to Malik's birthday party last Saturday?

**Ali:** Yes, I did. It was fun. We played games, ate ice cream and drank lemonade.

**Boy:** Did you wear a costume? Ahmed wore a vet's costume and Adam wore a firefighter's costume.

**Ali:** Yes, I did. I wore a doctor's costume.

Now listen to Task 1 again.

## Task 2

Lines should be drawn between:

- 1 Yasir the boy with the invitations
- 2 Talal the boy with the lion costume
- 3 Nawal the girl with party hats
- 4 Manar the woman organising party games
- 5 Hamzah the man by the buffet

## Audioscript



### Task 2

Hello. This is the Listening test.

Look at Task 2.

Listen and draw lines.

There is one example.

**Girl:** Was it your birthday yesterday?

**Boy:** Yes, it was. We had a party. There were a lot of my friends there. Look, here's a photo.

**Girl:** Oh, lovely. Who's this?

**Boy:** That's Aysha. She gave me a present.

**Girl:** That's nice.

Can you see the line? This is an example.

Now you listen and draw lines.

1

**Girl:** And who's this?

**Boy:** That's Yasir. He helped with the invitations.

**Girl:** They're very nice! I like the colours. Those invitations are more colourful than the invitations for my party last week!

2

**Girl:** Is that Talal, in a costume?

**Boy:** Yes, it is. He had a lion costume.

**Girl:** He looks very funny!

**Boy:** Yes!

3

**Girl:** Where's Nawal?

**Boy:** Look, she's there. She made the party hats.

**Girl:** Oh, yes. There she is.



**4**

**Girl:** Who's this?

**Boy:** That's my Aunt Manar.

**Girl:** What did she do at the party?

**Boy:** She started the party games.

**5**

**Girl:** Who's this, next to the table?

**Boy:** That's my uncle Hamzah. There was a lot of food for the buffet. He cooked the food.

**Girl:** Oh, yes. The food looks lovely!

**Boy:** Yes, the food was very popular!

Now listen to Task 2 again.

## Reading and Writing

### Task 3

- 1 visited
- 2 are
- 3 not
- 4 going
- 5 to go

### Task 4

- 1 go snorkelling
- 2 (Social Studies) teacher
- 3 khanjar
- 4 jar
- 5 loved

## **Team Together Oman\_4B\_Unit Practice\_Masters**

TT\_Oman\_G4B\_UP 5.1

TT\_Oman\_G4B\_UP 5.2

TT\_Oman\_G4B\_UP 6.1

TT\_Oman\_G4B\_UP 6.2

TT\_Oman\_G4B\_UP 7.1

TT\_Oman\_G4B\_UP 7.2

TT\_Oman\_G4B\_UP 8.1

TT\_Oman\_G4B\_UP 8.2

### **TT\_Oman\_4B\_Audio**

TT\_Oman\_4B\_Audio\_CT4.1

TT\_Oman\_4B\_Audio\_CT4.2